

C H I N E S E

FLAMRIC

PLA Company and Squad Tactics

Reprinted for FLAMRIC in

AUGUST 1981

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER

力炮、重机枪、连用机枪、轻喷火器、工兵分队的配属，坦克、炮兵的支援，排可能得到六〇迫击炮、无座力炮、重机枪（连用机枪）、火箭筒、轻喷火器的配属。

一、召开党支部委员会，进行战斗动员

党支部是连队统一领导和团结战斗的核心。“一切重要问题……均须交委员会讨论，由到会委员充分发表意见，做出明确决定，然后分别执行。”连受领任务后，应在指挥员了解任务、判断情况、考虑初步决心的基础上，适时召开支委（扩大）会，传达上级的命令、指示，理解上级的作战意图和本连的战斗任务，研究指挥员的初步决心，统一认识，确定战斗方案，充分估计战斗中情况的变化和可能遇到的问题，研究解决的办法；明确战斗员的要求和方法；调整组织，配备骨干，指定干部代理人；统一安排各项准备工作。情况紧急时，则由连首长机断处置，事后向党支部报告。

深入进行战斗动员。根据连的任务和指

步兵连（排）对阵地

防御之敌进攻

进攻，是消灭敌人的主要手段。连（排）对阵地防御之敌进攻，必须贯彻歼灭战思想，集中优势兵力，采取包围迂回战术，发扬勇敢战斗、不怕牺牲、不怕疲劳和连续作战的作风，勇猛攻击，近战速决，各个歼灭敌人。

连（排）在进攻战斗中，可能担任主攻、助攻或预备队。主攻分队的任务是在主要方向上实施猛攻，坚决突破敌人阵地，消灭冲击目标之敌，向指定的方向迅速发展进攻。助攻分队的任务是以积极的行动力求突破敌阵地，配合主攻分队围歼敌人。预备队的任务是增强突击力量，扩大战果，抗击敌人反冲击，保障翼侧和结合部的安全。

进攻战斗中，连可能得到迫击炮、无座

战员的思想情况，通常采取先党内后党外、先干部后战士的方法，反复进行战斗动员。情况紧急时，可采取边走边动员或边打边动员。在动员时，应着重讲清敌情、任务、意义、目的、胜利条件和克服困难战胜敌人的办法，提出生动有力的战斗口号，发挥党、团员的骨干作用，开展群众性的思想工作，激发全体指战员的阶级仇恨和战斗热忱，掀起杀敌立功竞赛热潮。战斗中要开展宣传鼓动工作，发挥党、团员的模范带头作用，鼓舞干部战士奋勇杀敌，坚决完成战斗任务。

二、做好进攻准备

连(排)指挥员应根据每战都应力求有准备的原则，按上级的命令和党支部的决议，细致地进行现地勘察，正确选择攻击点和部署兵力，周密地组织协调，迅速做好进攻准备。

(一)现地勘察，选择攻击点

“指挥员的正确的部署来源于正确的决心，正确的决心来源于正确的判断，正确的

判断来源于周到的和必要的侦察，和对于各种侦察材料的联贯起来的思索。”为此，连(排)指挥员应率领所属和配属分队的指挥员荫蔽地接近敌人，进行现地勘察。现地勘察可在一点或两点进行。勘察时，应首先判定方位，介绍有关地形、敌情和上级的战斗意图、本分队的任务，尔后着重查明：敌人兵力部署、火力配系、工事构筑和障碍物设置，敌防御前沿、防御间隙和接合部的位置，敌预备队的配置及可能反冲击的方向，敌前沿、翼侧、纵深和我方冲击出发阵地、接近道路的地形状况及对分队战斗行动的影响。

选择攻击点，要按照当前的敌情、地形和自己兵力的情况去规定。根据上级作战意图，力求选在敌人的弱点上。这个弱点，通常是在敌人的翼侧和侧后，兵力、工事、火力比较薄弱，便于我发扬火力和各兵分队协同动作的地方。冲击出发阵地应选在靠近敌人的有利地形上。冲击道路应便于荫蔽接近敌人。

(二) 兵力部署

“集中优势兵力、各个歼灭敌人的作战方法，不但必须应用于战役的部署方面，而且必须应用于战术的部署方面。”连(排)的兵力部署，应以较强的兵力并配属较多的火器组成主攻分队，配置在靠近攻击点的有利地形上实施主攻；同时以部分兵力并配属必要的火器组成助攻分队，力求从敌正面及其一翼或两翼实施助攻，对冲击目标形成围攻部署；连通常应建立预备队，配置在主攻分队之后或侧后便于荫蔽、机动的有利地形上，以便及时增强主攻方向的突击力量。如攻击前不能形成围攻部署时，则应集中力量突破一点，突破后迅速实施包围迂回。

火器分队应以主要火力支援主攻分队战斗。迫击炮、无座力炮、重机枪、连用机枪通常由连集中使用，也可将重机枪、连用机枪、无座力炮适当配属给排。火箭筒、轻喷火器通常配属给排、班。班用机枪通常配属给班。迫击炮应在步兵战斗队形后或侧后，

占领便于射击的遮蔽发射阵地，以火力消灭或压制敌人暴露的或遮蔽物后的有生力量，破坏敌人的轻掩盖工事，迷盲敌人，必要时也可在敌障碍物中开辟通路。无座力炮、火箭筒应配置在受敌坦克威胁的方向上，便于发扬火力和荫蔽机动的配置，以摧毁敌坦克、装甲车和火力点。机枪用火力和消灭敌暴露的有生力量，压制敌人的火器，射击低飞敌机。轻喷火器协同步兵摧毁敌火力点和消灭掩蔽工事内的敌人。

(三) 规定任务

连(排)指挥员规定任务应准确、简明。对已经明确的问题可不再重复。通常先指明方位物，尔后明确：

1. 敌人的番号、兵力，敌防御前沿、支撑点、坦克发射点和火力点的位置，预备队的位置及可能反冲击的方向；
2. 上级的任务；
3. 连(排)的冲击出发阵地、冲击目标和尔后的进攻方向；

4. 友邻的冲击出发阵地和冲击目标；
5. 各排(班)的配属火器、冲击出发阵地、冲击目标、冲击道路和尔后的进攻方向；
6. 配属分队的任务和火器发射阵地、转移的时机、路线和支援步兵的方法；
7. 完成进攻准备的时间；
8. 指挥位置。

(四)组织协同

连(排)的协同动作通常在规定的任务的同时明确，时间允许时也可单独组织。指挥员应根据上级的战斗企图和连的决心，围绕执行主要任务的分队，按任务、时间、地点组织所属分队、配属分队、支援分队以及同友邻分队的协同动作。各分队必须树立整体观念，严格遵守协同动作的规定，主动配合，密切协同，歼灭敌人。当情况发生变化时，指挥员应及时协调各分队的行动。组织协同时，通常应明确：

1. 各分队占领冲击出发阵地的时间、路线、顺序，可能遇到的情况和处置方法；

2. 火力准备时，上级炮兵和连(排)火器压制和消灭的目标，在敌前沿障碍物中开辟通路的时机、位置、方法和保障措施；

3. 冲击时，步兵分队的行动和火器分队支援的方法，坦克的冲击目标、通过步兵战斗队形的位置和协同动作的方法；

4. 攻歼敌纵深支撑点、粉碎敌反冲击、预备队进入战斗时，各分队的行动，以及与友邻的协同动作；

5. 信(记)号。

当有航空兵直接支援战斗时，应明确标示本分队的位置。

当有民兵、游击队配合时，应明确相互支援和协同的方法。

(五)组织各种保障

连(排)应周密地组织侦察、警戒和观察报知勤务，指定值班分队和火器，防止敌人地面、空中的侦察和突然袭击。构筑必要的工事，进行严密伪装，切实准备好防原子、防化学器材，组织好自救、互救。及时领发

弹药和粮秣，准备好战斗器材，确保战斗任务的顺利完成。

(六) 开展军事民主，进行临战训练

连(排)应充分地发扬军事民主，“在连队首长指导下，发动士兵群众讨论如何攻克敌阵，如何完成战斗任务。”针对敌情、地形和任务，抓紧时机进行临战训练。训练时，力求选择与攻击目标相似的地形，按照当前敌情设置情况，结合战斗方案，进行反复演练或沙盘作业，以提高分队的技术、战术水平，熟悉协同动作，进一步完善战斗方案。

三、荫蔽地占领冲击出发阵地

连(排)通常利用夜暗、不良天候采取秘密和神速的行动占领冲击出发阵地，或在火力掩护下，利用地形地物，采取跃进运动，疏开队形，迅速、荫蔽地占领冲击出发阵地。运动中要不断地观察敌情、地形，组织火力掩护，灵活地运用战斗队形和运动方法。迫击炮分队应先占领发射阵地，机枪分队通常应在运动中临时占领发射阵地，以火力掩

护步兵占领冲击出发阵地。

距敌较远、地形荫蔽和能见度不良时，连(排)可成一(二)路纵队前进，或按战斗编组和任务，分别沿预先选定的路线前进。指挥员应在纵队先头行进，以便掌握情况，严防敌人袭击。

通过开阔地或敌航空兵、炮兵火力封锁地区时，应采取疏开队形快跑通过，视情况也可组织火力射击低飞敌机。遇受染地段时，应尽量选择迂回路绕过或指挥分队利用防护器材迅速通过。

当进到敌步枪火力有效射程内时，指挥员应组织火力掩护，分队采取疏开队形，利用荫蔽地形接近敌人，或采取分班跃进，互相掩护，交替前进，迅速荫蔽地占领冲击出发阵地。

占领冲击出发阵地后，指挥员应立即组织观察、警戒，指定值班火器，组织分队构筑工事，严密伪装，防敌火力袭击。

四、勇猛冲击，突破敌人阵地

连(排)冲击时, 必须具有压倒一切敌人的英雄气概, 集中兵力和火力猛烈攻击, 坚决突破敌人阵地, 并迅速向两侧或纵深发展进攻, 扩大和巩固突破口。

(一) 冲击准备

连(排)在冲击准备时, 指挥员应根据新的情况, 给分队进一步明确任务, 亲自观察我炮兵、航空兵火力准备的效果和敌情的变化, 并及时报告上级, 按上级的火力计划, 指挥迫击炮、无座力炮分队, 摧毁敌人的火力点和坦克发射点, 杀伤敌有生力量, 为分队的冲击创造有利条件; 检查督促分队迅速做好冲击准备, 并向上级报告。如冲击出发阵地距敌较远时, 应根据上级的指示, 适时指挥分队向前推进, 尽量靠近敌人, 缩短冲击距离。

连(排)担任在敌障碍物中开辟通路或排除通路中残存障碍物时, 应根据情况和上级的规定, 在火力准备前, 以秘密的方法开辟, 但必须做好火力掩护的准备; 或在火力准备

时, 指挥爆破组在我火力掩护下, 实施连续爆破开辟通路。连通常开辟2—3条通路。若由工兵分队开辟通路时, 应组织火力掩护。若由炮兵火力开辟通路时, 应及时观察并报告开辟的效果。对已开辟的通路, 应指定火器控制, 防敌堵塞。

(二) 勇猛冲击

连(排)应按冲击信号, 充分利用我火力准备和爆破的效果, 发扬一往无前的精神, 勇猛发起冲击, 坚决突入敌人阵地, 歼灭敌人。预备队适时向前运动, 随时准备进入战斗。当有坦克支援时, 步兵应紧跟坦克冲击, 及时给坦克指示目标, 并主动消灭敌反坦克手和反坦克火器。如坦克前进受阻, 分队应超越坦克继续冲击前进。

当步兵冲击时, 机枪、无座力炮、迫击炮应以猛烈的火力压制和摧毁敌残存的或新出现的火力点及坦克发射点, 消灭敌有生力量, 支援步兵冲击。各火力分队应按指示或自行交替向前转移, 以不间断的火力支援步

兵战斗。

冲击受阻时，连(排)指挥员应“勇敢、坚定、沉着”，立即组织火力掩护分队占领有利地形，迅速查明情况，调整部署，鼓舞士气，再次发起冲击，并及时将情况报告上级。

(三)扩大巩固突破口

连(排)突入敌阵地后，应坚决勇猛地向指定目标发展进攻，迅速扩大突破口。指挥员应不间断地观察战斗发展情况，适时指挥各种火器向前转移，以准确猛烈的火力，压制、摧毁阻碍我冲击的火力点，消灭敌有生力量，支援步兵战斗。连(排)应充分发挥班组独立战斗的威力，利用敌战斗队形间隙和薄弱处，大胆穿插分割、包围敌人，消灭前沿支撑点之敌。如突破口有被敌封闭的威胁，或连(排)受领巩固突破口的任务时，应迅速向其两侧扩张，抢占有利地形，控制要点，抢修工事，严密组织火力，准备抗击敌人的反冲击，保障后续梯队进入战斗，继续发展进攻。

五、迅速扩张战果，歼灭纵深之敌

连(排)突破敌阵地后，应发扬连续作战的作风，乘胜向敌防御纵深大胆实施包围迂回、穿插分割，冲到敌人跟前打，钻到敌人窝里打，绕到敌人背后打，各个歼灭敌人。

(一)适时使用预备队

为增强突击力量乘胜扩张战果，或遭受敌人优势兵力反冲击，或主攻分队伤亡过大时，应适时使用预备队进入战斗。预备队使用前应上报批准，使用后通常要重新建立预备队。

预备队进入战斗时，指挥员应明确当面情况，冲击目标，进入战斗的地区和方法，发起冲击的时间，转属的火器，与各分队的协同动作和保障措施。预备队应在我火力掩护下，从主攻分队的间隙或翼侧进入战斗，向指定目标实施勇猛冲击，歼灭敌人。

(二)攻歼敌支撑点

攻歼敌支撑点时，连(排)指挥员应迅速查明情况，将主力必须使用于侧面，采取包

包围回战法，以部分兵力箝制其正面及一翼，主力荫蔽迅速插到敌支撑点的侧面，以火力、爆破、突击相结合的方法，并开展政治攻势，坚决歼灭敌人。

遇敌坦克、装甲车组成的支撑点时，应严密组织兵力、火器，荫蔽接近，充分发挥各种反坦克火器和反坦克小组的威力，集中力量，突破一点，乘胜插入敌支撑点，内外夹击，分割围歼。视情况，可利用地形和敌观察射击死角，明确分工，实施多路有重点地攻击，各个击毁敌坦克、装甲车。

遇敌地(钢帽)堡组成的支撑点时，应选择弱点，集中兵力、火力，以抵近射击、连续爆破和连续突击的动作，逐个攻克，或乘敌之隙，直插母堡，发挥班组独立战斗的威力，由里向外逐个攻克。如敌情、地形对我特别有利，也可实施多路有重点地攻击，各个摧毁敌地堡，全歼支撑点之敌。

(三)粉碎敌坦克、步兵反冲击

当敌人坦克、步兵向我反冲击时，连(排)

指挥员应迅速判明敌人的行动企图，报告上级，要求炮兵火力拦阻敌人，果敢地指挥各排(班)抢占有利地形，以无座力炮、火箭筒及反坦克小组击毁敌坦克，以迫击炮、步机枪的火力切断敌坦克与步兵的联系，大量杀伤敌步兵，乘敌混乱，向其侧后实施坚决勇敢的冲击，消灭敌人。如敌兵力不大，情况对我有利时，也可在行进间粉碎敌人的反冲击。当反冲击之敌溃逃时，应勇猛追击，乘胜向敌纵深发展进攻。

当敌向友邻反冲击时，连(排)应积极地发展进攻，视情况以火力或以少数兵力协同友邻歼灭反冲击之敌。

连(排)完成受领任务后，可能转为预备队，或受领巩固既得阵地的任务，也可能撤出战斗，执行新的任务。

步兵连(排)夜间对阵地 防御之敌进攻

“近战、夜战是我们的光荣传统，过去我们就是用这种办法消灭敌人的。”今后的战争，我们还是要晚上和敌人打。夜间便于达成战斗的突然性，减少敌火对我的损害，但观察、射击、指挥、协同和通信联络均较不便，易迷失方向。连(排)进攻时，必须贯彻集中兵力、近战歼敌的思想，发扬独立战斗和主动协同的精神，善于利用夜间秘密接近敌人，充分发挥战斗的突然性，以奇袭与强攻相结合，出奇制胜，大胆穿插分割，各个围歼敌人。

一、做好进攻准备

连(排)指挥员应根据每战都应力求有准备的的原则，受领任务后，应依据上级指示，

在党支部的领导下，力求于白天在现地周密地组织战斗，入夜后应进一步查明敌情、熟悉地形、明确任务，迅速做好进攻准备。

(一)现地勘察，选择攻击点

连(排)指挥员通常在白天侦察的基础上，利用夜暗在警戒的掩护下，隐蔽地进至敌前沿或侧后，进行抵近侦察。查明敌前沿工事、火器和障碍物的位置，敌防御的间隙、翼侧，敌人夜间的活动规律、照明情况和警戒的位置；选择接敌和插入敌侧后的路线、冲击出发阵地、火器发射阵地及便于夜间识别的方位物。

连(排)在选择攻击点时，应着眼于乘敌之隙，达成突然性。通常选在敌人阵地的侧后或夜间防守薄弱及疏忽之处，便于突破和向纵深发展进攻的地方。

(二)兵力部署

连(排)夜间进攻时，力求主力从敌翼侧或侧后攻击，对冲击目标形成围攻部署，并建立预备队。战斗队形的间隔、距离应当

缩小，火器、预备队的配置和指挥员的位置尽量靠前。

连(排)对配属和本分队的火器应大部向下配属，以增强排(班)的独立战斗能力。通常将重机枪、无座力炮大部配属给步兵排，迫击炮由连集中使用，班用机枪、火箭筒配属给步兵班。

(三) 规定任务，组织协同

连(排)在规定任务、组织协同时，应着重明确：

1. 各分队的冲击出发阵地、冲击目标和尔后的进攻方向；
 2. 各分队占领冲击出发阵地的时机、顺序、路线和协同方法；
 3. 在故障障碍物中开辟通路的位置、时机和协同方法；
 4. 奇袭和转为强攻时，各分队的行动和协同方法；
 5. 指挥位置和信(记)号。
- 连(排)夜间组织战斗时，应加强观察、

警戒，防敌袭击。迫击炮、无座力炮、重机枪应在天黑前做好夜间射击准备。各分队应准备好反坦克和克服障碍的器材。

秘密地占领冲击出发阵地

连(排)夜间接敌，要采取秘密和神速的行动，指定基准分队，确实检查着装，严格夜间行动纪律。接敌时，沿选定的路线，采用适当队形，利用夜间便于识别的方位物和标定的方位角保持方向，隐蔽迅速地前进。运动中，要加强的警戒，严密搜索，注意伪装，缩小间隔距离，各火器随时做好射击准备。连(排)指挥员随基准分队前进，要加强联络，适时指挥各分队的行动和果断地处置各种情况。

遇敌照明时，如地形暴露应立即隐蔽，并利用其照明观察敌情、地形和前进路线，照明过后迅速前进。如敌连续照明，应利用地形，隐蔽前进。

连(排)应尽量在靠近敌防御前沿的有利地形上占领冲击出发阵地。占领后，应立即

组织观察、警戒，指定值班火器，进一步查明敌情、地形和明确任务，做好冲击准备，并将情况及时上报。

三、突然发起冲击

连(排)夜间进攻应力争奇袭，同时必须做好强攻准备，奇袭不成，立即转入强攻。

奇袭时，各种火器必须做好射击准备。连(排)指挥员应指挥工程保障组秘密开辟通路，待其发出完成开辟通路的信号后，适时指挥各分队迅速秘密通过，不喊杀声，勇猛突入敌人阵地，突然开火，打敌措手不及，以抵近射击、手榴弹、刺刀消灭敌人。并适时指挥反坦克火器和反坦克小组，以火力和爆破击毁敌坦克及装甲车。

强攻时，连(排)应利用我炮火对敌实施压制的有利时机，指挥工程保障组强行开辟通路，各分队向敌勇猛发起冲击，一举突入敌人阵地，乘敌混乱之际，坚决歼灭敌人。战斗中，各火器应紧随步兵适时向前交替转移，不断以火力支援步兵战斗。

预备队在主攻分队后跟进，并应缩短距离，以便适时进入战斗。

四、大胆穿插分割，各个歼灭敌人

连(排)突破敌人阵地后，应迅速扩张战果，利用夜间暗和敌防御的间隙及翼侧，大胆实施包围迂回、穿插分割，各个歼灭敌人。

(一) 围歼支撑点之敌

遇敌支撑点时，连(排)指挥员应迅速查明敌情，利用夜间暗和有利地形，调近火器和预备队，力争主力插入敌侧后猛攻，采取火力、爆破、突击紧密结合的方法，打乱敌部署，断敌退路，各个歼灭。

遇敌坦克组成的支撑点时，连(排)应用夜间暗迅速逼近敌人，充分发挥反坦克火器和反坦克小组的威力，突然开火，摧毁就近敌坦克、装甲车。然后指挥分队勇猛突入敌支撑点，内外突击，靠近狠打，将其各个击毁，歼灭敌人。

(二) 打敌坦克、步兵反冲击

当敌步兵、坦克优势兵力向我实施反冲

击时，连(排)应坚定沉着，迅速抢占有利地形，待敌靠近，突然开火，打乱其战斗队形，切断敌步兵与坦克的联系，摧毁敌坦克、装甲车和消灭敌有生力量。视情况，可以部分兵力，利用夜暗大胆迂回敌侧后，以突然勇猛的冲击，插入敌战斗队形，配合主力歼灭敌人。

当小股敌人向我反冲击时，连(排)应利用夜暗和有利地形，隐蔽进至敌翼侧，突然勇猛地发起冲击，迅速歼灭敌人，继续发展进攻。

(三)担任穿插任务时的行动

连(排)担任袭击敌指挥所、通信枢纽、炮兵阵地等重要目标的穿插任务时，应详细研究情况，给各分队明确冲击目标、穿插路线、各种信(记)号和可能遇到的情况及处置方法。穿插时，要发扬勇敢沉着、灵活机动和独立作战的精神，力求利用夜暗和敌人的间隙实施大胆穿插。穿插中，连(排)应加强侦察、警戒，及时查明情况，掌握行进方向和

路线，不为复杂情况所迷惑，避免与敌恋战，按时到达穿插地点，以突然勇猛的行动，袭击敌人，坚决完成指定任务，并将情况及时报告上级。

接近敌人，也可在我航空兵和炮兵火力掩护下接敌。

步兵连(排)对立足未稳之敌进攻

(一) 做好接敌准备

接敌的准备工作的准备时间，不误战机。连(排)在集结地域受领任务时，应及时召开党支部委员会或召集各分队指挥员，传达上级的命令，研究本连任务，明确接敌运动的队形、路线和侦察、警戒、伪装、防坦克、防空、防化学的措施和人员轻装的规定，迅速做好接敌准备。连(排)在接敌运动中受领任务时，应边走边边组织边准备。

(二) 迅速隐蔽地接敌

接敌时，连(排)应根据敌情、地形情况，以行军纵队或疏开队形，沿预定的路线，迅速隐蔽地前进，准时到达指定位置。前进中，应派出配属有反坦克火器的步兵班担任前方警戒。连(排)指挥员应在本队先头行进，与警戒分队保持不间断的联络，不断判定方位，及时掌握情况，适时指挥各分队行动。遇敌侦察和警戒时，应力求设法绕过或以部分兵

立足未稳之敌，通常是指临时驻止、空降着陆及仓卒防御的敌人。这种敌人，一般是未完全占领阵地或阵地尚不巩固，兵力未完全展开或部署不周，地形不熟，没有工事或工事、障碍不完备，有暴露的翼侧和间隙。但由于敌人机械化程度高，可能很快构成阵地防御配系。因此，连(排)对立足未稳之敌的进攻，应贯彻速决全歼的思想，抓住有利战机，迅速隐蔽接近敌人，集中兵力，采用包围迂回战术，以奇袭或强攻的手段，各个歼灭敌人。

一、迅速接近敌人，逐次明确任务

“兵力转移，一般都要秘密迅速。”连(排)通常利用夜暗、不良天候和隐蔽的地形迅速

力将其歼灭，主力不应与敌恋战，要加快速度，向指定方向前进。分队应加强宣传鼓动工作，充分发挥党、团员和骨干的模范作用，发扬吃大苦、耐大劳的精神，开展互助活动，严守纪律。

(三) 逐次明确任务

连(排)指挥员在接敌过程中，应根据上级的指示和当面敌情、地形，不断地分析判断情况，逐次明确各分队的任务。有时也可随同上级指挥员，在我警戒分队掩护下先接近敌人进行侦察，尔后在便于观察和荫蔽的地点给各分队规定任务，迅速做好冲击准备。

规定任务时，应着重指出：

1. 敌人的兵力，翼侧、间隙的位置和工事障碍物的情况；
2. 连(排)冲击出发阵地的位置、冲击目标和尔后进攻的方向；
3. 各排(班)冲击道路、冲击目标和相互协同的方法；

4. 火器分队的发射阵地和支援步兵冲击的方法；

5. 指挥位置和信(记)号。

二、突然发起冲击，一举突破敌人阵地的方法，一举突破敌人的防御，分割围歼敌人。奇袭必须同时准备强攻。

奇袭时，要采取秘密和神速的行动，出其不意地袭击敌人。冲击前，各种火器分队应做好支援冲击的射击准备；当步兵发起冲击后，应对敌人实施突然猛烈的射击，支援步兵冲击。突击分队应按预先的计划，在敌障碍物中秘密开辟通路，以突然果敢的行动，从敌翼侧和间隙一举突入敌人阵地，大胆实施包围迂回、穿插分割，发挥近战的威力，各个歼灭敌人。一旦奇袭不成，应立即转为强攻。

强攻时，连(排)应在我炮兵猛烈的火力掩护下，按上级的命令，立即发起冲击。火器分队应在有利的地形上占领发射阵地或

随步兵前进，以火力支援步兵冲击。突击分队应以一往无前的精神，从敌翼侧和间隙坚决勇猛地突入敌人阵地，以火力、爆破、突击相结合的方法歼灭敌人，迅速扩张战果。

三、迅猛发展进攻，各个歼灭敌人

连(排)突入敌人阵地后，应边打边侦察，边打边组织，利用敌人的弱点和间隙，大胆机动兵力、火力，实施穿插分割，坚决歼灭敌人。

(一) 猛攻快插，打敌要害

突入敌人阵地后，连(排)应发扬连续作战和孤胆、独立战斗的精神，敢于前出，不怕侧射夹击，充分利用有利地形，从敌阵地的间隙和翼侧向敌人的指挥所、通信枢纽、炮兵阵地等重要目标，大胆穿插分割。连(排)指挥员应及时指挥各种火器和预备队迅速向前运动，对前出的分队给予有效的支援。接近目标后，应突然勇猛地发起冲击，打乱敌防御部署，夺占要点，断敌退路，各个围歼敌人。

(二) 围歼龟缩之敌

当敌步兵、坦克和装甲车开始龟缩时，连(排)指挥员应迅速指挥各分队勇猛前进，跟踪、紧逼敌人，乘敌龟缩混乱之际，大胆插入敌阵，摧毁敌坦克、装甲车，歼灭敌步兵。如敌龟缩在要点上进行顽抗时，连(排)指挥员应迅速查明情况，实施多路有重点地攻击，乘隙插入敌阵，内外夹击，分割歼敌。也可以部分兵力从敌正面及其一翼实施攻击，集中主要兵力向敌侧后实施猛攻，坚决突破敌人阵地，彻底歼灭敌人。

(三) 歼灭退却之敌

当发现敌人退却时，连(排)指挥员应以猛烈火力杀伤敌人，并不失时机地指挥各分队以坚决、果敢、勇猛的行动，实施跟踪追击或平行追击，以最快的速度或取捷径超越敌人，插到敌退路的翼侧和前方，占领要点，断其退路，实施侧击和堵击，力求将敌歼灭在运动中。

追击时，连(排)指挥员应在分队先头行

进，并在行进间给所属分队简明规定任务。乘车时，应迅速区分搭乘的车辆(坦克)，快速追击。并报告上级，通报友邻。

追击时，连(排)应发扬连续作战的精神，不怕艰苦，不怕疲劳，不怕孤立突出，对逃跑之敌实施狠追，不给敌人喘息机会。如敌以小股兵力抵抗时，应指定少数兵力将其歼灭或监视，主力迅速从其翼侧插过，继续追击敌人。如敌占领阵地企图顽抗时，连(排)应乘敌立足未稳，集中兵力，勇猛冲击，将其围歼。如有地方武装配合时，连(排)应主动与其联络，密切配合，歼灭敌人。

四、歼灭空降之敌

围歼空降之敌时，连(排)应抓住战机，迅速逼近敌人，与地方武装密切配合，近战歼敌，速战速决。

当敌开始伞降时，应迅速指挥分队抢占有利地形，控制降落场，集中火力消灭敌伞兵，力求歼敌于空中。当敌直升飞机着陆时，应乘其步兵未下机之际，集中火力猛烈射

击，摧毁敌直升飞机，歼敌于机内；当敌步兵已下机时，应乘敌尚未展开之际，集中火力狠打，并迅速靠近敌人，将其包围，勇猛冲击，分割歼灭。

当敌企图乘直升飞机逃跑时，连(排)应加紧对地面敌人的攻击，并迅速组织火力狠打敌直升飞机；当敌人集结、登机时，应乘其慌乱之际，以部分兵力歼灭顽抗之敌，集中主力直插敌集结、登机地点，击毁敌直升飞机，歼灭敌人；当敌直升飞机逃跑时，应集中火力射击敌机。

分队规定任务，做好进攻准备。

步兵连(排)山地进攻

战斗的特点

山地，地形复杂，死角荫蔽地多，道路少，气象多变，便于我荫蔽企图，实施包围迂回、穿插分割。但不便于观察、射击、机动、指挥和协同，战斗队形易被分割，容易迷失方向。

连(排)山地进攻，应贯彻**集中兵力各个歼敌的原则**，发扬我军近战、独立作战的特长和主动配合、密切协同的作风，采取包围迂回战术，力争从敌翼侧或侧后攻击，坚决夺取制高点，歼灭敌人。

一、周密组织战斗

连(排)受领任务后，应根据上级指示，在党支部的领导下，确定战斗方案，进行战斗动员，组织现地勘察，选择攻击点，给各

(一)选择攻击点

连(排)攻击点，通常应选在制高点的翼侧和侧后。便于荫蔽接近敌人，便于组织火力支援，便于向纵深发展进攻的有利地形上。

(二)兵力部署

连(排)部署兵力时，应力求集中主力，从敌支撑点的间隙或翼侧，迂回到敌翼侧或侧后实施主攻，以部分兵力从敌正面及其一翼或两翼实施助攻，对敌形成围攻部署。如果不能形成围攻部署，应集中主力从敌弱点进行攻击，突破后迅速实施包围迂回。根据上级指示，还可派出精干的小分队利用夜间或有利地形秘密渗入敌纵深，袭取敌人重要目标或控制要点，配合主力歼灭敌人。连应建立预备队，并尽量靠前配置。

火器分队，应按情况尽量配属给排，并适当靠前配置，以增强其独立战斗的能力，及时支援步兵战斗。迫击炮通常由连集中使用，用以消灭在死角、反斜面、谷地和林内

之敌。无座力炮通常大部分配属给排，用以摧毁敌坦克和火力点。重机枪(连用机枪)通常大部分配属给排，用以消灭敌人有生力量 and 射击低飞的敌机。轻喷火器、火箭筒通常配属给排(班)。火炮阵地应尽量选在便于直接瞄准射击的地形上，机枪应选在便于侧射和超越射击的地形上，以有效地支援步兵战斗。

(三)组织协同

连(排)指挥员在规定的任务后，应周密地组织协同。其内容：

1. 各分队向冲击出发阵地运动的队形和火力掩护的方法，占领冲击出发阵地后的行动；
2. 冲击时各分队的行动；
3. 夺取制高点、山垭口和遇敌反冲击时，各分队的行动；
4. 克服敌障碍物和天然障碍的方法；
5. 与友邻的协同方法和对翼侧接合部的保障措施；
6. 信(记)号。

二、荫蔽迅速接敌，突然勇猛冲击

(一)迅速接敌

连(排)接敌时，应利用荫蔽地形或夜暗、不良天候，采取行军队形或疏开队形，荫蔽迅速地占领冲击出发阵地。指挥员应随先头分队行进，及时了解情况和掌握前进方向。运动中应加强侦察、警戒，对敌情顾虑大的地点应派警戒分队先行控制要点，以防敌人突然袭击。需要开路时，应在警戒分队的掩护下秘密实施。

(二)勇猛冲击

连(排)占领冲击出发阵地后，应迅速做好冲击准备。在火力准备时，以直接瞄准火炮摧毁敌火力点，掩护爆破组开辟通路。接到冲击信号时，应突然勇猛地发起冲击，以火力、爆破、突击相结合的方法，一举突入敌人阵地，坚决歼灭敌人。迫击炮、无座力炮、重机枪应以猛烈的火力摧毁和压制敌人正面或翼侧的火力点，支援步兵冲击，并根据情况及时向前转移，不间断地支援步兵战斗。预

各队应及时跟进，随时准备进入战斗。

三、夺取制高点，歼灭纵深之敌

突入敌阵地后，应利用敌人防御的间隙、翼侧或薄弱处，大胆实施包围迂回、穿插分割，坚决夺取制高点，迅速向一翼或两翼扩张战果，打乱敌人战斗部署，断其退路，各个歼灭敌人。

(一) 夺取制高点

夺取制高点时，连(排)应以迫击炮火力逐次压制山顶(山脊)、山腰或反斜面之敌，以无座力炮、火箭筒的火力摧毁对我危害最大的敌火力点或坦克，以机枪压制敌人正面或翼侧的火力点，支援步兵冲击；步兵分队应以少数兵力从敌正面攻击，主力从敌翼侧或侧后秘密迅速地接近敌人，突然发起冲击，力求一举攻占制高点(图一)。若敌制高点系多层次形防御，连(排)应周密组织火力掩护，利用有利地形，采取连续爆破和连续突击，坚决攻占制高点。

对沿纵向山脊防御之敌，应集中主力

从敌一侧实施突破，以部分兵力从敌正面沿山脊及另一侧攻击，围歼敌人(图二)。对沿横向山脊防御之敌，通常集中力量从一点或两点突破，尔后迅速向一翼或两翼扩张战果(图三)。攻占山垭口时，应严密组织火力掩护，通常先集中兵力攻占其一侧的高地，再攻占另一侧的高地，夺取山垭口；有时也可同时攻占两侧高地，迅速夺取山垭口。

夺取制高点、山垭口后，应乘胜扩大战果。如奉命巩固已占领的制高点时，分队应迅速派出观察和值班火器，调整部署，组织火力，加修工事，准备抗击敌人反冲击。做好准备后，阵地上除留部分兵力控制要点外，其余人员应离开山顶和明显目标，利用高地的反斜面和敌人工事疏散荫蔽，严防敌人火力袭击。

(二) 粉碎敌人反冲击

当敌居高临下向我反冲击时，连(排)应抢占有利地形，以猛烈的火力杀伤敌人，乘敌混乱以一部兵力迅速插到敌侧后，断其

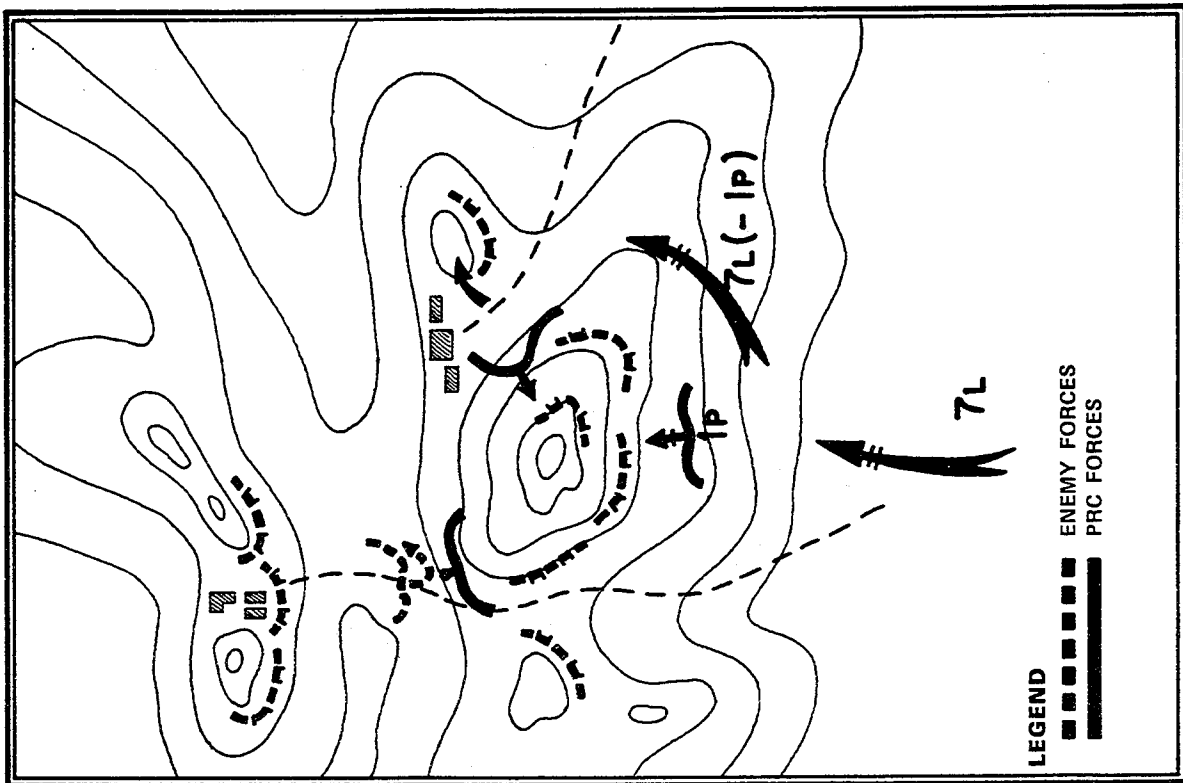
退路，配合主力歼灭敌人。当敌沿山脊和谷地同时向我反冲击时，连(排)应抢占附近要点，首先集中主要力量消灭沿山脊反冲击之敌，尔后协同友邻消灭沿谷地反冲击之敌。反坦克火器和反坦克小组应乘敌坦克、装甲车接近或通过狭窄的山谷、隘路或起伏较大的地形时，以打、炸相结合的方法，坚决将其击毁。

(三) 歼灭退守坑道之敌

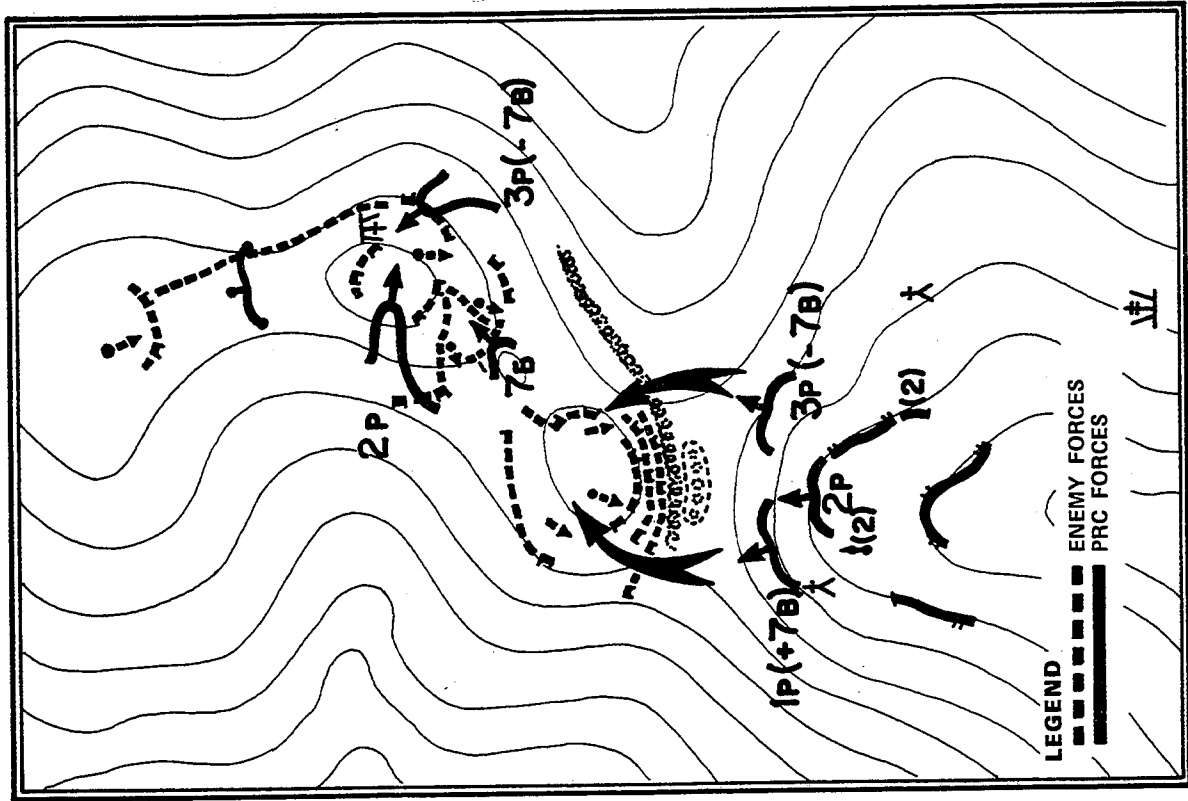
连(排)突入敌阵地后，应迅速实施包围迂回，并以迫击炮、机枪火力切断敌之退路，力求将敌人歼灭在表面阵地上。当敌向坑道溃退时，应乘其混乱跟踪追击，力求一举突入敌坑道将其歼灭。当敌已退守坑道时，应迅速查明敌坑道口的位置、数量及其相互之间的联系，采取封锁监视、炸塌堵塞和进入坑道战斗等手段，结合开展政治攻势歼灭敌人。进入坑道内战斗时，首先以火力压制和摧毁敌坑道口附近的火力点，尔后指挥班(组)在火力或烟幕的掩护下，迅速接近

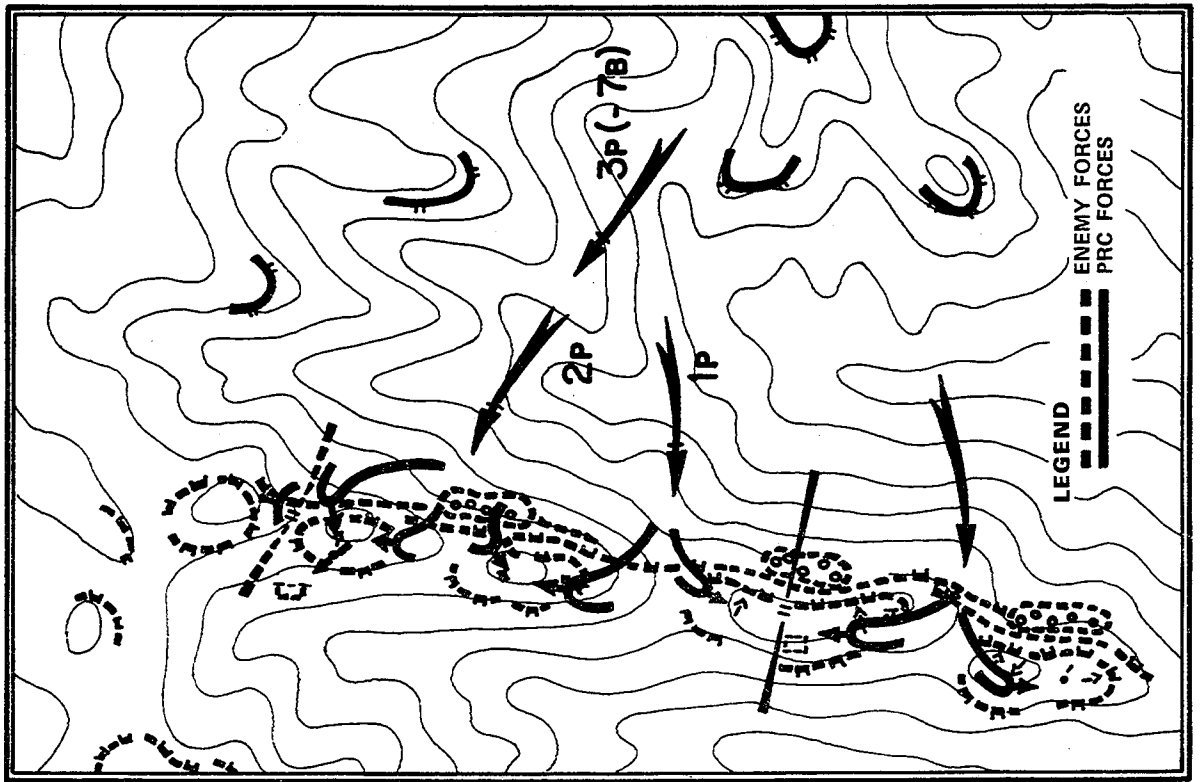
坑道口的翼侧或上方进行爆破，爆破成功后，立即冲入坑道内，利用坑道一侧或两侧，互相掩护，逐段搜索前进，以抵近射击、手榴弹和白刃格斗歼灭敌人。对短浅的坑道还可利用喷火或烟熏等手段歼灭敌人。对一时难以夺取的坑道，应根据上级指示，以少数兵力、火力封锁监视，或将坑道口、通风口炸塌、堵死。在消灭坑道内之敌时，应以一部兵力控制制高点 and 附近要点，巩固表面阵地。

步兵连山地进攻战斗图例之一



步兵连山地进攻战斗图例之二





步兵连(排)江河进攻 战斗的特点

江河是天然障碍。江河两岸的地形状况与河底性质、水深、流速，对进攻分队的机动、指挥、协同、通信联络等都有直接影响。连(排)江河进攻，必须发扬坚决勇敢、独立战斗的精神，以奇袭或强渡的方法，迅速夺取并扩大与巩固登陆点，保障后续梯队顺利渡过江河。

连(排)在江河进攻战斗中，可能担任先遣分队、突击队或预备队。担任先遣分队或突击队的主要任务是夺取并巩固登陆点，保障主力渡过江河。担任预备队的主要任务是利用突击队的成果，巩固与扩大登陆点，保障后续梯队渡过江河。

一、做好渡江(河)准备

连(排)在组织江河进攻时,应根据上级指示,在党支部的领导下,着重做好下列工作:

(一)現地勘察,选择渡江(河)点

连(排)指挥员現地勘察时,应着重查明:

1. 河宽、水深、流速、河底性质,有无支流、漩涡、徒涉场、渡场和民用船只;
2. 敌人的兵力部署、工事及火力配系,坦克的配置位置,岸边及水中障碍物的设置情况,敌预备队配置地域和反冲击方向,敌炮兵、航空兵对江河封锁的情况;

3. 敌岸地形状况,江河弯曲部、岸边荫蔽接近地与死角,便于我上岸和巩固的有利地区,我岸出发阵地的荫蔽条件,从器材集结地点至渡场的道路和地形情况。

连(排)指挥员应在上级指定的渡江(河)地段内,选择渡河点。渡河点应选在能瞰制敌岸和弯向我方的突出部,河幅较窄,流速缓,便于荫蔽疏散配置器材,能秘密接近渡口,便于我船只靠岸或徒涉的地方为渡河点。

(二)准备渡江(河)器材

江河进攻,连(排)应充分利用民用船只和就便器材渡江(河)。若得到制式渡江(河)器材的配属时,应在工兵的指导下进行结构和使用,并协助工兵修筑进出道路和简易码头。

各种渡江(河)器材应荫蔽、疏散地配置在上级指定的地点,并严加伪装和警戒。

(三)战斗编组

根据各分队的任务、渡江(河)器材情况和江河状况,进行战斗编组,合理分配渡江(河)器材。连(排)力求一个航次渡过江河,不可能时,则两个航次渡完。分配船只应尽量照顾各分队的任务和建制,当有不同建制单位共乘一船时,应指定干部负责统一指挥。各火器分队应分乘各排(班)的渡江(河)工具,以保障各船具有独立战斗的能力。并指定部分火器准备射击低飞敌机。连应组织渡江(河)救护组,各船应指定专人负责救护任务。连(排)指挥员应分乘各排(班)的渡江

(河)工具,以便不失时机的指挥。

(四)规定任务,组织协同

连(排)指挥员在给所属分队规定任务和
组织协同时,应明确:

1. 连(排)的任务、渡江(河)地点、登陆点、冲击目标,夺取与巩固的地区;
2. 各排(班)的渡江(河)器材、进入渡场的路线和队形,泛水地点和时间、登陆点、冲击目标与巩固的地区;
3. 各火器分队分乘的渡江(河)工具及在航渡、冲击和夺取与巩固登陆点时的支援方法;
4. 克服与通过敌岸边、水中障碍物的位置与方法;
5. 上级炮兵、航空兵支援方法和施放烟幕的地段;
6. 航渡中遇到各种情况的处置方法,通信联络、各种信(记)号;
7. 完成渡江(河)准备时间,指挥员的位置。

(五)临战训练

连(排)指挥员应根据所受领的任务,进行临战训练。组织水性好的战士和班排干部,训练使用各种渡河器材的技术和救护动作。组织分队进行游泳、泅渡和上下船的训练。必要时,可选择与进攻目标近似的地形,设置情况,进行演习。

二、渡江(河)时的指挥与行动

(一)奇袭

奇袭应做好强渡的一切准备工作。连(排)担任先遣分队时,应力求利用夜暗迅速荫蔽地前出到渡河地区,突然袭击敌人,抢占渡口、桥梁,控制船只,乘机迅速渡过江河,夺取和巩固敌岸要点。或在夜暗、能见度不良等条件下,以偷渡的方法,秘密渡过江河。偷渡中,应保持肃静,严格管制灯火,保持战斗队形,遇到情况冷静处置,到达敌岸后,突然勇猛地发起冲击,出其不意地袭击敌人,坚决夺取登陆点。一旦被敌发觉,立即转为强渡。

(二) 强渡

连(排)应按上级规定的时间、路线,前出到渡场,迅速搬运渡江(河)器材,或搭乘水陆两用坦克(汽车)接近泛水地点,迅速泛水。如单独渡江(河)时,应派出观察员,并以部分火器占领渡场附近泛水地点,掩护分队泛水渡江(河)。救护组应进至渡场下游适当位置,准备救护落水人员。连(排)指挥员应指挥分队迅速泛水渡江(河),同时将情况报告上级,并不间断地观察上级发出的信号。

航渡中,连(排)指挥员必须不断观察敌情,坚定、沉着、及时地指挥各分队以最大的速度冲向敌岸,勇往直前地渡过江河。对阻碍分队航渡的敌火力点,应立即组织火力压制或消灭。遇敌炮兵、航空兵火力封锁时,应以最大速度冲出敌火力封锁区,并注意保持航向,迅速逼近敌岸,对空火器应以猛烈火力射击低飞的敌机。遇敌水中障碍物时,应指定人员迅速排除。当渡江(河)器材遭敌破坏时,应迅速堵塞和救生。落水人员应利

用个人或其它就便器材实施强渡,坚决渡过江河,积极参加战斗。

三、夺取与巩固登陆点

夺取登陆点是最紧张、最激烈的战斗。连(排)必须坚决勇敢,迅速上岸,歼灭守敌,粉碎敌人的反冲击,巩固与扩大登陆点。

当接近敌岸时,连(排)指挥员应组织火力压制或摧毁敌人火力点,指挥分队迅速上岸。上岸后,应立即展开,坚决勇猛地向敌冲击,以火力、爆破、突击紧密结合的方法,消灭敌人。如有的分队不能在预定的地点靠岸时,应就近登陆,以积极的行动投入战斗,并迅速同上级和友邻取得联系,边打边靠向预定夺取的目标。

突入敌阵地后,连(排)应迅速组织火力压制敌火力点,指挥分队利用敌人的间隙、翼侧,大胆实施穿插分割,消灭守敌。并乘胜向两翼和纵深扩大登陆点,尽可能不使敌人获得喘息的时间,使其无法组织抵抗,迅

速夺取有利地形，不断发展胜利，巩固与扩大登陆点。

夺取登陆点后，连(排)指挥员应立即将情况报告上级。同时调整部署、改修工事、设置障碍物，依托有利地形，准备抗击敌人步兵和坦克的反冲击，保障主力及后续部队顺利渡过江河进入战斗。

步兵连(排)城镇进攻

战斗的特点

城镇，有高大坚固的建筑物和纵横交错街道及地下设备，易于荫蔽接近和分割敌人，利于近战。但观察、射击、指挥、通信联络和协同不便，战斗队形易被分割。因此，连(排)城镇进攻，必须贯彻**集中兵力各个歼敌的原则**，周密组织准备，发扬小群、独立作战和主动协同的精神，利用建筑物、地下道和下水道大胆地实施包围迂回、穿插分割，与民兵、游击队相配合，近战歼敌。

一、周密地组织战斗

连(排)受领任务后，应根据上级指示，在党支部的领导下，认真现地勘察，周密细致地组织战斗，做好攻坚准备。

(一)现地勘察，选择突破口

责排除障碍物和爆破敌人的坚固火力点。火力队，由机枪、无座力炮、迫击炮分队编成。以火力摧毁敌人火力点、荫蔽工事和压制敌人的火器，杀伤敌人的有生力量，支援各分队战斗。

预备队，由步兵分队编成。主要用于扩大战果，应付意外情况，必要时接替突击队的任务。

(三) 组织协同

连(排)在规 定任务后，应周密细致地组织协同。其内容：

1. 火力准备时，上级炮兵和航空兵压制、破坏的目标，火力队、工程保障队、突击队和预备队的行动；
2. 冲击时，各分队的战斗行动；
3. 巩固、扩大突破口和粉碎敌人反冲击时，各分队的行动；
4. 攻占敌纵深坚固建筑物时，各分队的行动；

5. 信(记)号。

连(排)指挥员，应以各种手段迅速查明：敌人的兵力部署，明、暗火力点的位置，障碍物的设置情况，进攻街区内的街道、地下设备和坚固建筑物的状况，荫蔽接近地、冲击出发阵地和冲击道路的地形情况。

突破口，应选在敌兵力、火力、工事比较薄弱，便于我突破、巩固和向纵深发展的地方。

(二) 兵力部署

连(排)应集中兵力重点突破，按火力、爆破、突击相结合和便于独立作战的要求，进行战斗编组。视情况，连可编成突击队、工程保障队、火力队、预备队。排在连编成内，可担任突击队或预备队。

突击队，由步兵分队和配属的机枪、火箭筒、轻喷火器组成。在火力掩护下，勇猛冲击，突破敌人防御，巩固并扩大突破口，保障后续梯队进入战斗。

工程保障队，由配属的工兵或受过专门训练的战士编成。配备足够的器材，主要负责

二、攻占与巩固扩大突破口

连(排)应集中兵力、火力于突破口上,实施猛烈的攻击,坚决打开突破口,保障后续梯队进入战斗。

(一)打开突破口

火力准备时,连(排)指挥员应亲自观察火力准备的效果和敌情变化,并报告上级。火力队对敌残存的和新发现的火力点进行压制和摧毁。工程保障队在火力或烟幕掩护下,以连续爆破或架梯(桥)等方法,在敌障碍物(外壕)中开辟通路。突击队迅速做好冲击准备。

当上级发出冲击信号或命令时,突击队应勇猛地发起冲击;迅速通过通路,以压倒一切敌人的英雄气概,一往无前,坚决突入敌人阵地,以接近射击、手榴弹、炸药包、爆破筒、喷火器和白刃格斗消灭敌人,迅速攻占突破口附近的重要街口、建筑物等要点。工程保障队应紧跟突击队前进,随时准备克服敌障碍物,爆破敌火力点,保障突击队的

行动。预备队在突击队突破后,迅速进入突破口,随时准备进入战斗。火力队以火力支援突击队冲击,根据指示逐次转移阵地,并不间断地支援各分队战斗。

当有坦克支援冲击时,坦克应以火力摧毁突破口及其两侧的敌火力点,坦克和装甲车,支援步兵冲击;步兵应在坦克支援下勇猛冲击。当坦克受阻时,步兵应继续冲击前进,可指定少数兵力和火器,协助坦克克服障碍和消灭妨碍坦克前进的目标。

(二)巩固扩大突破口,粉碎敌人反冲击突破后,分队应迅速向敌纵深或两翼扩大突破口。火力队应迅速在有利地形上占领发射阵地,摧毁和压制突破口两侧及敌纵深火力点,支援各分队的战斗。工程保障队在火力掩护下,克服敌人障碍物,为坦克和突击队发展进攻开辟道路。突击队应在火力队、工程保障队的支援下,坚决勇猛地向两翼或纵深冲击,迅速扩大突破口。预备队在突击队的翼侧和发展顺利的方向进入战

斗，增强突击力量，或对敌实施包围迂回，协同突击队围歼敌人。

当敌人向我反冲击时，连(排)指挥员应迅速报告上级，同时坚定、果断地指挥分队迅速抢占有利地形和建筑物，组织火力，以反坦克火器和反坦克小组击毁敌坦克，以猛烈的火力狠打敌步兵，给敌严重杀伤后，随即向其侧后发起冲击，消灭敌人，并乘胜向敌纵深发展进攻。

三、分割包围，各个歼敌

城镇内战斗，指挥员应及时查明情况，加强通信联络，实施不间断的指挥，大胆实施包围迂回、穿插分割，与地方武装紧密配合，各个歼灭敌人。

(一)消灭街区之敌

分队沿街发展进攻时，应在火力掩护下，沿街道一侧或两侧交替前进发展进攻，或打通墙壁穿过庭院实施包围迂回，或沿地下设各直插敌人侧后，打乱敌人部署，分割围歼敌人。分队前进中应加强搜索，各种火器应

交替转移，及时支援各分队战斗。如需横越街道时，应拉大距离，采取跃进通过。如遇敌依托房屋顽抗时，分队应组织火力，封锁门窗、射孔，对屋角、墙壁实施爆破，打开通路，乘爆炸的烟幕突然发起冲击，以抵近射击、手榴弹和白刃格斗消灭敌人。

(二)消灭街心堡之敌

当在十字街口、广场中心遇敌地堡或地堡群时，应首先查明情况，夺取其一侧或两侧建筑物作为依托，机枪配置在建筑物内，以猛烈的火力封锁地堡射孔；坦克、无座力炮、火箭筒、喷火器利用有利地形占领发射阵地，以火力摧毁对我威胁最大的地堡，支援步兵冲击；工程保障队应用地形、建筑物，迅速接近敌人，炸毁敌地堡；突击队利用火力压制和爆破的效果，勇猛地发起冲击，消灭地堡内的残敌。根据上级指示，连(排)可指定少数兵力消灭或监视封锁地堡之敌，主力绕过，继续发展进攻。

(三)围歼坚固建筑物之敌

对据守坚固建筑物的敌人进攻时，应首先消灭其周围之敌，攻占临近的建筑物，将敌包围起来，尔后集中兵力和火力在便于我荫蔽接近、便于配置各种火器、便于突破后向建筑物内发展的攻击点上，实施突击。突击时，以步机枪火力封锁建筑物的门窗、射孔，以坦克、无座力炮、火箭筒、轻喷火器和爆破器材摧毁敌中、下层的火力点；迫击炮压制上层和遮蔽物后的敌人；突击队在火力掩护下，利用射击、爆破效果，坚决勇猛地突入建筑物内，迅速占领楼梯口两侧和走廊拐弯处及出入口，沿楼梯由下而上，交互掩护，逐层夺取，逐层巩固。对地下室，先派少数兵力监视，防敌突然袭击。如楼梯被敌严密封锁，可在天花板和墙壁上开洞实施攻击，或用长梯、绳索等器材，从建筑物外面攀登上楼，实行上下夹击，消灭敌人。

(四)肃清地下室(道)之敌

肃清地下室(道)之敌时，分队应与民兵取得密切联系，迅速查明其进出口的位置、

兵力、火力和地下室(道)内的情况。以无座力炮、火箭筒、爆破器材，摧毁地下室(道)进出口附近的火力点，以战斗小组交互掩护进入地下室(道)，结合政治攻势，歼灭敌人。必要时，可用喷火、烟熏、水淹、爆破等方法，消灭地下室(道)之敌。

现地勘察时，应尽量靠近敌人前沿进行多点侦察，着重查明：敌前沿的位置，兵力部署和火力配系情况；支撑点和前沿前的河流沟渠内障碍物的位置、性质和密度；进攻地段内河流、沟渠、河床和两岸性质、水深、流速，稻田地泥泞深陷的程度，夺占敌重要环水地域（支撑点）的包围迂回路线和荫蔽接近路等。

选择攻击点时，应力求选在有纵、斜向河流或道路的地点，尽量避开前沿、纵深内有横向河流和沟渠的地点。但有时也可选在河流、沟渠较多的复杂地形上，以出其不意地攻击敌人。

（二）兵力部署

兵力部署，应集中主要兵力、火力于攻击点上，实施主攻；以部分兵力，力求从敌正面及其一翼或两翼实施助攻，对攻击目标形成围攻的部署。当攻击前不能形成围攻部署时，则应集中主力突破一点，突破后实施包围迂回。为克服各种障碍，连应由工兵和

步兵连(排)水网稻田地

进攻战斗的特点

水网稻田地，河流、沟渠纵横交错，灌溉季节稻田积水，泥泞深陷，指挥不便，协同、机动困难。但地下水位高，敌不易构筑坚固工事，防御阵地常被河流分割，易形成间隙和暴露翼侧，便于我分割歼敌人。连（排）进攻时，应发扬英勇顽强、独立战斗和主动协同的精神；广泛利用应用器材，连续克服障碍；大胆地实施包围迂回、穿插分割，各个歼灭敌人。

一、做好进攻准备

连（排）进攻时，应根据上级指示，在党支部的领导下，充分发动群众，周密组织战斗，迅速做好进攻准备。

（一）现地勘察，选择攻击点

受过专门技术训练的步兵战士组成工程保障队。战斗队形应尽量靠前配置，以减少各分队在敌火下克服河流、沟渠等障碍的次数和便于向敌突然发起冲击。

火器的使用。火箭筒、轻喷火器和大部分机枪，应配属给步兵排(班)，无座力炮应大部分配属给各步兵排，以增强其独立战斗和反坦克的能力。迫击炮通常由连统一掌握，必要时可将六〇炮配属给担任主攻的排。火炮通常配置在道路或纵向河流两侧、村庄边缘等便于机动和发扬火力的有利地形上。

(三) 组织协同

连(排)指挥员在规定任务后，应周密地组织协同。其内容：

1. 各分队占领冲击出发阵地的时机和协同方法；
2. 冲击和连续克服河流、沟渠时，各分队的行动；
3. 围歼敌支撑点时，各分队的行动；
4. 粉碎敌反冲击时，各分队的行动；

5. 信(记)号。

(四) 组织保障

1. 加强侦察、警戒，必要时可指派侦察小组，利用夜间或雾天，秘密地渗入敌人侧后进行侦察。

2. 指定对空射击火器，射击低飞的敌机。

3. 发动群众准备好克服泥泞和渡河的应用器材，加强对其它器材的防水、防潮措施。

二、荫蔽接敌，勇猛冲击

(一) 荫蔽地占领冲击出发阵地

连(排)通常利用夜间或不良天候，采取秘密和神速的行动，占领冲击出发阵地。有时可在我航空兵、炮兵火力掩护下，沿纵向田埂、河堤、道路，以疏开队形，采取跃进运动，荫蔽迅速地占领。占领后，应严密伪装，防敌袭击，并给所属分队进一步明确任务，切实做好冲击准备。按规定，及时指挥工程保障队，在敌人防御前沿水中中和岸上

的障碍物中开辟通路。

(二) 勇猛冲击

连(排)应利用我炮兵、航空兵火力的效果,发扬“压倒一切敌人,而决不被敌人所屈服”的英雄气概,勇猛发起冲击。如敌人防御前沿在河流、沟渠对岸时,应在各种火力支援下,首先强渡河流、沟渠,尔后,充分利用纵向田埂、道路、河堤等便于通行的地形,坚决勇猛地向指定目标冲击。如敌防御前沿在河流、沟渠的我岸时,应先向敌前沿冲击,歼灭守敌后迅速渡过河流、沟渠,向指定方向发展进攻。

当有坦克和水陆坦克支援时,连(排)应及时给坦克指示目标和标示前进道路,并在其引导或火力支援下,勇猛冲击,歼灭敌人。

三、穿插分割,各个歼敌

突破敌人阵地后,连(排)应在火力掩护下,迅速抢占桥梁、渡口、高地等要点,并利用渡河器材或以泅渡、徒涉等方法,连续渡

过河流、沟渠,迅速发展进攻,大胆地实施包围迂回、穿插分割,断敌退路,各个歼敌。

(一) 围歼环水支撑点之敌

遇敌环水支撑点时,连(排)指挥员应迅速查明环水情况,敌火力点、坦克和装甲车的位置、数量。以部分兵力从敌正面攻击,吸引敌人,主力在炮兵、迫击炮、机枪火力掩护下,从敌人的间隙、翼侧,沿纵向河流或道路插入其侧后实施攻击,或采取数路从不同方向有重点的实施攻击,勇猛插入敌支撑点内,将敌分割围歼。

(二) 粉碎敌人反冲击

当敌人水陆坦克和水陆装甲车沿河流、道路同时实施反冲击时,连(排)指挥员应指挥分队迅速抢占河堤、村落、高地等有利地形,组织火力割断敌人水陆之间的联系,以主要兵力消灭对我威胁最大的一路,尔后再消灭另一路。

当敌水陆坦克和水陆装甲车沿河流、步

兵沿道路同时实施反冲击时，首先应组织火力，割断敌水陆之间的联系，以反坦克火器击毁水陆坦克和装甲车；同时组织火力杀伤敌步兵，打乱其战斗队形，趁敌混乱之际，以部分兵力向其侧后勇猛冲击，配合主力，歼灭敌人。

对搭乘水上输送工具沿河道反冲击之敌，应集中火力歼敌于水中。

步兵连(排)遭遇战斗

遭遇战斗，是敌我在运动中相遇发生的战斗。遭遇战斗分预期和超预期两种。其特点是：战斗触发突然，敌情不明、变化急剧，地形不熟，组织战斗时间短促，双方都有暴露的翼侧，便于广泛地实施机动。因此，连(排)与敌遭遇时，必须力争主动，力避被动，争取先机之利，迫使敌处于被动地位，以突然、猛烈的火力和勇猛的冲击，大胆实施分割包围，迅速歼灭敌人。

一、做好遭遇战斗准备

“有了准备，就能恰当地应付各种复杂的局面”。遭遇战斗的准备工作，在预期遭遇的情况下，主要在行军前和行军中完成，不预期遭遇时，应在战斗中边打边组织。

(一) 确定行动方案

连受领任务后，只要情况允许，应召开

党支部委员会，传达上级的命令，分析敌人的动向、企图和可能与我遭遇的地区，研究行进道路及两侧的地形状况，根据进入战斗的可能顺序确定行军部署，拟定与敌遭遇时的战斗方案。不预期遭遇时，则由指挥员机断处置，事后向党支部报告。

(二) 规定任务

连(排)指挥员给所属和配属分队规定任务时，应着重指出：

1. 敌人的位置、企图和可能与我遭遇的地区；
2. 上级意图；
3. 我侦察分队和地方武装的活动情况；
4. 连(排)任务，行军序列，尖兵班、搜索组的编成和任务；
5. 与敌遭遇时，各分队的任务及协同的方法；
6. 指挥员的位置；
7. 信(记)号。

规定任务后，应针对战斗特点和干部、战士的思想情况进行动员，检查分队对任务的了解和武器、弹药、物资、器材的准备情况，并报告上级。

二、行军指挥

连(排)应按战斗编组和预定进入战斗的顺序行军。反坦克火器、机枪通常在本队的先头行进。行军中应提高警惕，加强侦察、警戒，应向前方派出尖兵班和向侧方派出搜索组或尖兵班。连(排)指挥员应在本队的先头行进，直接指挥尖兵班的行动，并及时掌握和处置情况。各分队要随时准备进入战斗。

连(排)指挥员要边走、边调查，主动与民兵取得联系。对出现的一切可疑征候，应严密观察和分析判断。当接近可能与敌遭遇的地区时，应缩短行军距离，召唤排(班)长随连(排)指挥员行进，以便及时指挥分队行动。

三、与敌遭遇时的行动

连(排)与敌遭遇时，指挥员应立即以火

力支援尖兵班消灭敌侦察搜索组(车), 迅速判明情况, 报告上级, 果断定下决心, 指挥分队先敌开火, 先敌抢占有利地形, 先敌展开猛烈冲击, 力求歼敌于运动中, 并注意保障翼侧。

△ 当我先敌展开占领要点时, 连(排)指挥员应充分利用我之主动地位, 乘敌接近和尚未展开之际, 指挥各种火器突然开火, 以反坦克火器、手雷、炸药包、爆破筒摧毁敌坦克和装甲车, 以猛烈的迫击炮和步机枪火力、手榴弹、白刃格斗消灭敌步兵。当敌遭我杀伤而溃退时, 应勇猛追击消灭敌人(图一)。如敌未发觉我已占领要点时, 应力争以伏击的手段歼灭敌人的先头分队, 迫使本队处于不利态势, 配合主力消灭敌人。

△ 当敌我同时展开时, 连(排)应以坚决勇猛的行动, 抢占有利地形。此时, 即使一个班、一个连先敌占领要点, 对取得战斗胜利具有重要意义。指挥员应立即指挥火器分队迅速占领发射阵地, 先敌开火, 击毁敌据

克、装甲车, 杀伤敌步兵, 制止敌人展开和机动, 同时指挥各排(班)以迅速勇猛的动作先敌抢占要点。如敌我同时到达要点时, 各排(班)应先敌勇猛冲击, 以抵近射击、手榴弹、白刃格斗和反坦克器材, 坚决歼灭敌人。夺取要点后, 应迅速扩张战果, 或立即组织火力、构筑工事、调整部署, 准备抗击敌人的连续冲击, 保障主力展开和进入战斗(图二)。

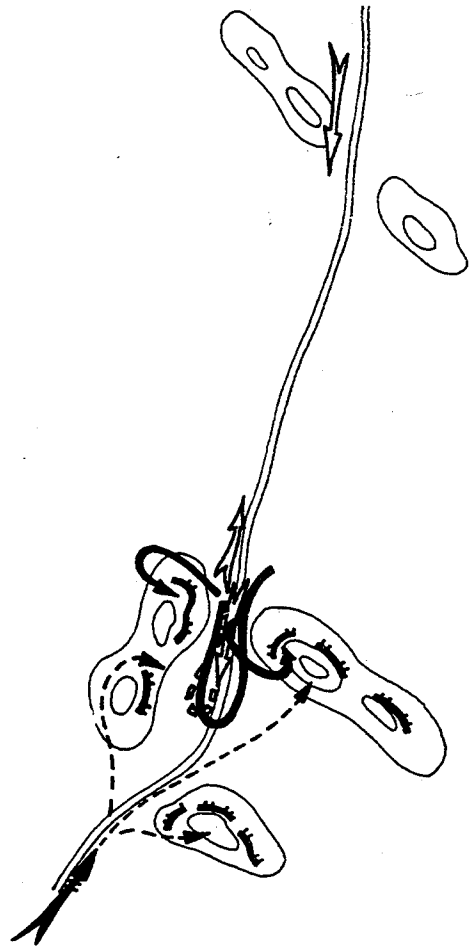
△ 当敌警戒分队先我占领要点时, 指挥员应迅速查明情况, 立即指挥迫击炮就地占领发射阵地, 以集中猛烈的火力压制敌人有生力量和火器; 指挥反坦克火器坚决击毁对我危害最大的敌坦克、装甲车, 并乘敌立足未稳之际, 指挥各排(班)在我火力掩护下, 勇猛发起冲击, 利用敌人战斗队形的间隙、翼侧, 大胆实施分割包围, 迅速歼灭敌人, 夺取要点。如敌向我冲击时, 指挥员应沉着果断地指挥分队, 迅速占领就近的有利地形, 以反坦克火器和反坦克小组击毁敌人的

坦克、装甲车，以迫击炮和步机枪火力切断敌人步兵与坦克的联系，大量杀伤其步兵，击退敌人的冲击，制止敌人对我包围，坚决扼守已占领的有利地形，掩护主力展开和进入战斗(图三)。

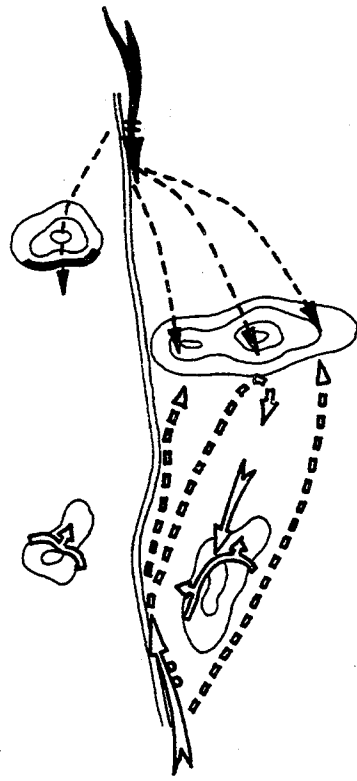
△ 当我与横方向运动之敌遭遇时，连(排)指挥员应果断指挥各分队，以突然猛烈的火力和坚决勇猛的冲击，打乱和切断敌人行军队形，歼灭当面之敌，并坚决抢占要点，掩护主力进入战斗(图四)。


步兵连(排)遭遇战斗图例

图一

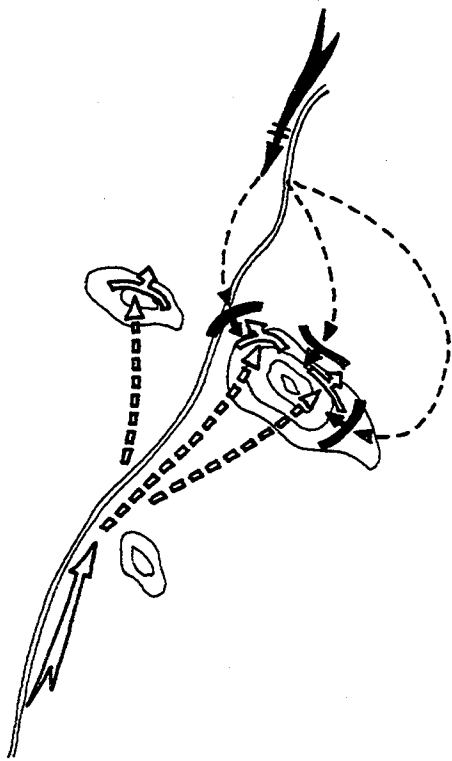


图二



LEGEND

 ENEMY FORCES
 PRC FORCES

图三



步兵连(排)伏击战斗

伏击，是从预先荫蔽配置地域对运动之敌实施突然袭击的战斗。分待伏和诱伏两种。连(排)应预将大兵荫蔽集结于敌必经通路之侧，乘敌运动之际，突然前进，包围而攻击之，打他一个措手不及，迅速解决战斗。

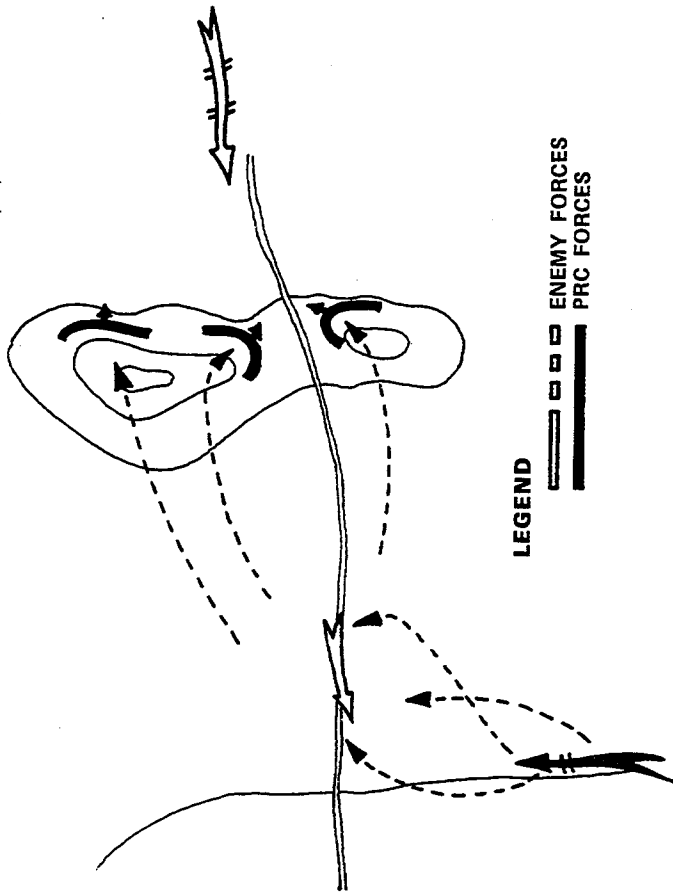
一、周密组织准备，确定伏击部署

连(排)在组织伏击时，应采取尽可能的严密的计划，荫蔽迅速地做好伏击准备。

(一)定下初步决心

连(排)受领任务后，应正确理解上级的意图，在图上研究敌情和地形，确实弄清敌人的兵力、企图和运动路线，沿途地形及敌人的行动规律，人民群众条件，在分析判断的基础上及时定下初步决心。连应适时召开党支部委员会，传达上级的命令，审定指挥员的初步决心，研究和确定战斗动员员的要求

图四



和方法，明确分工，统一安排各项准备工作。

(二) 选择伏击阵地

连(排)指挥员应带领排(班)长和加强火器分队的指挥员，秘密进入预定的伏击地域，隐蔽地侦察地形，选择伏击阵地。伏击阵地，应选择在必经的通路之侧；群众条件好，利于我封锁消息和与民兵配合作战；有隐蔽的进出道路，能隐蔽配置兵力和发扬火力，便于我突然发起冲击，不利于敌展开的谷地、隘路、林缘、桥梁、渡口等地区。

为隐蔽企图，防敌空、炮火力袭击和侦察，通常应在伏击阵地的侧后和翼侧选择待机地域。待机地域要尽量靠近伏击阵地，距离一般为2—4公里。

(三) 确定伏击部署

伏击部署应根据敌人可能的行动、分队的任务、地形条件，力求将兵力成袋形配置。如地形受限时，也可将兵力、火器配置在一侧便于出击和发扬火力的有利地形上。伏

击圈的大、小，应根据上级企图、地形、敌我兵力对比情况而定，防止分散兵力。

连(排)通常应以主要兵力编成侧击分队，配置在伏击地区的一侧或两侧，便于突然出击而又不易被敌发觉的位置，担任主要突击。以部分兵力并配属必要的反坦克火器，编成堵击和尾击分队。堵击分队配置在便于堵击敌人的要点附近，尾击分队配置在敌人来路的一侧，以保证能堵住截断，配合侧击分队全歼敌人。

反坦克火器应隐蔽配置在伏击阵地的一侧或两侧，便于击毁敌坦克的地形上。机枪应隐蔽配置在能发扬火力和掩护步兵冲击的有利地形上。迫击炮通常配置在便于支援步兵战斗，并能控制死角的隐蔽地形上。各种火器必须在伏击圈内各主要路段上，组成以打坦克为主的直射、侧射、斜射的火网。

指挥位置，应配置在便于观察、指挥的隐蔽地形上。并向敌方的适当距离派出观察组，以便及时掌握敌情。

(四)规定任务,组织协同

连(排)指挥员应荫蔽地在现地给各分队规定任务,并组织协同。其内容:

1. 敌人的兵力和可能的行动方向、路线,到达我伏击地区的时间;
2. 上级的企图和本分队的任务;
3. 进入待机地域和占领伏击阵地的时机、路线和方法;
4. 侧击、堵击、尾击分队的编成和配置位置,任务、出击路线和协同方法,打敌坦克的措施;
5. 各种火器的发射阵地、任务和支援步兵冲击的方法;
6. 与民兵的协同方法;
7. 与观察组的联络方法;
8. 信(记)号;
9. 完成伏击准备的时间。

指挥员在组织战斗时,应充分发扬军事民主,研究可能出现的情况和打法,规定伏击纪律和保密措施,检查分队有关器材、干

粮、饮水、御寒或防暑等物品的准备情况,并报告上级。

二、荫蔽占领伏击阵地

连(排)应利用黑夜或不良天候,采取秘密和神速的行动占领伏击阵地荫蔽待机。进入时,应先向敌人来的方向的适当距离上派出观察组监视敌人行动,本队则沿规定路线采取行军队形,在前方搜索组的掩护下荫蔽迅速地前进。指挥员在本队先头行进,及时掌握敌情,不间断地观察地形和掌握行进方向。进入阵地后,应立即派出观察、警戒,组织分队构筑必要的工事,进行严密的伪装和埋设防坦克、防步兵地雷,迅速完成战斗准备。

如连(排)先在待机地域荫蔽待机时,应派出警戒控制伏击地区。视情况,组织必要人员在伏击地区构筑主要火器的发射阵地,向敌人来的方向的适当距离上派出观察组,监视敌人的行动。发现敌人后,适时指挥分队采取多路荫蔽开进,迅速占领伏击阵地。

根据情况或上级指示，连可组织精干的小分队与民兵协同，积极采取各种手段迷惑敌人，造成敌人错觉，诱敌进入我伏击圈，予以歼灭。

伏击分队，无论在伏击阵地或在待机地域待机，都要深入细致地进行战斗动员，切实荫蔽，封锁消息，耐心等待，不怕艰苦，随时准备出击，并经常和上级保持密切联系。

三、突然攻击，近战歼敌

当敌侦察车辆（人员）进入我伏击地区时，各分队应沉着冷静，确实荫蔽，将其放过，没有命令不准射击，不得暴露我伏击位置。

当敌主力进入我伏击圈时，连（排）指挥员要英勇果断，抓住战机，运用堵头、斩腰、截尾战术，及时发出出击号令，指挥分队给敌以不意的攻击，速战速决，歼敌于运动中。反坦克火器应集中火力首先击毁敌先头和后尾的坦克及装甲车，以阻塞敌人的进退道路，

迫击炮分队应以准确猛烈的火力打乱敌行军队形，阻止敌人展开，杀伤敌有生力量，支援步兵冲击。堵击分队应依托有利地形，坚决堵住敌人，迫敌于不利地位，配合侧击分队歼灭敌人。侧击分队应立即向敌发起勇猛冲击，多路插入敌行军队形，分型包围，用爆破筒、炸药包、手雷炸毁敌坦克。装甲车，以抵近射击、手榴弹，白刃格斗坚决消灭敌步兵，尾击分队应迅速抢占要点，断敌退路，阻敌增援，并视情况向敌后尾实施冲击，配合主力围歼敌人。

当敌人利用地形和凭借坦克、装甲车顽抗时，应乘其立足未稳，集中兵力、火力，向敌翼侧勇猛冲击，迅速歼灭敌人。

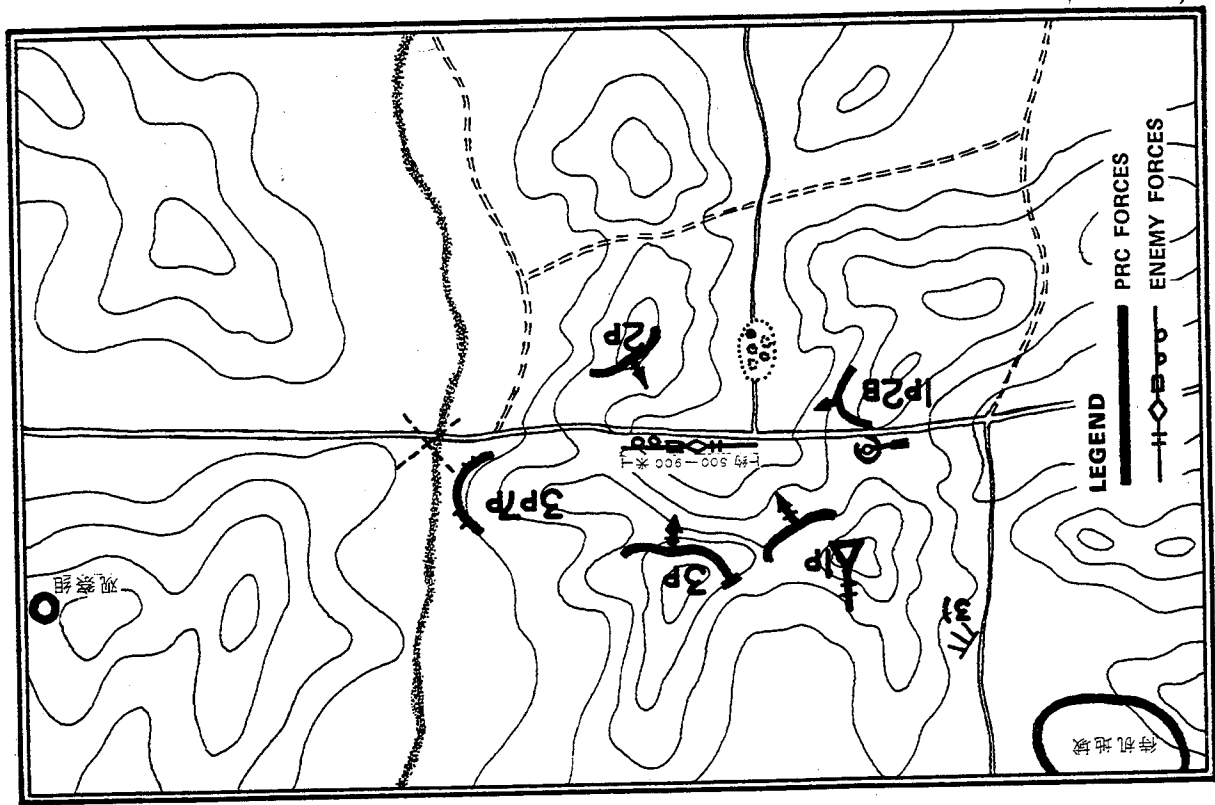
四、及时撤离伏击地区

连（排）完成伏击任务后，应向敌人来的方向派出警戒，以少部兵力打扫战场，主力迅速撤离伏击地区，严防敌航空兵和炮兵的火力袭击。撤离时，视情况可采取一路或多路撤出。必要时，应派出后方警戒，防敌尾

随追击。

当我伏击企图被敌发觉不能按预定计划实施伏击时，连(排)指挥员应根据上级指示和具体情况，坚决发起攻击，力争歼敌一部或以猛烈的火力给敌以重大杀伤后，有组织的迅速撤出伏击地区，切忌在敌火下犹豫不决，留恋无把握的战斗。

步兵连伏击部署图例



队连还有协同友邻歼灭空降之敌的任务。

连(排)在防御战斗中,可能得到迫击炮、无座力炮、重机枪、连用机枪、轻喷火器的配属。排可能得到六〇炮、无座力炮、火箭筒和重机枪(连用机枪)、轻喷火器的配属。

一、召开党支部委员会,进行战斗动员

连队党支部是连队统一领导和团结战斗的核心。“一切重要问题……均须交委员会讨论,由到会委员充分发表意见,做出明确决定,然后分别执行。”连受领任务后,应在指挥员了解任务、判断情况、定下初步决心的基础上,适时召开支委(扩大)会,传达上级的命令、指示,理解上级的作战意图和本连的任务,研究指挥员的初步决心,统一认识,确定战斗方案,明确战斗动员的要求和方法;调整组织,配备骨干,明确干部分工,指定干部代理人,统一安排战斗准备工作。

深入进行战斗动员。根据连的任务和指挥员的思想情况,通常采取先党内后党外,先干部后战士的方法,进行深入的战斗动

步兵连(排)阵地防御

防御,是辅助进攻或准备转入进攻的一种手段。“基本的原则是承认积极防御,反对消极防御。”防御战斗中,粉碎敌人坦克的连续冲击,对于取得战斗的胜利具有重要意义。因此,连(排)防御时,必须贯彻积极防御的思想,发扬近战、夜战的优良传统和英勇顽强、独立作战的作风,集中主要兵力扼守要点,组成以反坦克为主的支撑点的防御,依托阵地,以猛烈、准确的火力和勇猛的反冲击,粉碎敌人的进攻,坚决守住阵地。

连(排)通常在营(连)编成内组织防御,可担任第一梯队或预备队,有时也可独立遂行防御任务。第一梯队的任务是固守前沿支撑点,以火力和反冲击消灭敌人。预备队的任务是支援和接替第一梯队战斗,阻止敌人向纵深扩张,以反冲击消灭突入之敌。预备

器发射阵地的位置；敌坦克与步兵可能荫蔽集结、展开、冲击、穿插迂回的地段和进攻的主要方向。

通过侦察、判断，在敌人可能进攻的主要方向上，选定便于观察和发扬火力，便于打坦克，便于独立坚守和兵力机动，能确保防御稳定的有利地形作为防御要点。

(二) 兵力部署，火力配系

兵力部署，应根据敌情、任务和地形条件，集中主要兵力扼守要点，采取纵深疏散荫蔽的配置，并控制强有力的预备队。预备队应配置在核心阵地或便于荫蔽、机动的位置。连通常以两个排分别组成前沿支撑点，以一个排组成纵深支撑点(图一)，也可以一个排组成前沿支撑点，以两个排组成纵深支撑点(图二)，并以火力、障碍物、交通壕、堑壕与各排支撑点相互联系，组成连支撑点。有时也可全连组成一个支撑点(图三)，排守备连支撑点内的某一地段如附图。连指挥位置应选在支撑点内便于观察和指挥的主要防

员。在动员时，着重讲清敌情、任务、目的、意义、胜利条件和克服困难战胜敌人的办法，提出有力的战斗口号，发挥党、团员的骨干作用，开展群众性的思想工作，激发全体指战员的阶级仇恨和战斗热忱，坚定必胜的信心，掀起杀敌立功竞赛热潮。战斗中要不断地开展宣传鼓动工作，发挥党、团员的模范带头作用，鼓舞全体指战员奋勇杀敌，顽强战斗，坚决完成战斗任务。

二、周密组织战斗，做好防御准备

连(排)指挥员应根据每战都应力求有准备的原则，按上级命令和党支部的决议，细致地进行现地勘察，正确选择防御要点和确定防御部署，周密地组织协同，迅速荫蔽地完成防御准备。

(一) 现地勘察，选择防御要点

连(排)指挥员现地勘察时，通常按主要方向后次要方向、先前沿后纵深的顺序逐点进行。应着重查明，防御地域内的地形、道路状况，防御前沿、各排的阵地和主要

力到受威胁的地段上。

(三)规定任务，组织协同

连(排)指挥员应给各分队简明准确地规定任务。首先指明方位物，尔后着重明确：

1. 敌情；
2. 上级和本分队的任务；
3. 友邻的任务；
4. 各排(班)的任务，防御阵地，固守的要点，射击地境和集中射击地段，保障翼侧和接合部的措施；
5. 配属分队的任务，火器的发射阵地、射击地境、补加射击地境和集中射击地段；
6. 反坦克队(组)的编成、配置和任务；
7. 完成战斗准备的时间；
8. 指挥位置。

连(排)组织协同通常在规定的任务的同时明确，也可在规定的任务后组织。组织协同时，应着重明确：

1. 支援战斗警戒战斗和掩护其撤回的

御阵地上。

火力配系，应根据敌情、任务和火器性能、地形条件，贯彻火器分散配置、火力集中使用的原则，有计划地使用和配置各种火器。无座力炮通常由连(排)集中使用，可编入反坦克队(组)，也可适当配属给排(班)，配置在受敌坦克威胁的方向上；迫击炮通常由连集中使用，有时六〇炮亦可配属给主要方向上的步兵排，配置在纵深内便于发扬火力的荫蔽地域；机枪通常配属给排(班)，配置在前沿和纵深内便于发扬火力的地点；轻喷火器通常配属给排(班)，以组为单位配置在前沿堑壕或交通壕内。在前沿前、翼侧、接合部和纵深内，应以各种火器组成反坦克为主的明暗火力相结合的直射、侧射、斜射、倒打的多层火网。对死角、荫蔽接近地和坑道口，应以迫击炮和机枪的侧射火力加以控制，或设置暗火力点。应指定机枪组成对空火力。各种火器必须做好机动射击的准备，并应密切协调，以便能在最短时间内集中火

方法；

2. 敌原子、化学武器和航空兵、炮兵火力袭击时，各分队的行动；
3. 制止敌人向我前沿接近和抗击敌人冲击时，各分队的行动；
4. 消灭突入之敌和实施反冲击时，各分队的行动；
5. 粉碎敌人分割、包围时，各分队的行动；
6. 与炮兵、航空兵、友邻和民兵协同的方法；
7. 信(记)号。

(四)构筑工事，设置障碍

连(排)应善于利用地形构筑防御工事。工事应便于发扬火力，力求坚固、低下、疏散、荫蔽，并严密伪装。在敌集群坦克可能冲击的主要方向上，应构筑反坦克阵地。构筑工事时，指挥员应明确各种工事的位置，工程作业的顺序、方法、要求和完成的时间。工程作业通常按先主后次，先前沿后纵深，

先散兵坑、火器阵地后堑壕、掩蔽部(坑道)、交通壕的顺序实施。在重要地段上的堑壕、交通壕应加掩盖，如土质松散应加被覆。堑壕和火器阵地内应挖猫耳洞。只要条件许可，掩蔽部(坑道)均应增加防原子、防化学和储存粮、弹、水等设备，并应不断地加强防御工事。

设置障碍应有重点，并与火力和天然障碍紧密结合。通常应在便于敌坦克运动的地段，挖掘反坦克壕和陷阱，设置反坦克雷场、石障和桩岩，构筑削壁。在我前沿前和便于敌步兵迂回的翼侧、间隙地设置铁丝网、鹿砦和防步兵雷场。时间允许，还应构筑防坦克网状阵地。

(五)组织各种保障

连(排)应周密组织侦察和观察报知勤务，派出直接警戒、指定值班分队和火器，以监视敌人行动，掩护分队进行战斗准备和防敌突然袭击。准备好防原子、防化学器材，做好群众性的防护工作。规定连弹药所的组

成、配置和各分队粮、弹、水的储存量。明确营救保护所的位置和自救、互救措施。

连(排)应充分发动群众,开展军事民主,摆敌情、论战法,集中群众智慧战胜敌人。时间允许时,应组织临战训练,提高分队的技术、战术水平,熟悉协同动作,修改和充实战斗方案。

三、积极打击敌人,防敌火力袭击

连(排)应“力争主动,力避被动”,采取一切积极手段,杀伤、消耗、疲惫敌人,并加强防护措施,有效地保存自己力量。

(一)积极打击敌人

不与敌直接接触时,指挥员应根据上级命令,派出小分队与民兵配合,在阵地前敌必经地区荫蔽设伏,监视敌人行动,捕歼小群侦察之敌。当敌人向我接近时,应以积极的战斗行动,杀伤敌有生力量,迫敌展开,迟滞其行动,掩护分队做好抗击敌人冲击的准备。

与敌直接接触时,应积极开展冷枪冷炮

活动。还可根据上级命令,利用夜暗等有利条件,派出小分队,在敌前沿、翼侧、间隙地,进行侦察、伏击,或对敌之突出部、薄弱环节进行袭击。

(二)防敌火力袭击

得到原子或化学袭击警报时,除观察员就地荫蔽、穿戴防护器材继续观察外,其余人员应迅速进入掩蔽部或坑道进行荫蔽。当敌原子冲击波过后,指挥员应组织抢救、灭火、消除沾染,修复工事,严密监视敌人,并将情况及时报告上级。

当敌航空兵、炮兵火力袭击时,除留观察员和值班火器监视敌人行动、积极射击低飞敌机外,其余人员应迅速进行荫蔽,并做好战斗准备。指挥员应亲自观察情况,查明敌人发起冲击的征候,适时指挥分队占领阵地,抢修工事,准备抗击敌人的冲击,但应注意敌火力假转移。

四、顽强抗击敌人冲击

连(排)抗击敌人坦克、步兵冲击时,要

△当敌遭我火力杀伤。队形混乱、情况对我有利时，指挥员应抓住战机，以班(组)向敌翼侧实施短距离的阵前出击，狠打快收。敌被我击退时，应立即组织火力追击。敌人向友邻冲击时，应以火力支援友邻战斗。

△击退敌人冲击后，应严防敌火力袭击，迅速调整部署，进行动员，抢修工事，补充弹药，做好抗击敌人再次冲击的准备。

五、坚决勇猛的反冲击，消灭突入之敌

当敌人突入我阵地时，应坚决扼守阵地，以猛烈准确的火力杀伤敌人，制止敌人扩张，封锁突破口，阻敌后续梯队进入；当敌人遭我严重杀伤。队形混乱、立足未稳时，或利用夜暗的有利条件，适时使用预备队，坚决、勇猛地向敌人侧后实施反冲击，消灭突入之敌，恢复阵地。如敌处于优势，连(排)应坚决阻敌向纵深发展，并积极参加上级组织的反冲击，歼灭敌人。分队实施反冲击通常应经上级批准，并得到上级的火力支援。

实施反冲击时，指挥员应明确：反冲击

“勇敢、坚定、沉着”，集中火力，近战歼敌，首先消灭对我危害最大的敌人，尔后转移火力，各个歼灭敌人。

△当敌发起冲击时，指挥员应及时判明敌人主攻方向，根据情况，指挥分队和火器逐次占领阵地，先以迫击炮的火力杀伤敌步兵。当敌人坦克进至我反坦克火器有效射程内时，应适时指挥反坦克火器突然开火，消灭敌坦克和装甲车。

△当敌接近我障碍物和通过通路时，应指挥反坦克队(组)和各种反坦克火器以集中、猛烈的火力，首先击毁对我威胁最大的敌坦克，尔后消灭其它坦克。步机枪、迫击炮以准确猛烈的火力，打乱敌战斗队形，切断其步兵与坦克的联系，消灭敌有生力量。

△当敌进到我前沿附近时，应指挥分队以反坦克火器和爆破器材，采取靠近打、待机炸等手段，击毁敌坦克；并以猛烈的火力和白刃格斗，坚决打垮敌人的连续冲击，将敌

迅速向我威胁最大的方向机动兵力、火力，阻敌向纵深发展，粉碎敌之分割包围企图。

当我部分阵地被敌分割包围时，被围分队应及时调整部署，依托要点，利用工事和障碍，以猛烈火力击毁敌坦克、杀伤敌步兵，与敌反复争夺，坚决守住阵地。连(排)指挥员应指挥其他分队和火器支援被围分队战斗，粉碎敌之包围。

当连被敌包围时，指挥员应迅速调整部署，集中力量固守要点，特别要集中反坦克火力，击毁敌坦克，以猛烈的火力和积极的战斗行动，杀伤敌人，制止敌割裂我战斗队形，做到人在阵地在。并在上级的支援和邻的协同下，坚决粉碎敌之包围。

(二) 坚守坑(地)道战斗

当我表面阵地被敌占领或根据命令转入坑(地)道时，连(排)应组织兵力、火力，击退与我胶着之敌，指定火器占领坑道口附近的工事或有利地形进行掩护，严防敌人跟进。转入坑道时，应按伤员、弹药和分队的顺序，

分队的任务、方向、展开地区、行动时间和信号，炮火支援及各分队的协同方法。反冲击分队应利用我火力袭击的效果，在前沿分队的配合下，向敌人侧后坚决勇猛地冲击，以猛烈的火力和白刃格斗消灭突入之敌，恢复阵地。排实施反冲击时，通常以配置在纵深内的班(组)沿堑壕、交通壕实施。

反冲击失利时，应迅速抢占附近的有利地形进行巩固，坚决阻止敌人扩张，配合上级反冲击，恢复阵地。

六、粉碎敌包围，坚守坑道战斗

“无论处于怎样复杂、严重、惨苦的环境，军事指导者首先需要的是独立自主地组织和使用自己的力量。”连(排)被敌分割包围或转入坑道战斗时，应坚决扼守要点或坑道口，发扬勇敢战斗、不怕牺牲、孤胆作战的精神，独立顽强地战斗，积极杀伤敌人，粉碎敌分割包围。

(一) 粉碎敌人的分割包围

当受到敌人分割包围威胁时，指挥员应

入坑道。指挥员应随掩护分队行动，以观察情况，适时指挥。在分队进入坑道的同时，立即组织观察，指定火器和战斗小组扼守坑（地）道口。

转入坑（地）道后，应根据情况，将所有人员编成守备、出击、预备、勤务等组，明确任务，建立统一的指挥。发挥党、团员的模范带头作用，加强思想工作，坚定信心，做到“不论在任何艰难困苦场合，只要还有一个人，这个人就要继续战斗下去。”并尽可能保持与上级和友邻的通信联络，节约粮、弹、水，以利持久坚守。

坚守坑（地）道，主要是坑（地）道口的战斗。连（排）应在上级和友邻的支援配合下，采取一切手段，同敌人的破坏封锁作斗争，坚决守住坑（地）道口。敌人对我坑道口进行堵塞、爆破、喷火时，应坚决以火力将其歼灭。坑（地）道口被敌破坏时，应立即组织抢修，并以火力控制被破坏的地方。敌向我施放毒剂时，应利用防毒设备和就便器材进行

防护，对中毒人员应及时救护。敌在我坑（地）道口附近构筑地堡、设置障碍时，应利用有利时机以火力、爆破或要求炮兵将其摧毁。我坑（地）道口被敌占领时，应以积极行动，坚决夺回。

坚守坑（地）道的分队还可利用夜暗、拂晓和我炮兵射击的效果，以战斗小组，采取秘密和神速的动作，出其不意地袭击敌人，顽强地与敌在坑（地）道口外进行斗争。当上级反冲击时，应主动出击，积极配合。出击前，指挥员应给所属人员明确任务，进行动员，排除坑（地）道口的障碍物。出击时，应在我炮火延伸瞬间或根据信号，突然跃出坑（地）道，向敌侧后勇猛冲击，配合上级反冲击分队消灭敌人，恢复阵地。

七、夜间防御

连（排）夜间防御，“要发扬我军近战、夜战的优良传统”，必须严密组织，防敌袭击，近战歼敌。

（一）周密组织准备

(二)防敌偷袭，近战歼敌

连(排)在夜间防御时，要特别提高警惕，随时做好战斗准备，严格管制灯火，保持肃静，防敌偷袭。指挥员应加强值班和检查，及时处置各种情况，不为敌之伴动、欺骗所迷惑。并应采取积极的战斗活动，提前发现和主动地袭击敌人。

当小群敌人向我侦察、偷袭或破坏我障碍物时，应待其靠近后，以突然、猛烈的火力，或以小分队迂回敌之侧后，将其消灭或捕捉。也可根据上级命令，派出小分队在敌可能行动的方向上进行伏击。对被敌破坏的障碍物，应迅速修复或以火力控制。

当敌人在炮火掩护下向我冲击时，指挥员应根据情况首先指挥火器分队占领阵地，以火力迟滞敌人行动。当敌接近障碍物时，应充分利用敌之照明，以突然、准确、猛烈的火力，击毁敌坦克，消灭敌步兵。当敌通过障碍物后，应以猛烈的火力和手榴弹，将敌人消灭在前沿前。当敌被我火力杀伤、队形混

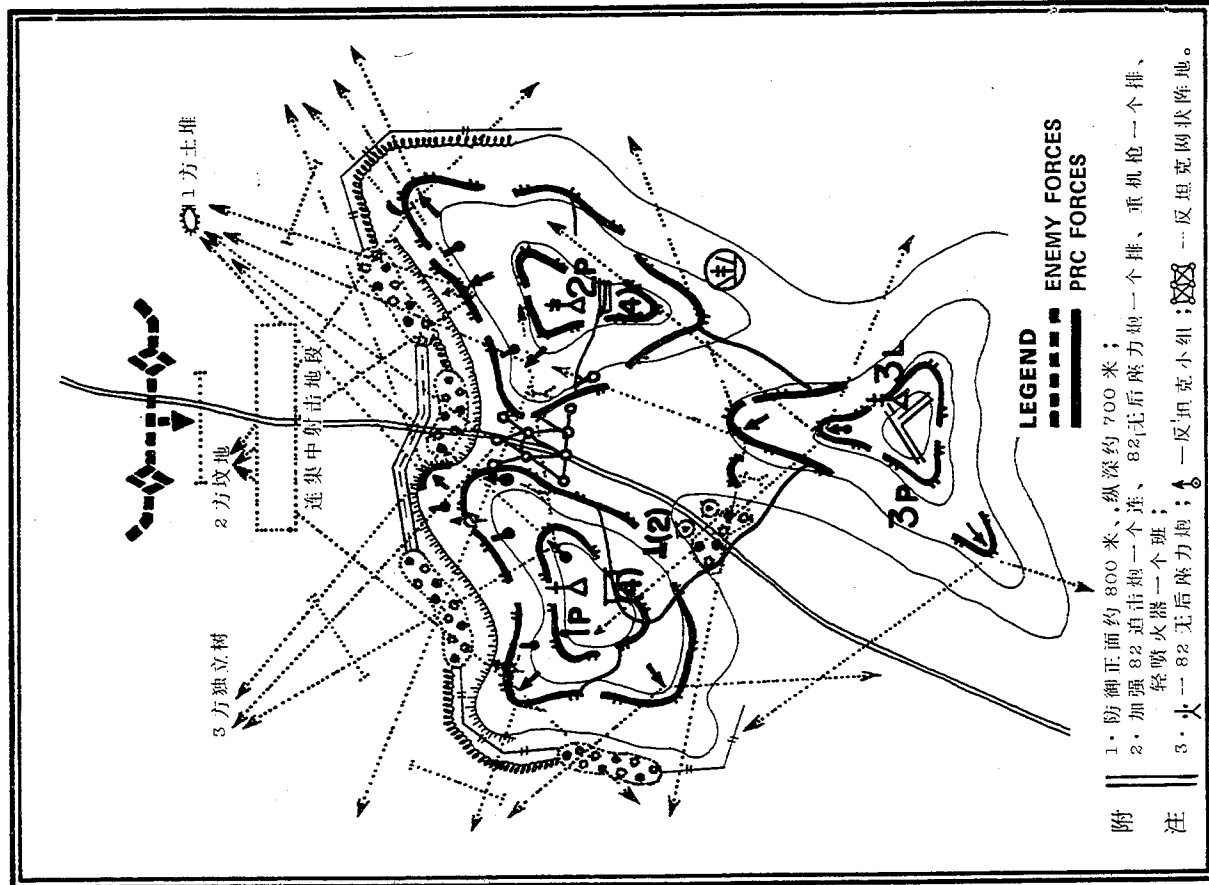
连(排)由昼间转入夜间防御时，应力求在天黑前做好准备。指挥员应给各分队指示夜间的方位物，在阵地前和便于敌人接近的方向上派出直接警戒，在阵地内增派观察员、游动哨；将部分火器前移占领阵地发射阵地，并以火力控制翼侧和间隙地；给分队和火器规定标射击的地段，做好夜间射击设备，指定火器破坏敌人的照明和夜视器材；条件许可时，在敌可能接近的地段上设置音响或发光、照明器材；拟定夜间的战斗方案，规定识别和联络的信(记)号。

连(排)在夜间组织防御时，指挥员应指挥分队秘密地占领阵地，首先派出观察、警戒，指定值班火器，尔后利用能看清的地形地物，明确排(班)的任务、阵地位置、特别固守的要点和主要的防御方向，配备火器的发射阵地、射击任务及支援步兵分队的办法；组织分队首先构筑主要堑壕、火器发射阵地，尔后逐步加强。拂晓时应根据情况进一步调整部署，明确任务，组织协同。

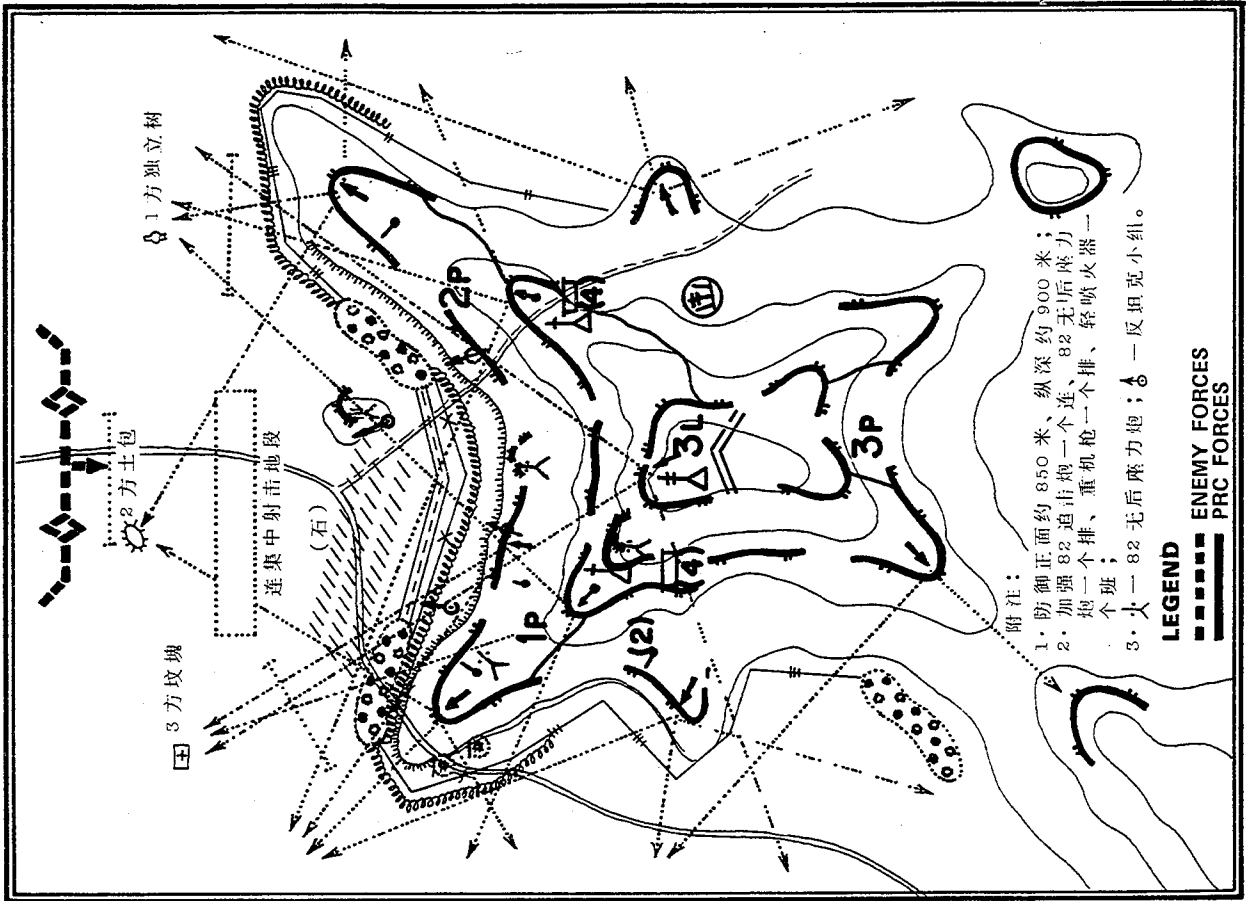
乱之际，可以小分队向敌侧后实施突然勇猛
的阵前出击，消灭敌人。击退敌人冲击后，
应特别注意严密搜索，消灭残存之敌。

连(排)由夜间转入昼间防御时，应迅速
调整部署，加强阵地伪装，做好抗击敌人冲
击的准备，并报告上级。

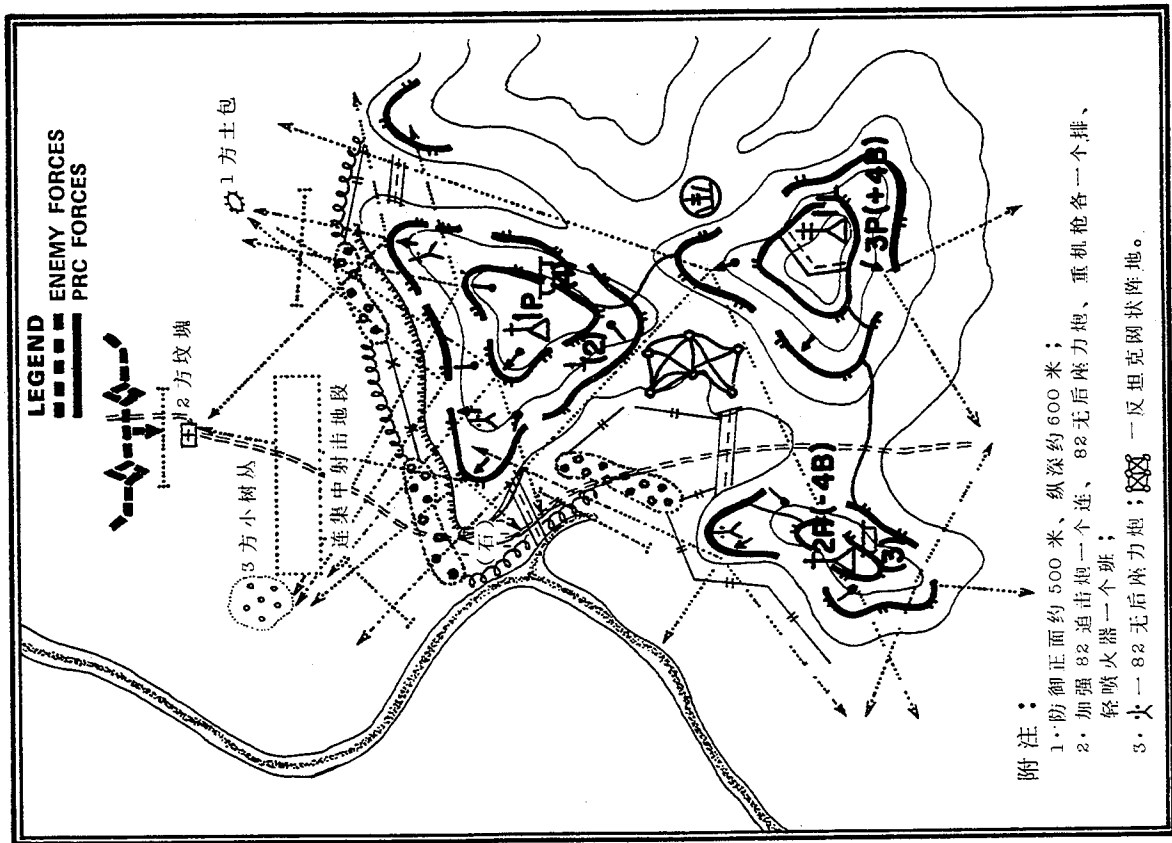
步兵连阵地防御图图例之一



步兵连阵地防御要图图例之三



步兵连阵地防御要图图例之二



步兵排阵地防御要图图例

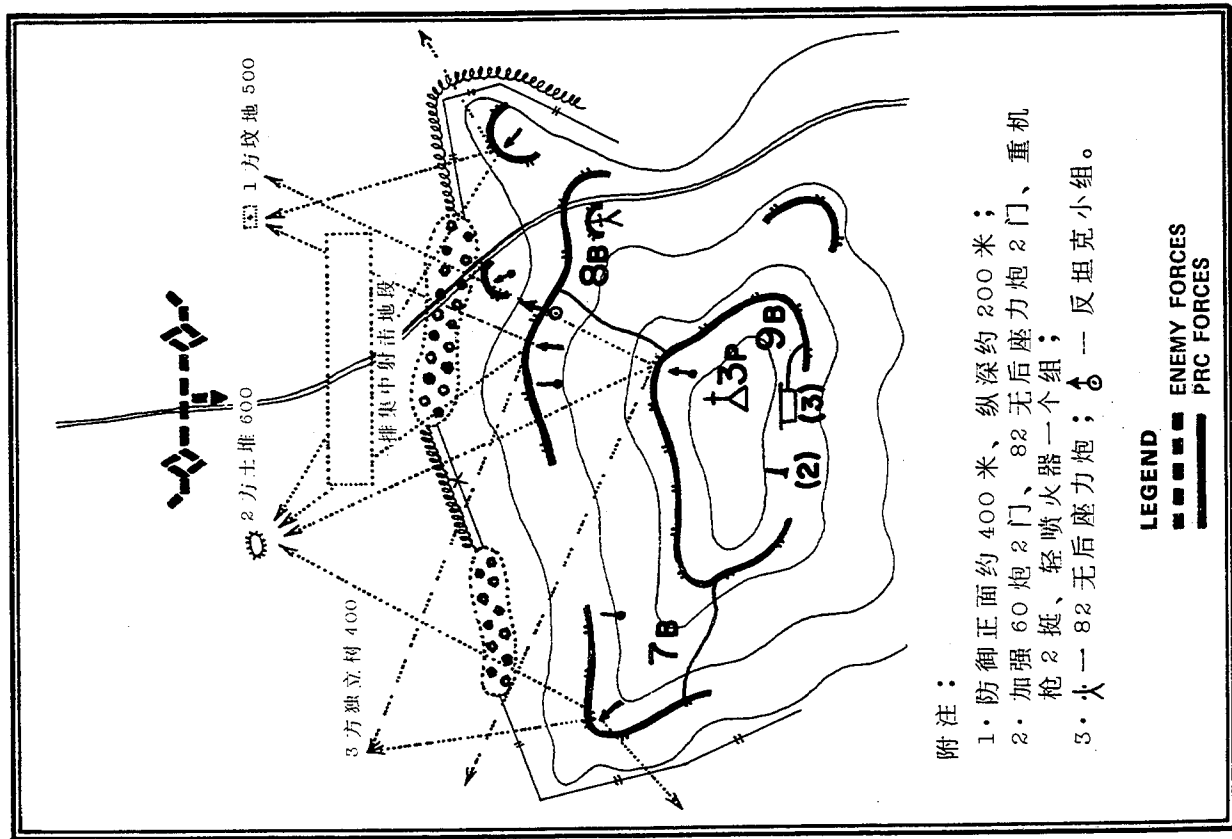
步兵连(排)山地防御

战斗的特点

山地防御，便于我荫蔽配备兵力、兵器，凭险固守，但容易形成较大的间隙和暴露的翼侧，战斗队形易被割裂，兵力机动、指挥、协同不便。连(排)应利用有利地形，依托制高点，组成支撑点的防御，加强翼侧和接合部的保障，防止敌人包围迂回，发扬英勇顽强、主动协同、独立战斗的精神，粉碎敌人的进攻，坚决守住阵地。

一、依托制高点，组成支撑点的防御

连(排)指挥员受领任务后，应根据上级指示，在党支部的领导下，率领排(班)长和加强火器分队指挥员，进行实地勘察，选择能支撑整个防御地域，便于以点制面，便于观察和发扬火力，便于独立坚守的要点，组



成支撑点的防御。

(一) 兵力部署，火力配系

兵力部署，应贯彻重点守备的原则，集中主要兵力扼守制高点、山堙口、隘路等要点，并围绕要点作纵深疏散荫蔽的配置。在便于敌接近的地段上，可以少数兵力防守或以火力控制。连防守数个高地时，通常以两个排分别组成前沿支撑点，一个排组成纵深支撑点(图一)；连在狭窄地段防御时，也可以一个排防守前沿支撑点，两个排组成纵深支撑点(图二)；有时连防守一个高地时，全连则组成一个支撑点(图三)，排防守高地的一部分。

火力配系，火力器应当向下配属，按火器分散、火力集中的原则，采取多层荫蔽的配置。反坦克火力器通常由连(排)掌握，组成反坦克队(组)，配置在敌坦克可能运动的道路、谷地和突出部两侧。火箭筒可配属给班，通常配置在前沿阵地。迫击炮由连集中使用，配置在山地反斜面和高地内。六〇炮有时配属给

排，在遮蔽地占领发射阵地。重机枪通常配属给排，班用机枪通常配属给班，配置在突出部、高地的两侧。轻喷火器配属给排、班，以组为单位配置在前沿堑壕或交通壕附近。各种火器，应在阵地前沿组成直射、侧射、斜射的交叉火网；以迫击炮的火力，控制死角、隘路和便于敌人接近的荫蔽地，以反坦克火力，控制谷地、道路、山堙口和便于敌人坦克通行的地段。在前沿和纵深的有利地形上，设置倒打火力。在山地两侧和反斜面，设置暗火力点，并组织对空火力。各支撑点的火力，应相互支援，做到步炮、曲直、侧斜、明暗火力相结合，能在短时间内集中主要火力到受威胁的方向上。

(二) 构筑工事，设置障碍

防御阵地前沿，通常设在向敌斜面、道路两侧、林缘前死角较小的地形上。依据地形条件，环绕高地构筑堑壕和各种火器发射阵地。各种火器工事，应尽量低下、荫蔽，并加以被覆和掩盖。力求在便于敌坦克通行

当敌向我冲击时，连（排）要“勇敢、坚定、沉着”，根据敌人进展情况，指挥分队逐次占领阵地。以反坦克武器击毁敌坦克和装甲车。以机枪、迫击炮的火力杀伤敌步兵。当敌进至近距离时，前沿分队应以步机枪的准确、猛烈火力和手榴弹、爆破筒、滚雷、炸药包消灭敌人；纵深内的火器，应以猛烈的火力支援前沿分队战斗，大量杀伤敌人，粉碎敌人的冲击。

当敌遭我火力杀伤、队形混乱、情况对我有利时，指挥员要当机立断，抓住有利时机，以班（组）向敌翼侧实施短距离的阵前出击，狠打快收，消灭冲击之敌。迫击炮、重机枪应压制敌后续梯队和火器，掩护我出击分队的行动。

当敌多路向我冲击时，指挥员应集中主要力量，首先粉碎对我威胁最大的一路，尔后迅速转移力量，各个歼灭敌人。当敌坦克沿谷地、道路向我实施包围时，应指挥埋伏的反坦克小组和反坦克火器，以迅速勇猛的

的地段，构筑反坦克网状阵地。应充分利用、改造山洞和天然掩蔽物在高地反斜面或两侧构筑掩蔽部。条件许可时，应构筑坑道。坑道口通常开设在翼侧或后方，设置坚固的射击工事。主要掩蔽部、坑道应构筑防原子、防化学的设备。根据情况，还可构筑假阵地，所有工程设施应边构筑边伪装。

障碍物，应有重点的设置的道路、谷地、隘路和间隙地，并与火力、天然障碍紧密结合。还应充分利用山地有利条件，削壁、挖壕、倒树、设置石障和地雷，以增强防御的稳定性。

此外，应加强防火、防山崩、防山洪等措施，并加大弹药、粮食、饮水等物资的储备。

二、依托高地，顽强战斗

连（排）应充分发挥近战和小群独立作战的精神，依托有利地形和坚固工事，以积极的战斗行动，粉碎敌人的进攻。

（一）顽强抗击敌人的冲击

件。当表面阵地被敌占领时，连(排)应立即向上级命令，转入坑道继续坚持战斗。当上级实施反击时，应积极配合，主动出击，歼灭敌人，恢复阵地。

动作，突然准确的火力，在近战中击毁敌坦克，以迫击炮和步机枪火力，杀伤敌步兵。当敌被击退时，应立即组织火力追击，并做好抗击敌人再次冲击的准备。

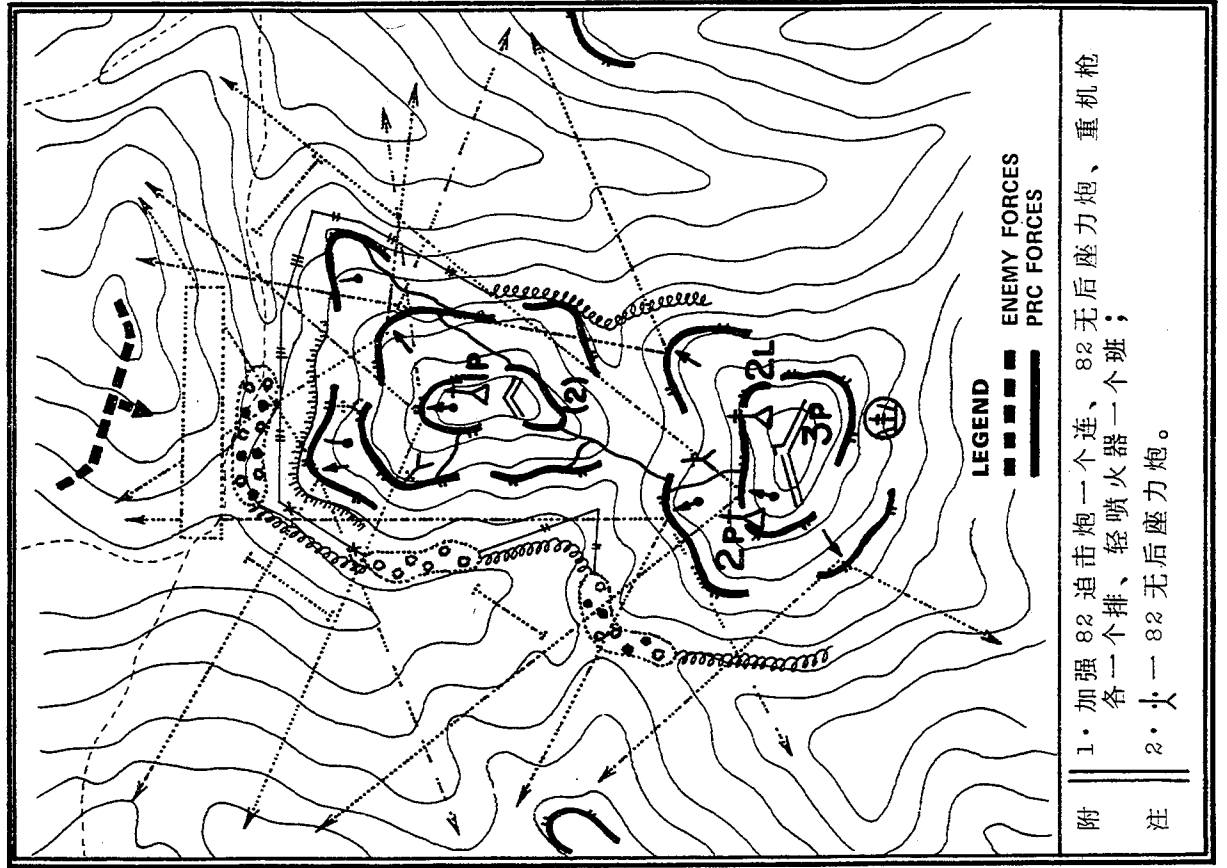
(二) 勇猛突然的反击

当敌人突入我阵地时，连(排)应有**同自己的敌人血战到底的气概**，坚决扼守现有阵地，集中主要火力杀伤突入之敌，制止其扩张，并以火力封锁突破口，阻敌后续梯队进入。乘敌队形混乱、立足未稳和后续梯队被阻之际，连预备队应依托有利地形，自上而下向敌侧后实施突然勇猛的反冲击，消灭突入之敌，恢复阵地。

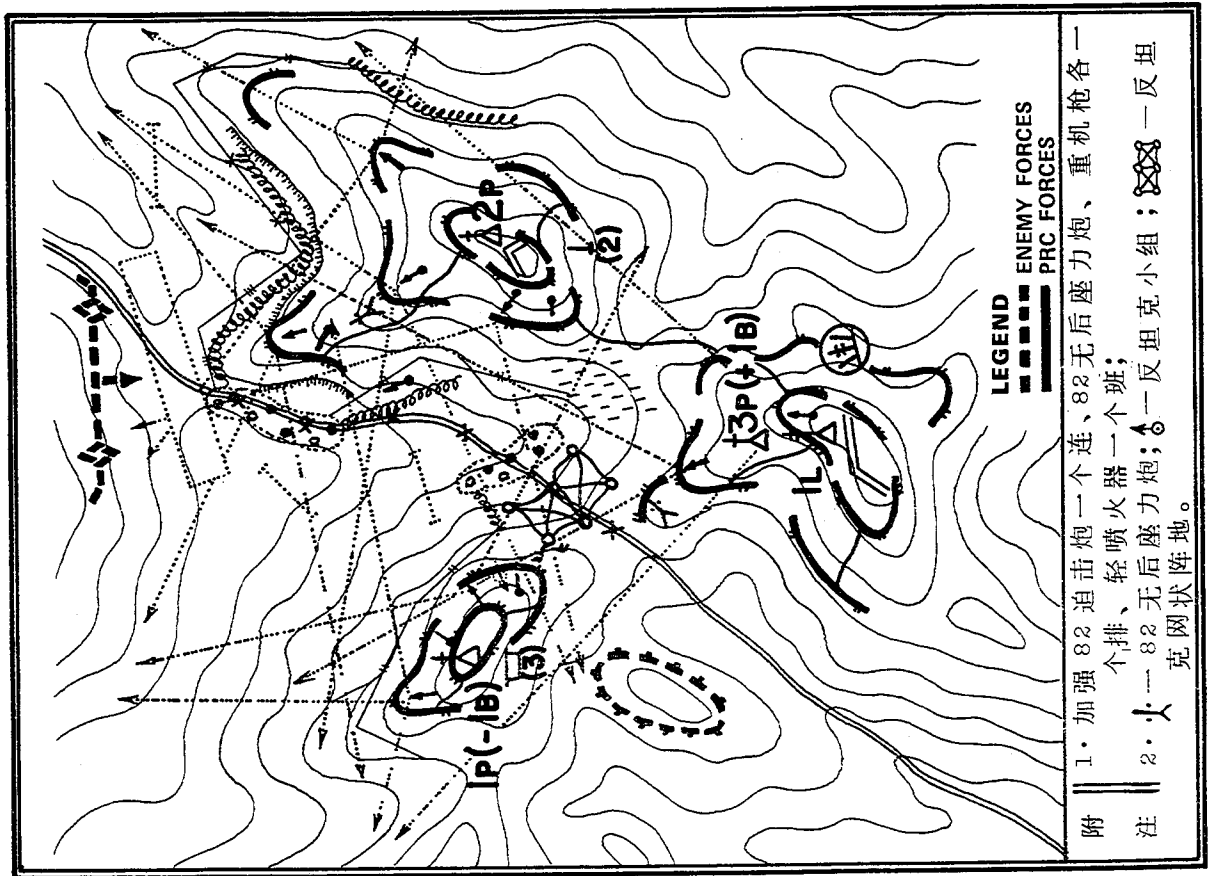
(三) 坚决扼守制高点

连(排)被敌包围时，应特别加强思想政治工作，发扬英勇顽强、孤胆作战的精神，指挥员要**独立自主地组织和使用自己的力量**，及时调整部署，集中兵力扼守制高点，以积极的战斗行动杀伤敌人，反复与敌争夺，坚决守住阵地，为上级的战斗行动创造条

步兵连山地防御要图图例之二



步兵连山地防御要图图例之一



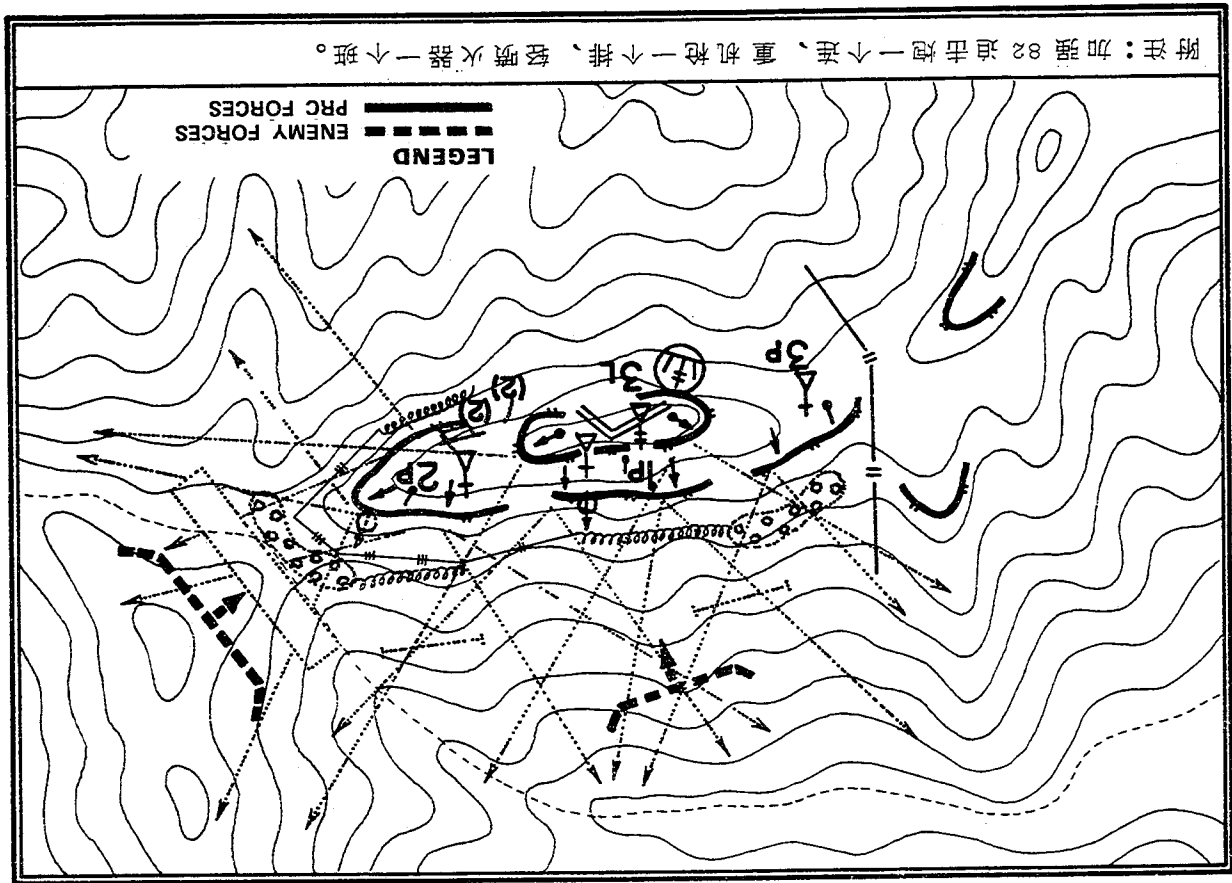
步兵连(排)城镇防御

战斗的特点

城镇利于构筑坚固阵地和荫蔽配备兵力、兵器,但观察、射击、指挥、协同不便,易遭敌航空兵和原子、化学袭击。连(排)在防御时,必须发扬英勇顽强、独立战斗的作风,善于利用坚固建筑物和地下设备构成支撑点的防御,在民兵的紧密配合下,以突然猛烈的火力和积极的行动,粉碎敌人的进攻,坚决守住阵地。

一、依托建筑物,组成坚固防御

连(排)指挥员受领任务后,应根据上级指示,在党支部的领导下,带领排(班)长进行实地勘察,选择防御要点,正确部署兵力,依托建筑物和地下设备,严密组织火力,构筑坚固工事,重点设置障碍,组成坚固防御。



步兵连山地防御要图例之三

便于适时加强排(班)战斗的地下设备内。连(排)如沿城(镇)边缘组织防御时,应利用其附近有利地形和建筑物组成前沿支撑点,预备队配置在便于支援前沿战斗和能适时反击的纵深支撑点内。

(三)火力配系

组织火力时,应根据任务、火器性能、地形条件和敌人可能的行动,采取环形、多层、荫蔽的配置。以大部分火器配置在阵地前沿、建筑物下层和建筑物周围工事内,以必要的火器和特等射手配置在建筑物的中、上层,并在墙根、房角、街巷转弯处设置暗火力点。

无座力炮通常由连直接掌握,组成反坦克队,也可配属给排;火箭筒通常配属给排(班)。反坦克火器应配置在便于敌坦克行动的地段和街道两侧。根据情况,可派出反坦克组在敌坦克必经的道路上设伏。迫击炮通常由连集中使用;六〇炮通常配属给排,配置在围墙、庭院内。轻喷火器通常配属给排(班),以组为单位配置在街道和十字路口两

(一)选择防御要点

连(排)指挥员在现地勘察时,应着重查明:防御地区内的地形、市内街道、建筑物、地下设备和地道的状况;敌人可能进攻的主要方向和便于荫蔽接近、集结、展开的地区。防御要点,应选在能瞰制整个防御地区,便于观察和发扬火力,便于防原子、防化学、防轰炸,便于打坦克、独立坚守、互相支援,能确保防御稳定性的主要建筑物和有利地形上。

(二)兵力部署

兵力部署,必须贯彻重点守备的原则,集中主要兵力扼守有利地形和重要建筑物等要点。根据敌情、地形和任务,连通常以一栋或数栋建筑物为依托,组成独立的或各点连接的环形防御。以一栋建筑物组成支撑点时,以主要兵力扼守下层,少数兵力控制中、上层,预备队配置在地下设备内;以数栋建筑物组成支撑点时,通常以排(班)分别扼守各建筑物,但主力必须扼守与防御安危相关的重要建筑物,预备队配置在便于反击和

充分利用地下设备，筑成防原子、防化学的掩蔽部。在敌步兵、坦克必经的道路（街巷）两侧、十字路口、街巷转弯处、建筑物周围、墙角、地下室和地道口附近有利用地形上，构筑各种火力点，并严密伪装。

加强消防措施，准备好各种消防器材，储备沙子和水，并按上级指示拆除易燃易爆设备和建筑物。对木质地板、楼梯要以沙土覆盖，被覆工事木质暴露部分要抹上泥土。

（五）设置障碍

障碍物的设置应有重点，特别要着眼于防坦克，并与火力密切结合，形成纵深多层，打、炸、阻相结合的防坦克、防步兵障碍物配系。在便于敌人步兵、坦克接近的道路上，应构筑反坦克壕、陷阱，埋设防坦克、防步兵地雷，在坚守的建筑物周围应设置各种固定和移动的障碍物，并利用空地、瓦砾埋设地雷。必要时，挖断道路，炸断桥梁。

二、严防敌火力袭击

连（排）指挥员应亲自观察情况，及时判

侧工事内。机枪通常配属给排（班），配置在前沿、翼侧、十字路口、地堡、地道口、建筑物下层等便于发扬火力的地点，或配置在建筑物的上层、房顶高防工事内。

各种火器必须密切协同，构成多层、侧斜、明暗结合的严密交叉火网。

（四）构筑工事

连（排）应在城镇既有地道的基础上，善于利用、改造建筑物和地下设备，“**修筑完备的工事**”。

利用坚固高大的建筑物修筑高防工事，用以瞰制街道和对空射击。扼守建筑物内各层的火器和分队，应根据任务，有计划地开设射击孔和观察孔。凡是利用墙壁、门窗等设置的火力点，都要进行加固，防止倒塌。

在各建筑物、火力点、前沿和纵深之间应构筑相互连接的交通壕，并打通庭院、房屋和地道之间的通路，增修必要的地道出入口，力求做到地上、地下各点相连，以便机动和相互支援。

危害最大的敌坦克，打乱其队形，尔后，反坦克组乘机接近或插入敌群，将其各个击毁。

当敌步兵、坦克向我冲击时，应以各种反坦克火器向敌坦克猛烈射击。反坦克队（组）应抓住敌坦克停顿、减速、转向等有利时机，以反坦克火器、炸药包、爆破筒等击毁敌坦克。同时，发挥各种火器的威力，以突然猛烈的火力切断敌步兵与坦克的联系，打乱敌战斗队形，并以手榴弹和白刃格斗，将敌消灭在阵地前。

当敌突入我阵地时，应以压倒一切敌人的英雄气概，坚决守住现有阵地，集中火力封锁突破口，阻敌后续梯队进入；同时，依托建筑物以猛烈的火力击毁敌坦克，杀伤敌步兵，制止敌人向纵深扩张。并乘敌队形混乱、立足未稳之际，指挥预备队利用小巷或穿越庭院，迅速隐蔽地进到敌人的翼侧，在炮兵和突破口两侧分队的支援配合下，以突然勇猛的反冲击，坚决歼灭突入之敌。

明敌人企图，严密组织对敌原子、化学和航空兵、炮兵火力袭击的防护，适时指挥分队进入战斗。当接到原子或化学袭击警报时，除观察员外，分队应迅速进入掩蔽部或地下道（室）进行荫蔽。如敌空、炮火力袭击时，还应指派值班火器占领高防工事，射击低飞飞机。袭击过后，要迅速调整部署，抢修工事，扑灭火灾，抢救受伤感染人员，排除有碍我行动的倒塌物，做好战斗准备。并根据敌人的活动规律，利用城镇有利条件，在民兵的密切配合下，积极开展袭扰活动，不断杀伤、消耗、疲惫敌人。

三、扼守要点，抗击敌人冲击

城镇战斗，主要是近战、巷战。连（排）必须依托有利地形和坚固建筑物，迫使敌人逐街逐屋攻击，与敌反复进行争夺，坚决粉碎敌人的冲击。

当敌坦克群向我冲击时，连（排）指挥员应适时指挥反坦克火器和反坦克组占领既设阵地，待其接近后，首先集中火力击毁对我

当敌企图分割、包围我防御支撑点时，连（排）指挥员应适时地指挥反坦克队（组），先敌进入其必经的街巷两侧阵地待机，对敌能通过过的街巷、间隙地，应设置各种障碍物，并进行火力封锁。当敌接近时，应以果敢的行动，突然狠打，击毁敌先头坦克，堵塞其通路，杀伤敌步兵，粉碎敌人的包围企图。一旦被敌人包围时，要“勇敢、坚定、沉着”，敢于独立作战。迅速调整部署，集中主要兵力坚守要点，加强对坦克的防御，堵塞巷口、门窗，设置障碍物，坚决制止敌人割裂我战斗队形，与友邻分队密切协同，大量杀伤敌人。还应利用夜间和能见度不良等有利时机，组织精干的小分队积极地向敌实施反冲击，或配合上级反冲击，坚决粉碎敌人的包围。

四、坚守地道，独立战斗

“不论在任何艰难困苦场合，只要还有一个活人，这个人就要继续战斗下去”。当敌占领表面阵地时，分队应根据上级的命令迅速转入地道，继续战斗。

转入地道后，连（排）必须充分利用地道的有利条件，组织兵力、火力坚守地道口，采取一切手段，粉碎敌人的破坏和封锁。当敌人向我地道口接近时，应集中火力将敌消灭。若地道口被敌炸坏、堵塞或喷火时，应迅速组织力量抢修、排除或灭火。当敌人占领地道口时，应指挥守口的分队和武器坚决制止敌人进入地道，并适时指挥出击分队利用地道（下水道）或夜暗，绕到敌人背后，乘其不备，突然攻击，消灭敌人，夺回地道口。

当上级实施反冲击时，连（排）应以突然、勇猛地出击，配合上级歼灭敌人，夺回表面阵地。

击退或歼灭敌人后，要严防敌人火力袭击。充分利用战斗间隙，迅速做好抗击敌人再次冲击的准备。

守备连(排)岛屿、海岸 防御战斗的特点

岛屿、海岸地形复杂，气象多变，各地潮汐不一，易守难攻。连(排)组织防御时，必须依靠群众，实行军民联防，树立长期坚守、独立作战、积极歼敌的思想，集中主要兵力，扼守要点，组成坚固支撑点的防御，以积极顽强的战斗行动，力求歼敌于水际滩头，粉碎敌人的进攻，坚决守住阵地。

一、做好长期坚守准备

“有了准备，就能恰当地应付各种复杂的局面。”连(排)受领任务后，应根据上级指示，在党支部的领导下，周密组织战斗，深入进行战斗动员，充分发动群众，积极做好长期坚守的准备。

(一)加强军民联防

连(排)应在平时军民联防工作的基础上，及时召开联防会议，传达上级的命令、指示，研究敌情，修订联防方案，健全联防指挥组织，统筹安排各项战斗准备工作，实行统一指挥，统一行动。

(二)确定防御部署

连(排)指挥员应组织所属分队和民兵干部实地勘察，逐点研究地形、滩岸、潮汐情况，判断敌人行动企图和可能登陆的地段，确定防御部署。

选择防御要点，根据任务和地形条件，在敌人可能登陆的方向上，选择能有效地控制敌主要登陆地段，便于独立坚守和兵力机动，确保防御稳定的有利地形作为防御要点。

兵力部署，连(排)必须集中主要兵力扼守要点，作纵深环形配置(海岸防御时，也可作纵深疏散荫蔽配置)，并控制强有力的预备队。第一梯队排，扼守前沿支撑点，根据地形，可指定少数火器在高潮线附近的有利地形上，设置暗火力点。连预备队应配置在核

1. 敌登陆艇波问我岸接应时，直射火炮的开花时机和各分队的行动；
2. 消灭下船、抢滩之敌和抗击敌冲击时，各分队的行动；
3. 消灭突入或空机降之敌和实施反冲击时，各分队的行动；
4. 与民兵和友邻协同的方法；
5. 上级炮兵准备火力的地段（海域），与海、空军协同的有关规定；
6. 信（记）号。

（四）增修工事，设置障碍

连（排）应组织分队和民兵在既设坑道、永备工事的基础上，构筑堑壕、交通壕、火器预备发射阵地，构成以坑道为骨干的环形防御阵地。在敌可能登陆的近岸水中和敌坦克便于行动的地段上，使用制式和就便器材，有重点地设置水雷、浮游拦障、雷场、石障、地雷、陷阱、削壁、尖桩、铁丝网等障碍物。工事和障碍物应结合地形特点进行巧妙伪装。

（五）组织保障

心阵地上，也可将部分兵力适当靠前配置。反坦克队（组）和火器应配置在受敌坦克威胁较大的地段上。民兵通常配置在敌不便登陆的地段和敌可能空降的地域。

火力配系，连（排）应将主要火力集中于敌人舰艇便于接近的方向和敌人便于登陆的地段。直射火炮大部配置在主要防御方向的前沿和突出部，部分配置在连核心阵地内便于发扬火力的荫蔽地形上。迫击炮应配置在纵深内，便于控制滩头和支援全连战斗的荫蔽地形上。大口径机枪、重机枪，大部应配置在主要防御方向的前沿，并可利用岸边突出部和近岸明礁，设置暗火力点。在近岸水域、滩头及我防御纵深内组成侧射、斜射和倒打火力相结合的多层火网。对敌不便登陆的地段和间隙地，应以火力加以控制。还应指定火器，担任对空射击。

（三）组织协同

连（排）规定任务后，应周密组织协同。

其内容：

工具，尔后击毁其它登陆、上陆工具。以大口径机枪、重机枪、特等射手，消灭敌登陆工具上的指挥官、驾驶员、枪手。以对空武器积极射击低飞敌机。并适时指挥步兵和迫击炮分队占领阵地，迅速做好战斗准备。

(二)集火狠打，歼敌于滩头

敌登陆兵猬集抢滩上岸时，指挥员应以直射火炮的集中猛烈火力击毁敌先头登陆、上陆工具和坦克，并及时转移火力，逐次击毁敌后续艇波。同时指挥迫击炮、步机枪和前沿暗火力点向敌主要登陆地段实施突然、猛烈射击，大量杀伤下船、涉水、上滩的敌登陆兵。情况对我有利时，也可以小分队在我火力掩护下，突然勇猛地向我翼侧出击，坚决歼敌于滩头。

(三)抗击敌人冲击

敌人向我冲击时，应集中火力，首先消灭对我危害最大的敌人，尔后转移火力，各个歼灭敌人。以直射火炮和反坦克队(组)击毁敌坦克。同时集中步机枪、迫击炮的准确

连(排)应严密组织对海、空观察报知勤务，指定值班火器，加强侦察警戒，规定军民防敌原子、化学、舰炮、航空兵火力袭击的措施，补充和储备充足的粮、弹、水和其它战斗、生活物资器材，组织医疗救护，确保分队长期坚守，完成战斗任务。

二、坚决歼敌于水际滩头

水际滩头战斗，是消灭敌人的有利时机，也是敌直射火力准备猛烈的时刻。连(排)要善于利用掩蔽工事和坑道，保存有生力量，加强观察，及时判明敌人的行动企图，不失时机地指挥分队投入战斗，发挥各种火器的最大威力，坚决歼敌于水际滩头。

(一)突然开火，歼敌于近岸水际
敌扫雷舰艇抵近岸边水域扫雷时，应以值班火炮予以打击。

敌登陆艇波向我岸接近时，指挥员应及时查明敌主攻方向，适时指挥直射火炮进入阵地，正确掌握开火时机，以准确猛烈的火力，首先击毁对我威胁最大的敌登陆、上陆

猛烈火力，打乱敌战斗队形，割裂敌步兵与坦克的联系，大量消灭敌步兵，坚决粉碎敌人的冲击。敌被击退时，应立即实施火力追击杀伤敌人，并迅速做好抗击敌人再次冲击的准备，严防敌人火力袭击。敌向友邻进攻时，应以火力支援友邻战斗。

(四) 协同友邻，歼灭空降之敌

当敌实施空降时，指挥员应迅速判明敌之企图，报告上级，通报友邻和民兵，以对空火力，力争歼敌于空中。如敌在阵地附近着陆时，应以部分兵力，协同友邻、民兵，乘敌立足未稳之际，将其歼灭。

三、固守要点，顽强战斗

连(排)在任何严重困难情况下，都要独立自主地组织和使用自己的力量，积极顽强地战斗，坚持到最后胜利。

(一) 消灭突入之敌

敌人突入我前沿阵地时，连(排)应有压倒一切敌人，而决不被敌人所屈服的英雄气概，依托阵地，英勇战斗，以火力制止敌人

扩张，封锁突破口，阻敌后续梯队进入。指挥员应确实掌握有利战机，乘敌遭我火力杀伤立足未稳之际，或利用夜间暗和不良天候等有利条件，使用连预备队在上级炮兵支援下，向敌翼侧实施坚决勇猛的反冲击，消灭突入之敌，恢复阵地。

(二) 固守要点

连(排)被敌分割包围时，指挥员应迅速调整部署，集中力量固守要点，依托工事与敌反复争夺，在上级和友邻的支援配合下，坚决粉碎敌之分割包围。连(排)遭敌连续冲击，伤亡过大不利于继续坚守表面阵地时，应根据上级命令或按预定方案转入坑道战斗。当上级、友邻向本连(排)方向实施反冲击时，应迅速组织力量，积极出击，主动配合，消灭敌人，恢复阵地。

周密地侦察敌情、地形。指挥员应尽量接近目标进行抵近观察，对重要的地形、道路应亲自或派人进行实地探查。确实查明行动地区内的积雪深度、冰层厚度、通行程度及敌我双方可以利用的冰雪障碍。进攻时，要仔细查明积雪覆盖的敌人坦克、火力点、工事和障碍物的位置。攻击点通常选在敌侧后、雪浅坡缓和便于各兵种分队协同战斗的地段，有时也可选在积雪较深或难以通行的荫蔽地点，以便出其不意地攻击敌人。防御时，要注意查明敌坦克便于接近和冲击的地段。防御要点通常应选在能控制雪浅、坡缓和便于敌坦克、步兵冲击的有利地形上，并能与冰雪障碍结合，构成坚固环形防御阵地。

正确部署兵力。连(排)指挥员在部署兵力时，除应遵循一般的原則外，火器尽量向下配属，以增强排(班)独立战斗的能力，预备队尽量靠前配置以便能及时进入战斗，战斗中尽量避免做复杂的机动。进攻时，突击

步兵连(排)严寒条件下

战斗行动的特点

严寒地带气温低，风大、雪深、路滑，江河水封，冻土层厚。战斗中，兵力机动缓慢，观察、射击、指挥、协同不便，构筑工事困难，武器、器材易出故障，物资保障较复杂，人员易冻伤、体力消耗大。因此，连(排)在严寒地进行战斗时，必须加强党支部的领导，深入地做好思想政治工作，发扬勇敢战斗、不怕疲劳的作风，周密组织战斗，切实做好防寒保障，善于趋利避害，利用风雪寒夜积极歼敌。

一、严寒条件下的战斗组织

连(排)指挥员受领任务后，必须充分发挥主观能动性，周密细致地进行地勘察和组织战斗，并尽量缩短在现地活动的时

应尽量靠近冲击目标以缩短冲击距离，可组成精干的小分队秘密渗入敌侧后配合力歼灭敌人，还可组织运动保障队(组)负责克服冰雪障碍。防御时，应集中主要兵力防守便于敌通行的地段、居民地和道路交叉点，防御前沿力求配置在冬季通行困难的障碍之后，对主要防御地段和间隙地，应以火力结合冰雪等障碍物加以控制。

二、冰冻条件下的工事构筑和障碍设置

严寒条件下构筑工事，要尽量利用有利地形加以改造，以节省劳力和器材，缩短作业时间。情况紧急时，通常构成半挖掘、半用冰雪冻土堆积的工事。时间充裕时，再逐步加深，构成既能发扬火力又能隐蔽御寒的工事。指挥员在组织作业时，应精心选定工事位置，集中主要的人力、工具、器材，保证重点工事按时完成。挖掘冻土可用爆破、掏挖、火烧等方法。为增强掩盖工事的抗力，可在工事顶部如土浇水冻结。设置障碍时，应充分利用冰雪条件和有利地形，构成冰坡、

力紧密结合。阵地附近有河流时，可预先在敌人必经的冰面上埋设炸药，当敌接近时将其引爆，造成冰河障碍。工事、障碍应用积雪掩盖伪装，做到与周围的景色一致。

三、克服冰雪障碍，提高机动能力

连(排)在严寒条件下行动时，应加强对道路的侦察，正确选择行动时机，精确计算运动时间，尽量减轻人员负重量，使用爬犁拖载重武器，善于利用道路、浅雪地区、封冻的河道和沿堑壕、交通壕实施机动。遇难以通行的冰坡和险路时，应尽量选择荫蔽的迂回路绕过，或减低运动速度互相协助通过，必要时以运动保障队(组)迅速荫蔽地开辟通路通过。通过江河冰面时，指挥员应仔细查明冰层厚度，尔后指挥分队迅速通过。

四、善于利用风雪条件，积极歼敌

连(排)在进攻战斗中，通常利用风雪寒夜秘密接近敌人，采取集中主力从一点突入，也可多路有重点地插入敌阵地，突然袭击敌

保障工作，防止非战斗减员，使武器、器材经常保持良好的战斗状态。

做好人员防寒保障。在严寒条件下作战时，人员要配齐防寒装备，利用就便器材制作必要的防寒物品，严格遵守着装规定，以防冻伤和雪盲。应避免在工事外停留过久，必须在工事外停留时，不要在冰雪处，以防融化雪水浸透衣服鞋袜，并注意经常活动手脚和擦揉脸部。轻装运动时，其余装备应指定专人负责准时送到指定地点。乘车时应尽可能搭棚或设挡风板，车内多铺干草，人员多穿衣服，手脚要经常活动，严禁睡觉。坑（地）道和掩盖工事内应有保暖或取暖设备，观察、警戒人员应缩短执勤时间，增加换班次数。要搞好伙食，尽量供应热食、热水和含热量较高的食品。备用的干粮，水分要少，防止冻硬。

加强武器、器材保养。武器要擦拭干净，适当涂防冻油，操作武器不要用力过猛，可先拉动机枪机再开始射击。使用光学器材和指

人，打它个措手不及，力求将敌人歼灭在工事内或混乱之中。有时也可派精干的小分队，从深雪或难以攀登之处，秘密插入敌人侧后，以突然勇猛的动作袭击敌人，打乱其部署，配合主力围歼敌人。

连（排）在严寒、风雪天进行防御时，根据上级的指示，派出精干的小分队对敌前沿突出部、翼侧进行袭击，捕捉俘虏，杀伤和疲惫敌人。同时应加强观察、警戒，严防敌坦克或滑雪分队的突然袭击。风雪越大，气温越低，越要提高警惕。必要时在阵地前敌人必经的道路附近派出警戒，以便能提前发现敌人。当敌人向我突然袭击时，连（排）应“勇敢、坚定、沉着”，迅速指挥分队占领要点，突然开火，迫使敌在深雪内、冰坡前停留，延长其受冻时间，同时以集中猛烈的火力和阵前短距离的出击，坚决击毁敌坦克，消灭敌步兵。

五、加强防寒保障

连（排）在严寒条件下作战，应做好防寒

北针时，应注意用干净的布或毛巾擦干水分，使其经常保持良好的性能。

做好人员抢救工作。在战斗中，应认真地组织好自救互救，寻找伤员要仔细，抢救和转送伤员要及时。转送过程中应给伤员穿好衣服，或用大衣、棉被盖好，并注意经常检查，以防冻伤。

尖兵连(排)

尖兵，是连以下分队担任的行军警戒。连(排)担任尖兵时，必须提高警惕，不怕疲劳，加强侦察搜索，经常保持战斗准备，确保被警戒部(分)队的安全。

一、派遣与任务

尖兵连(排)通常由团、营向受敌威胁的方向派出。与本队的距离，由上级规定，夜间一般为1—2公里，白天行军或乘车、背敌行军时，均应适当增大距离。尖兵连(排)可能得到迫击炮、无座力炮、重机枪、连用机枪、工兵、化学侦察组和通信器材的加强。

步兵连(排)在行军中，可能担任前方、侧方、后方尖兵或侧方停止警戒。主要任务是：及早发现敌人，防止敌人侦察，保障主力免遭地面敌人的突然袭击或跟踪追击；在与敌遭遇时，保障主力顺利展开和进入战斗。

和投入战斗。前方尖兵连(排)应派尖兵班在侧方先行进,如侧方有顾虑时,还应派出侧方尖兵班或搜索组。指挥员应率领反坦克武器、机枪、工兵、化学侦察组在本队先头行进。迫击炮在后尾跟进(附图)。背敌行军担任后方尖兵时,则按相反的序列行进。

(二) 规定任务

尖兵连(排)指挥员在规定的任务时,应指出:

1. 敌人的位置、活动情况及可能遭遇的地区;
2. 连(排)的任务,行军路线、里程,出发和到达指定地区的时间,调整地区和休息的地点;
3. 前方侦察分队、地方武装和民兵的活动地区及其联络的方法;
4. 行军序列和各分队的任务;
5. 尖兵班、搜索组的编成和任务;
6. 沿途可能遇到的情况及各分队的行动;

前方尖兵连(排)还应查明道路状况,标示行进路线。在可能条件下,修复被破坏的道路和桥梁。后方尖兵连(排)还应根据上级命令,破坏道路、桥梁,设置障碍,消除路标和掩护主力安全转移。担任侧方停止警戒时,应按规定的时,枪占、扼守指定的阵地,掩护主力顺利通过,尔后按规定的路线跟进。

二、做好行军准备

“有了准备,就能恰当地应付各种复杂的局面。”尖兵连(排)在情况紧急时,可边走边准备。一般情况下,应做好如下工作。

(一) 确定行军部署

连(排)受领任务后,应召开党支部委员会,传达任务,研究敌情、行军道路及其两侧地形状况,判断可能与敌遭遇的地区,预定与敌遭遇时的行动方案,确定行军队形和直接警戒的组成。

尖兵连(排)的行军队形的编成,根据敌情、任务和道路状况而定,应便于迅速展开

7. 通信联络方法及信(记)号。

规定任务后,连(排)指挥员应抓紧时间进行动员,督促检查分队做好行军准备,并报告上级。

三、行军指挥

连(排)指挥员在行军中,应边走边边调查,经常了解沿途的敌情、地形、道路、桥梁、村庄等情况,通过请向导带路,或按地图行进等手段,正确掌握和标示行进方向,并不断与上级和尖兵班保持联络。

通过有敌情顾虑的居民地、丛林、隘路、渡口、桥梁时,应指挥尖兵班或增派搜索组进行搜索,防敌伏击。搜索时,力求荫蔽敏捷,以免迟缓本队行动。

当遇敌侦察袭扰时,应指挥尖兵班边走边打,或以荫蔽迅速的行动,将其捕捉。如与敌遭遇时,应立即指挥分队展开,抢占有利地形,积极打击和迟滞敌人的行动,保障我主力展开进入战斗。同时迅速查明情况报告上级。

地段时,应派出警戒和火器掩护,迅速查明情况,在当地民兵和群众的支援下,积极克服通过,或选择迂回路绕过。必须渡河时,应查明河宽、水深、流速、河底性质,可徒涉的位置及两岸情况,报告上级并标示或留联络员。

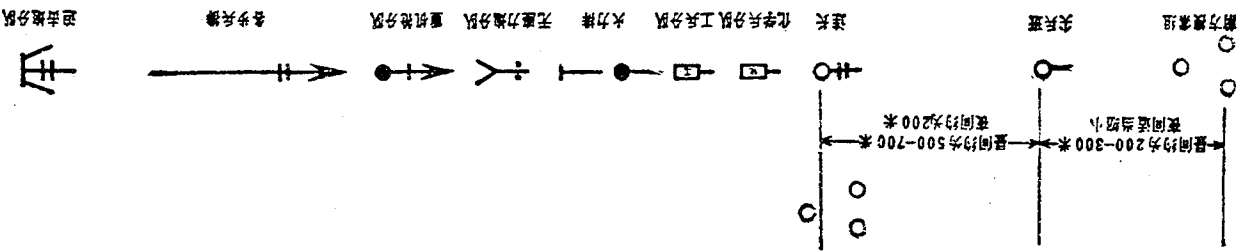
当接到上级大休息的命令后,指挥员应指挥尖兵班、搜索组 and 值班火器占领附近有利地形进行警戒,指派观察员加强对地面和空中的观察,其余人员进入指定地区疏散休息,并做好战斗准备。指挥员应抓紧时间调查有关敌情、地形、道路情况,并根据情况适时替换尖兵班和向导。

到达指定地区时,应迅速占领有利地形,保障被警戒的部(分)队安全进入宿营地域,直至得到上级指示后,才能进入宿营地域休息。

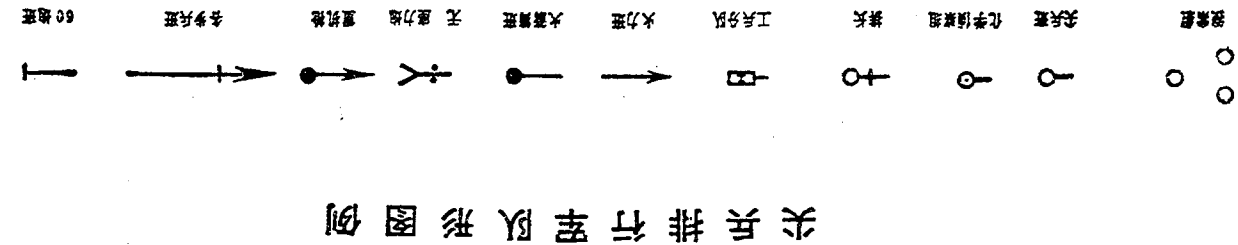
连(排)在担任侧方停止警戒时,应迅速荫蔽地按时到达指定地区,占领有利地形,

组织观察，准备火力，构筑工事，进行伪装。如遭敌袭击时，应积极杀伤敌人，坚决扼守阵地，保障主力安全通过，尔后按上级命令或按预定计划撤离。

后方尖兵连(排)在敌跟踪时，应逐次占领有利地形，交互掩护，边打边撤。按上级命令，在民兵配合下，破坏道路、桥梁，设置地雷等障碍物，阻止敌坦克、摩托化步兵的追击。在我主力安全转移后，应迅速摆脱敌人，收缩成行军队形，随主力后行进，或按上级指定的路线行进。



尖兵进行队形图例



尖兵进行队形图例

一、行军的组织准备

连(排)受领任务后,应在规定的时间内,好行军前的一切组织准备。时间紧迫时,应边走边准备。

(一)传达任务,进行动员
连受领行军任务后,应适时召开党支部委员会,传达上级的行军命令,本分队的任务,研究敌情、行军路线、沿途地形状况,确定行军序列,拟定各种情况下的处置方案,明确干部分工。

对分队进行深入的政治动员,鼓舞士气,发扬“一不怕苦,二不怕死”的革命精神,以保证完成行军任务。

(二)规定行军任务

规定任务时,应着重明确:

1. 敌情;
2. 本分队的任务,行军路线、里程、宿营及大休息地点、出发和到达时间;
3. 着装规定、集合地点和行军序列;
4. 完成行军准备的时间;

步兵连(排)行军及宿营

连(排)行军、宿营时,必须提高警惕,加强侦察警戒和指挥联络,注意伪装,严防敌人的突然袭击,发扬吃苦耐劳精神,按时到达指定地点,保证分队安全休息和能迅速投入战斗。

行 军

一切的“走”都是为着“打”。行军,是为了转移兵力,争取主动,向指定地区实施有组织的移动。行军通常在夜间或能见度不良条件下实施,分常行军和强行军。行军速度应根据敌情、任务、道路状况、天候季节而定。常行军:徒步通常每小时4—5公里;乘车时,通常夜间每小时15—20公里。昼间每小时20—25公里。强行军以加快行军速度或延长行军时间的方法实施。

5. 指挥联络信号，夜间识别记号及口令。

单独行军的连(排)应明确尖兵班、搜索组的编成、任务、运动路线、与本队的距离；可能与敌遭遇的地区和与敌遭遇时各分队的行动。

(三)组织行军保障

连(排)指挥员规定任务后，应组织行军保障。

指定观察员和对空值班火器，明确遭敌航空兵、炮兵、原子、化学武器和坦克袭击时各分队的行动。

组织收容，连通常由一名干部、卫生员和体质较好的几名战士组成收容组，在本队后尾负责收容伤病员，组织掉队人员跟进。

出发前，连(排)指挥员应检查分队给养、饮水、武器、弹药、器材、着装和防务或防冻、防疫药品的准备情况，妥善安置伤病员，检查群众纪律，请好向导等，并将准备情况报告上级。

(四)组织设营

在无敌情顾虑情况下单独行军时，可派出设营组。通常由司务长(给养员)、通信员、炊事员等组成。连设营组应提前出发，在预定宿营和大休息地点，筹备粮食、燃料、蔬菜、饮水，调查社情、疫情，区分各班宿营地区，派人于必经路口迎接分队，并向指挥员报告设营情况。

二、行军指挥

行军中，连(排)指挥员必须随时了解敌情、沿途地形和道路状况，及时组织分队积极克服各种困难，沿上级指定的路线，迅速荫蔽前进，按时到达指定地点。

(一)准时集合出发，维持行军秩序。集合场应选在前进方向的适当位置。集合时，连(排)指挥员应首先到达集合场，并派出警戒，检查人员、武器、器材、着装及伪装情况。率领分队按时出发和通过出发点。在公路和乡村路行军时，成一路或二路纵队沿道路一侧或两侧行进。连(排)长通常在本

队先头行进。行军中，应开展互助活动，搞好宣传鼓动，保持高昂的士气，听从调整哨的指挥，未经上级允许，不得超越前面的分队，并主动给车辆和执行特别任务的分队、人员让路。

(二)掌握行军路线，保持速度距离
行军中，连(排)应通过向导带路、询问居民、利用指南针判定方位和按图行进等方法，掌握行军路线，并保持行进速度和距离。开始行军应稍慢，尔后按正常行军速度行进。迷失方向或走错路时，应立即停止，待辨明后再前进。掉队时，应大步跟上。如几个部队同时通过渡口、桥梁、隘路和交叉路口等复杂地段时，连(排)指挥员应亲自组织指挥，防止拥挤和走错。通过后，先头应当减低行进速度，以免后面人员跑步追赶增加疲劳。

(三)组织休息，严格纪律

连(排)大、小休息，通常由上级统一掌握。小休息时，分队应靠路边保持原来队形。第一次小休息应督促战士整理鞋袜和装具。

通常在走元当日行程的一分之一以上时即应行大休息，并应离开道路，进入指定地区休息，保持战斗准备和能迅速转入行军。大休息时通常为2—3小时。休息时，应派出警戒，指定集合地点和疏散地域，迅速组织分队做饭、吃饭。必要时可占领附近有利地形，指定对空值班火器和反坦克火器占领阵地，保持战斗准备，以防地面和空中敌人的突然袭击。

行军中，要严守行军纪律，保守军事机密。夜间行军，必须严格管制灯火，保持肃静。休息时，人员不能随便离队，枪支装具不能离身。继续行军时，要详细检查人数、弹药、装具、器材和物品，严防丢失。

三、摩托化行军

(一)组织准备

规定任务时，应着重明确：车辆分配和行军序列，车速、车距的规定，弹药、油料、给养等携行量及车辆加油的方法，上级车辆修理组在行军纵队的位置和请求修理车辆的方法。各车应指定车长、观察(信号联络)员。

哨的指挥，并注意给指挥、通讯、卫生车让路。

每行驶2—3小时，应小休息20—30分钟。小休息时，车辆应靠道路右侧停车，派出观察、警戒和值班火器，组织驾驶员检查车辆；人员按规定信号下车，有组织地荫蔽休息，严禁横穿公路。

完成当日行程一半以上时，应选择有利地区进行大休息1.5—2小时。大休息时，应派出观察、警戒，指挥员要组织车长勘察区分车辆、人员疏散荫蔽位置和车辆出入道路，规定乘车时间，各车长应督促驾驶员检修车辆和休息。

车队在行进中遇敌空袭时，应根据当时情况指挥车辆迅速离开道路疏散荫蔽，或拉大车距靠路边停车，人员迅速下车疏散荫蔽，视情况组织火力射击低飞敌机；如任务紧急时，应加大车距，组织火力边打边走，加速前进。

四、在复杂地形、气候条件下行军

连(排)单独行军时，应派出尖兵车。派出距离，通常夜间1—2公里，昼间2—4公里。

出发前，认真检查车辆技术和所需油料、备份零件、随车工具、克服障碍的器材，车辆装载及行驶伪装情况。冬季行军时，应检查车辆防滑、保温设备。时间允许，应进行乘车训练。

(二)行军指挥

行军中，应保持好车速、车距，没有上级的指示，不得任意超车和停车。当车辆发生故障时，应靠路的右侧停车，组织驾驶员或请求车辆修理组进行抢修，随车人员可下车荫蔽休息，或占领附近有利地形做好战斗准备。车辆修好后，应加入其他单位序列行进，或在行军队形之后跟进，待部队休息时归建。如道路宽阔，经上级允许也可超越上级军队形归建。车辆无法修理时，应请求上级补充车辆，或组织乘车人员分乘其他车辆继续行进。连(排)在乘车前进中，应听从调整

组织人员下车活动，以防冻伤。在阳光照射野的雪地进行军，要戴风镜以防雪盲。

炎热季节行军，应尽量在夜间和早晚实施，要多带开水和防暑药品，途中应增加小休息次数，以防中暑。

宿 营

宿营，是为了部队得到适当的休息和整顿，为继续行军或进入战斗做好准备。宿营，通常采取露营、舍营两种方式。连（排）宿营地点由上级指定。应选择有良好地形、水源，避开传染病地区，摩托化分队还应备有车辆进出道路。

露营时，应利用有利地形，以班、排为单位疏散配置，条件许可时应架设帐篷或搭草棚。夏季应避开山洪水道，冬季应在避风向阳便于伪装的地带，山地应避开易于崩塌之处，草原、沙漠应避开风口。舍营时，应尽量按建制配置在便于迅速集中实施机动的地点。

山林地行军，应特别注意加强观察、警戒和安全措施。通过山垭口或上下坡时，应减低行军速度，乘车时还应加大车距。在难以通行的地段或险路上行进时，应加强组织指挥。在森林中行军，应注意防火，缩短行军长径，加强指挥联络，以防掉队。如荫蔽条件良好，可组织昼间行军。在亚热带丛林地行军时，尽量沿道路、顺山脊行进，无道路时，应按方位角运动，注意标示行军路线，组织运动保障队开路行进，并注意防病、防中暑、防毒虫。

沙漠地行军，要注意掌握行进方向和保持联络，没有明显道路时，应按方位角运动。遇暴风沙时，应利用地形躲避，待风小后再前进。沙漠地行军应增大粮、水携行量，规定用水标准。

高原严寒地行军，应采取防冻、防滑措施，准备克服冰雪障碍的工具和器材，适当减低行军速度，增加小休息次数，但每次休息时间不宜过长，并严禁躺卧。乘车时，应

况，定时发动保温或停车后立即放水以免冻坏水箱。

(二)呈送宿营报告
连(排)宿营后，应迅速向上级呈送宿营报告。其主要内容：

1. 当日出发与到达的时间、地点、人数和行程；
2. 武器、弹药、装备、器材、给养和车辆消耗情况；
3. 宿营配置，紧急集合场、警戒的数量、位置和主要警戒方向；
4. 分队的思想简况；
5. 存在和请示解决的问题。

连(排)指挥员还应抓紧时间就当日行军情况，进行简短的小结讲评。

(三)组织休息，搞好生活管理
干部要深入班、排检查督促战士烫脚、穿泡，整理装具，修理鞋袜，烤晒衣服、鞋垫，组织人员挖好厕所，抓紧时间休息，加强查铺查哨。冬季注意防火和煤气中毒，对

一、宿营的指挥与管理

组织宿营时，指挥员应明确分工，做到紧张而有秩序的工作，使分队能够很快地得到休息。

(一)组织侦察警戒

在有敌情顾虑的情况下，为确保分队宿营安全，连(排)在进入宿营地前，应对宿营地区进行侦察和搜索，对水源进行检查警戒。进入宿营地后，应派出警戒，指定对空和防坦克值班火器。根据上级指示向受敌威胁的方向派出班哨、步哨、游动哨和潜伏哨；连(排)长应率领有关指挥员侦察周围地形，研究制定遭敌原子、化学武器、航空兵、坦克突然袭击时的战斗方案，划分防空区域，规定紧急集合场和预备集合场；组织人员构筑必要的工事，并进行伪装。

摩托化分队宿营时，应组织车辆疏散、荫蔽和伪装，必要时挖掘车辆掩体。加强车辆警戒，组织驾驶员检修车辆，加油、加水。在严寒地区宿营车辆无防冻液时，应根据

冻伤可用雪和冷水洗抚，切忌烤火和用热水烫洗。严寒地区露营时，应两人合铺、盖棉被、大衣，戴帽子，放帽耳，穿着棉裤、袜子，互相抱脚睡眠取暖防冻。在亚热带丛林地露营时，应用竹、木搭起床铺，挂上蚊帐，露营棚门口和帐篷周围应铲除杂草、撒些草木灰，以防潮湿和毒虫。注意饮食卫生，水源如系河流时，应划分饮水和洗刷的地段。设法调剂伙食，保障人员健康。

(四)调查社情，拥政爱民

连(排)宿营后，应及时和民兵取得联系，向当地人民政府了解社情，认真执行三大纪律八项注意，开展拥政爱民活动。宣传群众，封锁消息，防奸保密，帮助民兵训练，进行助民劳动。离开宿营地时，应检查群众纪律，送还东西，填平厕所，搞好卫生，挑满水缸。

二、情况处置

宿营后，应严格防空纪律，搞好伪装，控制人员外出活动，夜间严格管制灯火。遭

敌空袭时，对空观察哨应立即发出警报，各分队应迅速进入指定地区疏散荫蔽，对空值班火器应以猛烈火力射击低飞的敌机。

当遭敌坦克、步兵突然袭击时，指挥员应“勇敢、坚定、沉着”，迅速指挥分队占领工事、要点，顽强抗击，在民兵的配合下，坚决击退和歼灭袭击之敌。

发现敌在我宿营地附近空降时，应迅速报告上级，并在民兵的协同下，迅速奔赴敌空降地区，抢占要点，乘敌立足未稳之际，勇猛发起冲击，消灭空降之敌。

炮、重机枪、连用机枪、轻喷火器和通信器材的加强。

连 (排) 哨

连(排)哨,是连(排)担任的宿营警戒。连(排)在执行警戒任务时,必须树立全局观念,提高警惕,严密组织警戒,做好战斗准备,恰当地处置各种情况,保障部(分)队宿营安全。

一、连(排)哨的派遣与任务

连(排)哨由营哨或宿营的团(营)派出,派出的距离,应根据敌情、地形、任务而定,通常距离被警戒的部(分)队4—6公里。警戒地区宽度:连可达3公里,排可达1.5公里。如地形、能见度受限制时,可适当缩小。

连(排)哨的任务:及时发现敌人,防止敌人突然袭击,制止敌人侦察,保障被警戒的部(分)队安全休息和顺利开展战斗或适时转移。连(排)哨可得到迫击炮、无座力

二、连(排)哨的配置

连(排)哨应配置在宿营部(分)队可能遭敌袭击的方向上。其警戒阵地,通常由上级指定。在警戒地区内选择便于扼守、便于隐蔽、便于撤回的有利地形,按照集中兵力、扼守要点的原则,配置兵力,组织火力(附图)。

组织火力时,应根据任务、地形、火器性能而定。以集中火力控制便于敌人接近的地段,注意控制翼侧。并能实施火力机动,支援各班(步)哨的战斗。反坦克火器配置在受敌坦克威胁的方向上。

警戒阵地通常应构筑散兵坑、火器发射阵地,在重要地段可设置防步兵、防坦克障碍物。如执勤时间较长时,应逐步加强警戒地的工作。

三、做好执勤准备

连(排)由行军警戒转为连(排)哨时,指

基础上，召开党委部安委员会扩大会议，统一思想，明确干部分工。尔后，给所属分队规定任务。其内容：

1. 连(排)的警戒阵地位置，主要警戒方向及警戒地区；

2. 各排(班)的警戒阵地、任务、射击地段、集中射击地段，各火器的基本发射阵地和预备发射阵地的位置、射击地段和补加射击地段，翼侧的保障措施，支援班哨、步哨战斗的方法；

3. 直接警戒的配置位置和警戒地区(方向)；

4. 构筑工事和设置障碍物的位置、方法和完成的时间；

5. 发现敌人时的战斗方案及防空、防原子、防化学的措施；

6. 指挥位置，联络信(记)号和口令。

(三)组织直接警戒

连(排)指挥员应亲自组织直接警戒。向前方或侧方敌人可能接近的重要地形和道路

指挥员可在行军途中向排(班)长简要传达任务，并按原行军序列进入指定地区，组织警戒。由宿营部(分)队派出时，连(排)指挥员受领任务后，应向分队传达任务，进行动员，迅速做好执勤准备工作，完成准备后，应向上级报告。

(一)进入警戒地区

连(排)按上级规定的时间，在尖兵班或搜索组的掩护下，隐蔽迅速地进入警戒地区。到达后，连(排)指挥员应首先派出观察员，指定值班火器，向前方或侧方派出警戒，其余人员隐蔽待命，做好战斗准备。

(二)现地勘察，规定任务

连(排)指挥员率领排(班)长进行现地勘察时，通常应：判定方位、确定方位物，介绍敌情，明确分队的警戒地区，友邻位置及前方侦察人员和地方武装的活动情况，查明警戒地区内地形、道路状况，研究各排(班)警戒阵地和火器发射阵地的位置。

连(排)在现地勘察和研究警戒配置的基

强观察；敌在我警戒阵地附近空降时，连（排）应立即报告，并乘敌空降和着陆立足未稳之际，协同友邻予以歼灭。

当发现敌人侦察或小群人员进入我警戒地区时，连（排）指挥员应报告上级，根据敌人数量，派出小组或步兵班荫蔽地绕到敌人侧后，以突然勇猛的动作，将敌捕捉或消灭。

当敌人袭击我直接警戒时，连（排）指挥员应及时判明敌人的行动企图，报告上级。同时指挥各分队迅速占领阵地，以火力支援直接警戒战斗，或视情况掩护其撤回。

当敌人向警戒阵地进攻时，应及时报告上级，积极顽强抗击，大量杀伤、消耗、迟滞敌人行动，争取时间，掩护主力投入战斗或安全转移。

五、撤出阵地时的行动

当接到上级命令或按规定时间撤出战斗时，连（排）指挥员应迅速给所属分队明确：撤出阵地的时间、顺序、路线及集结地域，

附近派出班哨或步哨，在便于敌人接近的荫蔽地形上派出潜伏哨；在警戒线内（外）派出游动哨，阵地上派出观察员。有时根据上级指示，向敌人活动的方向派出侦察班。在班哨、步哨、潜伏哨、游动哨规定任务时，应指出：敌情、任务、警戒位置，前方侦察人员的活动地区、返回的路线、时间和联络方法，邻哨的位置，以及撤回的路线和各种信（记）号。

连（排）指挥员给警戒分队规定任务后，应调制警戒配置要图，呈送上级。

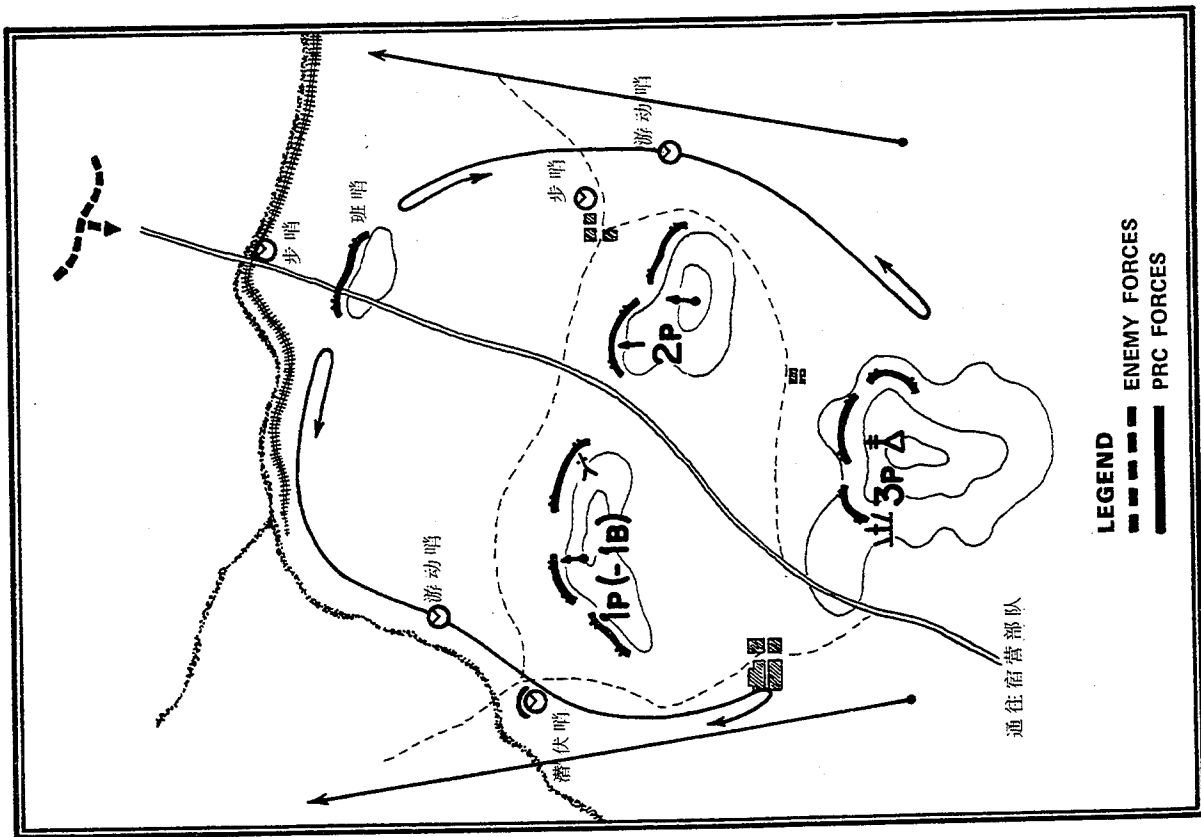
四、情况处置

连（排）在完成工事构筑、做好战斗准备的前提下，阵地除留观察员、值班火器和值班分队外，应组织其余人员休息。干部应轮流值班查哨、组织换班和处置情况。

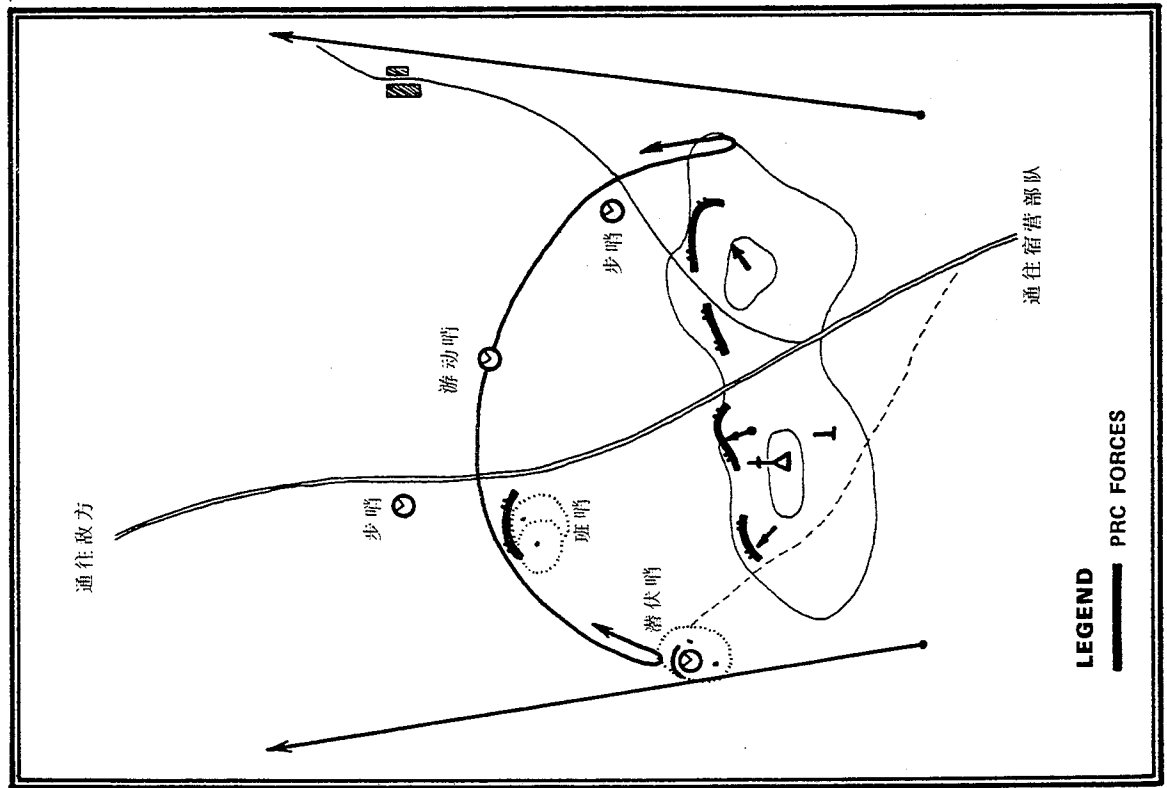
当敌空袭时，应指挥对空值班班火器射击低飞敌机，其余人员荫蔽，做好战斗准备；发现敌人在警戒地区有空降征候时，连（排）指挥员应迅速报告上级，通报地方武装，加

互相掩护的方法，撤出的信(记)号和对翼侧的保障措施。撤出前，应严守秘密，加强伪装，保持原活动规律。如有地方武装配合时，应共同研究撤出和转移的方案。撤出时，连(排)指挥员必须沉着、果断地指挥所属分队，在掩护分队或炮兵火力掩护下迅速撤出。此时，连(排)指挥员应留一人同最后撤出战斗的分队一起撤离。在夜间撤出战斗时，应特别注意保持肃静，迅速撤出战斗。撤回指定地区或归建后，应及时向派出的指挥员报告。

连 哨 配 置 图 例



排哨配置图例



步兵分队连排战术教材

中国人民解放军总参谋部军训部

中国人民解放军战士出版社出版发行
中国人民解放军第一二零一工厂印刷

开本 850 × 1168 毫米 1/64 · 印张 2 号 · 字数 40,000

1973 年 5 月 第一版 (北京)

1973 年 5 月 第一次印刷

INFANTRY COMPANY (PLATOON) OFFENSIVE OPERATION

AGAINST AN ENEMY IN DEFENSE

Offensive operation is the key measure to annihilate the enemy. During an offensive operation, the infantry company (platoon) should carry out thoroughly the concept of war of annihilation, concentrate its superior forces, adopt outflanking and encirclement movements, instill in the troops the spirit of dare to fight, dare to sacrifice, dare to bear hardships and dare to continue fighting, attack bravely and fiercely, and annihilate the enemy.

In an offensive operation, the company (or platoon) may act as the main assault force or as a support or reserve force. The mission of the main assault element is to move toward the main direction of attack, resolutely penetrate the enemy position to destroy the enemy, and quickly develop toward the direction as directed. The mission of the support element is to aggressively penetrate the enemy position, and to encircle and destroy the enemy in coordination with the main assault element. The mission of the reserve force is to reinforce the assault forces, exploit the success, resist the enemy's counterattack, and secure the flanks and the limiting point.

During an offensive operation, the company may be attached with mortars, recoilless rifles, heavy machine guns, company machine guns, and light flamethrowers, and supported by tanks and artillery units. The platoon may be attached with 60mm mortars, recoilless rifles, heavy machine guns (or company machine guns), rocket launchers, and light flamethrowers.

1. Holding of Party Branch Committee Meetings and Combat Mobilization:

The company's Party Branch Committee is the nucleus of unified leadership and combat unity. All important matters must be brought to the committee for discussion. Committee members will fully express their opinions and make a clear decision before the matters can be carried out. After receiving a mission, and based on the company commander's understanding of the mission, the situation, and his initial decision, the company should call a timely meeting (enlarged) of the Party Branch Committee to issue orders and directives from the higher command, understand the intentions of the higher command and the mission of the company, study the company commander's initial decision, make and be familiar with operational plans, estimate possible changes in the situation and problems that may be encountered during combat, determine ways to meet them, clearly understand the requirements and plans of combat mobilization, reorganize units, assign cadres, name successors, and finalize various preparations. If the situation is urgent, the company commander will take actions promptly and report them to the Party Branch Committee afterward.

Combat mobilization. Based on the company's mission and the commander's thinking, combat mobilization generally starts first with the Party, then the cadres and then the men. When the situation is urgent, mobilization may be carried out while advancing. When mobilization is being carried out, emphasis should be placed on clearly explaining the enemy situation, the mission, the objective, the conditions for victory, the method of overcoming both difficulties and the enemy, devising effective combat slogans, enhancing the basic functions of the Party and Youth League (YL) members, promoting ideological and political work, raising the officers' and men's sense of class hatred and combat zeal, and creating a competitive fervency among the men for establishing merit by killing the enemy. During combat, efforts should be made to intensify propaganda work and encourage party and YL members to play their leading roles and cadres and fighters to fight bravely and to accomplish their combat mission resolutely.

2. Prepare Well for Offensive Operations:

The company (platoon) commander (leader) should adhere to the principle of being well prepared for each battle. According to the order of higher command and the decision of the Party Branch Committee, he should make a detailed on-the-spot reconnaissance, correctly select the point of attack and deploy his forces, organize close coordination and quickly finalize preparations for the attack.

A. On-the-spot Reconnaissance and Selection of Point of Attack.

The commander's correct deployment of forces is the result of a correct decision; a correct decision is made from a correct estimate, and a correct estimate comes from a thorough and necessary reconnaissance, and a thorough study of all the information obtained in reconnaissance. Therefore, the company commander (platoon leader) should lead his subordinate commanders and commanders of the attached elements in conducting on-the-spot reconnaissance of the enemy position. Such reconnaissance can be made at one or two locations simultaneously. When reconnoitering, first determine the azimuth and the pertinent terrain features, the enemy's situation, the combat intentions of the higher command, the mission of the unit, etc. Then investigate the enemy's disposition of forces, distribution of fire power, construction of defensive works and placement of obstacles, frontages and gaps in the enemy's defense, location of the main forces, location of the enemy's reserve and the direction of possible counterattack, the frontage, flanks and depths of the enemy's forces, assault position of our own forces, and terrain conditions of the avenues of approach and how these conditions affect the movement of our own troops.

The selection of the point of attack is determined by the current enemy's situation, terrain conditions as well as the situation of our own forces. According to the combat plan of the higher command, try to

select the point of attack at the enemy's weakest point, which is usually located either at the flank or in the rear where the enemy's strength and fire power are comparatively weak. These are the areas where we can make full use of our fire-power and where we can effect good coordination with friendly forces. The assault position should be selected from a favorable place close to the enemy, while the assault route should be convenient for approaching the enemy stealthily.

B. Disposition of strength

The combat method of deploying a superior force to systematically destroy the enemy should not apply only to large campaigns, but also to small unit deployments. As for disposition of the company (platoon) strength, a stronger force with superior weapons should be used to form the main attack element. The main attack should be launched from a favorable terrain close to the point of attack. Meanwhile, part of the strength, armed with necessary weapons, will be used to form a secondary attack force to support the main attack force. The secondary force can either launch a frontal or one or two sided flank attack with the object of encircling the enemy. As usual, the company should set up its own reserve and deploy it to the direct rear or flank rear of the main attack force under convenient concealment. The reserve force could move out swiftly from favorable terrain to provide timely reinforcement to the main attack force. Should the deployment fail to achieve the encirclement objective, forces should be concentrated against one point. When a breach is made, immediately initiate an outflanking movement.

The weapons element should use its main fire power to support the main assault element. Motars, recoilless rifles, heavy machineguns, and company machineguns are usually concentrated and employed at the company level. Sometimes, the heavy machineguns, company machineguns, and recoilless rifles may also be attached to a platoon. Usually, the light flamethrowers are allocated to the platoon and squad. Mortar should be

placed in a concealed and convenient firing position at the rear of the flank of the infantry combat formation to wipe out or neutralize the effectiveness of the exposed or concealed enemy reserves. Mortars should also be used to destroy the enemy's light bunkers, to confuse the enemy, and to clear a path through obstacles if necessary. Recoilless rifles and rockets should be emplaced against the direction being threatened by enemy tanks, armored vehicles and fire bases so as to destroy them. Machineguns are used to effectively destroy enemy reserves, to neutralize enemy weapons, and to fire at enemy airplanes flying at low altitude. Light flame throwers are used in coordination with infantrymen to wipe out the enemy fire bases and to destroy the enemy hidden in concealed positions.

C. Assignment of missions

When the company commander (platoon leader) assigns a mission to his subordinates, he should be brief and concise. He should not repeat those things that are already known. Normally, he should identify the object, orient his subordinates on the situation and state the following:

(1) Enemy's unit designation, strength, area of defense, key point, tank firing point and weapons firing point, deployment of reserve forces, and direction of possible counterattack.

(2) Mission of higher command.

(3) Company (platoon) assault position, objective, and direction of advance.

(4) Friendly forces assault position and objective.

(5) Number and types of weapons to be assigned to each platoon and squad, assault position, objective(s), assault route, and direction of advance.

(6) Mission of the attached elements, weapons' firing positions, alternate firing positions, route and ways for supporting the infantry.

(7) Time required to complete preparations for attack.

(8) Location of command post.

D. Organization of coordination:

Usually, coordinated action of the company (platoon) is organized at the same time the mission is assigned. Based on the intentions of the higher command and the company's decision, the unit executing the main mission should organize coordination among its subordinate units, attached elements, support elements and friendly troops on the basis of the assigned mission, the time and the location. All the elements should understand the concept of team work, strictly observe the regulations of coordination, and take coordinated action with other elements in annihilating the enemy. In the event of a change in the situation, the unit commander should redirect the actions of his elements. When organizing coordination, the following points should be clearly specified:

(1) Time, route and order for the various elements to occupy their assault positions, as well as possible new situations and methods for dealing with them.

(2) Time for firing preparations, targets to be neutralized and destroyed with higher command artillery and company (platoon) weapons, time, location, method, and protective measures for opening a path through obstacles in front of the enemy position.

(3) Actions to be taken by infantry units, supporting artillery units and tank units at the time of attack; combat formation, location, and coordinated movement of the infantry units.

(4) Attack and destroy the enemy's key point in depth, and smash the enemy's counterassault. Movements of the various elements and their coordinated action with friendly forces when the reserves enter combat.

(5) Signals and Identifying Markings

When the Air Force is providing support, all units should mark their respective positions clearly.

If there are militia and guerrilla forces participating in combat, methods of mutual support and coordination must be clearly defined.

E. Organization of Security

The company (platoon) should organize close reconnaissance, security, and observation, assign duty elements and weapons and guard against enemy ground and air reconnaissance and surprise attack, construct necessary field works, prepare camouflage, be thoroughly prepared for defense against nuclear and chemical warfare, and be organized for first aid, be timely in drawing and issuing rations, ammunition and combat equipment to ensure smooth accomplishment of the combat mission.

F. Promote Military Democracy and Carry Out Pre-combat Training.

The company (platoon) should promote military democracy, and under the guidance of the commander, encourage all soldiers to discuss ways to seize the enemy's position and to accomplish the combat mission. Based on the enemy's situation, terrain and mission, conduct pre-combat training. During training, select terrain similar to that of the objective, and according to the enemy situation at the time, prepare a combat plan and conduct repeated exercises using sand tables in order to raise the technical and tactical standards of each unit as well as to be familiar with coordinated actions and to further improve the actual combat plan.

3. Occupation of Attack Position Under Cover:

The company (platoon) usually utilizes dark and bad weather as cover to occupy its attack position. It may also move into its attack position by leaps and bounds in an extended formation under cover of fire and utilizing concealment offered by terrain features. While moving to the attack position, keep the enemy under constant observation, take advantage of the terrain, organize fire cover and assume the combat formation. Mortars must be emplaced in advance and machineguns must take up their hasty positions to provide maximum fire support to the attacking infantry moving toward their attack position.

When the enemy is far away, the terrain offers good cover, and the visibility is poor, the company (platoon) may advance in either columns of files or twos, or in accordance with combat organization and mission, advance along the preselected routes. The commanders should be at the head of the column so as to control the situation and guard against enemy surprise attack. When passing through an open field, or an area under enemy air or artillery fire, pass through the area quickly in an extended formation, and according to the situation, fire may be organized against low flying enemy aircraft. When confronted with a contaminated area, detour around it or move through as quickly as possible with protective equipment.

When advancing to within the effective range of enemy rifle or machinegun fire, the commander should organize fire cover. The advancing elements, in an extended formation, should advance and close with the enemy by taking advantage of natural terrain cover. As an alternative, squads may provide cover fire for each other while advancing by leapfrog and speedily occupy their attack position.

After occupying the attack position, the commander will organize reconnaissance and security, assign duty weapons, and organize personnel to construct field works and camouflage so as to guard against enemy fire attack.

4. Attack Fiercely and Penetrate the Enemy Position.

During the assault, the company (platoon) should be brave and have the vanquished spirit and should concentrate its fire power and strength in the assault, resolutely penetrate the enemy position, speedily develop toward the enemy flanks or depth, widen and consolidate the breach.

A. Preparation for assault:

When preparing for an assault, the company commander (platoon leader) should clearly outline the mission to his subordinates, personally inspect the fire preparations of our artillery and air force, observe the enemy situation, and then make a timely report to the higher headquarters. In accordance with the fire plan of the higher headquarters, the Commander will direct his mortars and recoilless rifles to destroy the enemy tanks, fire points, and reserves in support of the assault force. He also supervises other elements to complete combat preparations and then renders a status report to higher headquarters. If the distance to the enemy position is too great, as directed by higher headquarters, the commander will move his unit as close as possible to the enemy position in order to reduce the assault distance.

When the company (platoon) is ordered to open a path through obstacles or to clear the remaining obstacles on the path, as dictated by the situation and directed by the higher headquarters, it should surreptitiously open the path prior to completion of fire preparation, but adequate fire cover must be provided for this operation. Or it may direct the demolition team to open a path under cover of fire at the time fire preparation is being made. Generally two or three paths will be opened at the same time. If engineer troops are used, they will be provided with cover fire. If artillery is called in to clear a path, a timely survey of the area should be made and the results of the artillery barrage should be reported to higher headquarters.

All cleared approaches should be secured by protective fire to prevent the enemy from blocking them off.

B. Attack bravely:

The attacking company (platoon) should comply with attack signals and move forward bravely. Under covering fire and the aftereffects of explosions, it should boldly overrun the enemy defenses and wipe out all resistance. The reserve force will move up and be prepared for combat. If tank support is available, infantry soldiers should follow the tanks and direct them toward enemy positions as well as protect them from antitank weapons. If the tanks are halted for any reason, the infantry should move forward without them.

During the infantry assault, the enemy gun and tank positions will be placed under heavy attack by supporting fire from mortars, recoilless rifles, and machineguns in order to annihilate the enemy and support the advance of the infantry. The supporting weapons should move forward to provide continuous fire support to the infantry. If the advancing infantry encounters resistance and is halted, the company commander (platoon leader) should remain "Brave, Firm, Cool," and immediately set up covering fire and seek favorable terrain to disperse his troops. He should then study the situation, raise the morale of his troops, redeploy his troops and start the assault again. He will also submit a timely report on the situation to higher headquarters.

C. Expand and Fortify the Newly Gained Grounds:

After penetrating the enemy position, the company (platoon) should firmly and fiercely proceed to the assigned target and quickly expand the breach. The commander (leader) should closely and continuously monitor the situation and move all his weapons forward to neutralize and destroy enemy fire points and reserves which are hindering the progress of the assaulting infantry. The company (platoon) should fully utilize

the independent combat capability of squads and teams to penetrate weak points in the enemy's defense in order to split up, encircle, and annihilate the enemy in the forward key points. If the breach is threatened by the enemy, or if the enemy threatens the force which is assigned to secure the breach, the company (platoon) should move swiftly to both flanks and take up positions in a favorable terrain to control all key points. The unit should then construct field works, organize fire power, and be prepared to resist enemy counterattack so as to make it safe for the follow-up echelons to move into combat and to continue the offense against the enemy.

5. Swiftly Exploit the Victory and Destroy the Enemy in Depth:

After breaking through the enemy position, the company (platoon) should continue the attack in depth and encircle the enemy and then divide and annihilate them.

A. Timely Employment of the Reserve:

Reserve will be used on the following occasions: to reenforce the striking force and to exploit victory; to resist strong enemy counterattacks; or to replace excessive losses of the main attacking force. However, prior approval should be obtained before committing the reserve force. Usually, after the reserve force is used, it will be immediately replaced by a new reserve force.

When the reserve goes into battle, the company commander (platoon leader) should make known the situation, the mission, location of target, approach route to the target, time of attack, method of attack, and weapons assignment, as well as coordination with other friendly elements. The reserve should, under the cover of fire, join the battle from a flank position or from a frontal position between two main attacking units.

B. Attack and Destroy Enemy Key Points:

During the attack on enemy key points, the company commander (platoon leader) should immediately determine the actual situation and deploy the main attacking element to the flanks to encircle the enemy with part of the attacking strength to hold the enemy front and one of the flanks and the rest to penetrate the enemy key points with fire support.

When confronted with an enemy key point supported by tanks and armored vehicles, approach the enemy under cover, make full use of antitank weapons and antitank teams and, with concentrated strength, penetrate the enemy key point and attack him from within and without. Depending on the situation, make use of terrain features and the dead areas of enemy fire, make detailed assignment of tasks, launch the attack from different directions, and destroy the enemy tanks and armored vehicles one by one.

Before attacking an enemy bunker, determine its weak points, move up as close as possible, and attack them one by one with concentrated fire power and explosives. When finding an opening in the enemy's defense, thrust into the main bunker and develop outward from the inside with squads and teams which are capable of fighting independently.

C. Smash Enemy Tank and Infantry Counterattack:

When enemy tanks and infantry are counterattacking, the company commander (platoon leader) should immediately assess the enemy intentions, report his findings to the higher command, and request for artillery support to interdict the enemy. Then direct the platoons (squads) to occupy advantageous terrain, and use recoilless rifles, rockets and the antitank guns to destroy enemy tanks and mortars, rifles and machineguns to sever contact between enemy tanks and infantry. When the enemy is in confusion, attack and destroy him from the rear and flanks. If the enemy strength is not large and the situation

is in our favor, the enemy counterassault can be smashed while we are advancing. When the enemy is retreating, pursue him and exploit the success in depth.

When the enemy is counterassaulting our friendly forces, the company (platoon) should attack the enemy with either fire power or troops in support of the friendly forces, depending on the situation at the time.

After accomplishing its mission, the company (platoon) may be made into a reserve force or given the mission to consolidate the occupied position or withdrawn from the battlefield and assigned a new mission.

D. Infantry Company (Platoon) Night Operations Against Enemy in Defense at Night:

"Close combat and night combat are our glorious traditions with which we have destroyed our enemies in the past." In future wars, we still have to kill our enemy at night. Night operations not only facilitate the achievement of surprise, but also reduce our losses by enemy fire. However, observation, firing, commanding, coordination and communication are less convenient and it is easy to lose one's bearings at night. In company (platoon) offensive operations, the theories of strength concentration and the destruction of the enemy in close combat must be thoroughly observed and the spirit of independent fighting and taking the initiative in achieving coordination must be developed. We must also take advantage of darkness to approach the enemy stealthily so as to achieve the element of surprise. In addition, a surprise and intensified attack should be employed to break into the enemy position and encircle and annihilate him.

(1) Preparation for Offensive Operations:

In compliance with the principle of "Adequate preparations must be made for every battle," the company (platoon) commanding officer, upon receiving a combat mission, should prepare a combat plan during the day under the guidance of the Party Branch, and at night find out the enemy situation, be familiar with the terrain, clearly understand the mission, and speedily complete all preparations for combat.

(a) Conduct On-the-Spot Reconnaissance and Select Points of Attack:

Based on the results of reconnaissance made in daylight, the company (platoon) commanding officer should conduct closer reconnaissance by stealthily moving up to the front and the flanks of the enemy positions under cover of darkness to pinpoint the locations of defense works, locations of weapons and obstacles, and locations of sentries in front of the enemy defensive positions. He should also check out gaps in the enemy's defense, the enemy's pattern of movement and illumination conditions at night, and location of security guards; select approach routes to the rear of the enemy flanks as well as attack positions, weapon positions, and objects that can be identified easily at night.

Points of attack should be selected where the element of surprise can be effected. The rear areas of the enemy flanks are weakly defended points where penetration and development in depth can be easily made.

(b) Troop Disposition:

In a night attack, the company (platoon) should use the main force against the flank or rear of the flanks in an encirclement movement while keeping another force in reserve. The distances and intervals of combat formations should be properly reduced, and weapons, reserve force, and the commander should be positioned toward the front. Organic or attached weapons should

be assigned to subordinate elements to increase their independent combat capability. Ordinarily, most of the heavy machineguns and recoilless rifles should be attached to infantry platoons, mortars should be concentrated at the company, and squad machineguns and rocket launchers should be kept with the infantry squads.

(c) Assignment of Mission and Organization of Coordination:

In assigning missions and organizing coordination, the following should be specified:

(a) The attack position, the target, and the attack direction of each element.

(b) Time, order, routes and coordination for each unit to move into its attack position.

(c) Locations, time and coordination for clearing paths through enemy obstacles.

(d) Actions and coordination to be taken by each element when a surprise attack is developed into a major attack.

(e) Command position and signals.

When organizing a night operation, the company (platoon) must organize observation and security to guard against enemy raids. Mortars, recoilless rifles and heavy machineguns should be prepared before dark for night firing. Each element should make ready its antitank and anti-obstacle equipment.

(2) Move into Attack Position Stealthily.

When approaching the enemy at night, the company (platoon) should move stealthily and speedily, designate a base unit, check uniforms and equipment, and enforce night movement regulations. When moving to contact with the enemy, follow the predetermined route, proper formation, conveniently identifiable landmarks, and predetermined azimuth to maintain the direction of advance, and speedily move forward. While moving, strengthen security, patrol and camouflage, reduce the intervals and distance, and make certain all weapons are ready for combat. The company commander will advance with the base unit, strengthen contact with other units, direct movement of each element at the proper time and resolutely deal with the various situations as they appear.

When encountering enemy flares, immediately take cover if the terrain is exposed, and taking advantage of the illumination, observe the enemy situation, the terrain and the route of advance. When the illumination is over immediately move forward. If the enemy continues firing flares, move forward by taking advantage of the terrain as cover.

The company (platoon) should take up its attack position as close as possible to the enemy position. After occupying its attack position, it should immediately organize observation and security, assign duty weapon squads, investigate the enemy situation and terrain, clearly assign missions, complete attack preparations, and report the situation to the higher level.

(3) Surprise Attack.

The company (platoon) should try its utmost to launch a surprise attack in conducting night offensive and at the same time hold in readiness a strong backup reserve. This strong reserve force will be committed to action if the surprise attack fails. In a surprise attack all weapons will be in a state of readiness. The company (platoon) commander should instruct the engineer team to surreptitiously open a path through

obstacles. Upon receiving the signal that a path has been cleared, the commander should move his troops through as quickly and quietly as possible. The troops should bravely launch a surprise attack against the enemy position using all available fire power including hand grenades and bayonets. Also antitank teams will be dispatched to destroy enemy tanks and armored vehicles with antitank weapons and explosives.

In a strong attack, under the cover of artillery fire, the engineer teams should take advantage of this fire cover to open paths through enemy obstacles to permit the attacking force to reach the enemy positions, overrun them, and annihilate the enemy while he is in a state of confusion. Artillery pieces should follow closely behind the infantry to provide fire support. The reserve force should follow the main attack force at a closer than normal distance to provide support at the proper time.

(4) Bravely Decentralize the Enemy Troops and Destroy Them Individually.

After penetrating the enemy position, speedily exploit the success. Taking advantage of darkness and openings in the enemy's defenses, out-flank, encircle and annihilate the enemy.

(a) Encircle and Destroy the Enemy at Key Points.

When encountering enemy key points, the company (platoon) commander should immediately reconnoiter the situation and move up artillery and reserve forces under cover of darkness and under favorable terrain conditions. He should try to penetrate the rear of the enemy flanks with the main attack force so as to throw the enemy in disorder, cut off his retreat, and destroy him with concentrated fire power.

When faced with a key point defended by tanks, the company

(platoon) commander will order the antitank teams to attack and destroy them with antitank weapons under cover of darkness. After the tanks are destroyed, the main elements will penetrate the position and destroy the enemy from within and without.

(b) Against Enemy Counterattack with Tanks and Infantry.

When the enemy launches a counterattack with a superior tank - infantry force, the company (platoon) should remain calm, take up positions with good terrain cover and surprise the enemy with rapid and concentrated fire power at close range. This will confuse the enemy and break up their formation. Our forces will then separate the tanks from the infantry and destroy them. Situation permitting, a portion of our troops can move behind the enemy under cover of darkness and then attack from the rear in coordination with a frontal attack by the main force.

When under attack by a small enemy force, the company (platoon) should take advantage of darkness and launch a surprise and strong flank attack to destroy the enemy.

(c) Actions Taken in a Thrust.

When the company is given the mission to raid an enemy command post, communication center, or artillery position, it should review the situation carefully and give each element an attack target, route of approach, signals, and instructions to deal with unexpected situations. In carrying out a thrust action, it is necessary to be calm, brave, agile, to have the ability to fight independently, and to take advantage of darkness and the openings in the enemy position. When the thrust action is under way, the company (platoon) should strengthen its reconnaissance and security, make a timely estimate of the situation, maintain the direction and route of advance, avoid prolonged contact with the enemy, arrive at the thrust objective on time, and in a surprise move, attack the enemy, resolutely accomplish the mission and make a timely report to the higher headquarters.

INFANTRY COMPANY (PLATOON) OFFENSIVE OPERATION
AGAINST UNPREPARED ENEMY FORCES

Unprepared enemy forces are generally those camping in a temporary location, landing by parachutes, or defending a position in a hurry. Such enemy forces usually have not completed the occupation and consolidation of defense positions, the deployment of troops and the construction of field works and obstacles. They may not be familiar with the terrain conditions of the area and may have exposed flanks or gaps. But the enemy can possibly organize a position defense system with its superior mechanization. For this reason, the company(platoon) should thoroughly carry out the doctrine of quick decision and complete annihilation, and grasp favorable opportunities so as to swiftly approach and annihilate enemy troops with concentrated strength, tactics of encirclement, outflanking and forceful attack.

1. Swiftly Approach the Enemy and Carry Out Missions Step by Step

Troop movements should be conducted secretly and swiftly. The company(platoon) should quickly approach the enemy under cover of darkness, bad weather conditions, and favorable terrain or under the barrage of our own air force and artillery.

A. Preparation for Approaching Enemy

Preparation time for approaching the enemy should be reduced so as not to miss any combat opportunity. While receiving the mission in the assembly area, the company(platoon) should hold timely party committee meetings and cadre conferences attended by commanders of various elements for the purposes of passing on the orders from higher command, studying the company's mission, determining the formations and routes of approach, the types of reconnaissance, security, camouflage, counter-tank, air-defense, and CBR protection, as well as the right clothing to be worn by personnel in the operation. When receiving a mission assignment during the approaching-the-enemy movement, the company(platoon) must march, organize, and prepare at the same time.

B. Swiftly and Stealthily Approaching the Enemy

The company(platoon) should swiftly and stealthily reach the appointed area on time in marching column or dispersed formation along

predetermined routes according to the enemy situation and terrain conditions. Advance guards composed of infantry squads and anti-tank weapons should be assigned while marching. The company(platoon) commander should march ahead of the main body of the company(platoon), keeping in continuous contact with the security element, monitoring direction of travel, exercising timely control of the situation and properly directing the actions of his elements. When they encounter enemy reconnaissance or security guards, the main body of the company should try to evade them and continue to advance in the assigned direction, or a portion of the force can be assigned to destroy the enemy reconnaissance troops. At the same time, efforts should be made to intensify propaganda activities and encourage party members and YL members to play leading roles in accomplishing their missions resolutely.

C. Mission Assignment to Various Elements

While approaching the enemy, the company(platoon) commander should assign missions to various elements step by step according to instructions from higher command, the current enemy situation, terrain and results of situation analysis and estimates. The commander, together with the commander from higher command, can first approach the enemy to conduct reconnaissance under cover of our security element, then assign missions to various elements in concealed but convenient locations to conduct observation. Preparation for assault should be rapidly worked out.

The following matters should be covered in the mission assignment:

- (1) Enemy strength, locations of flanks and gaps, conditions of field works and obstacles.
- (2) Location of the company(platoon)'s departure position for assault, target for assault, and direction of attack after the assault.
- (3) Various platoons'(squads') routes and targets of assault and measures of coordination.
- (4) Positions of weapon elements and functions in support of the assault elements.
- (5) Command post and signals.

D. Single Surprise Penetration Assault on Enemy Positions

Surprise attacks should be launched against the unprepared enemy so as to penetrate the enemy defense position in one stroke then cut off, encircle, and annihilate the enemy. A strong follow up attack must be prepared while the surprise attack is being launched.

In launching a surprise attack, secret and rapid movements are essential. Before the surprise attack, all weapon elements should be in a state of support readiness. Heavy fire support by the weapon elements should be provided to the infantry elements launching surprise attacks. According to the pre-arranged plan, the assaulting elements should stealthily open a path through obstacles and bravely penetrate enemy position from flanks and gaps using encirclement, outflanking, and breakthrough tactics. If the surprise attack fails, a strong main attack should be launched immediately.

In a strong attack, the company(platoon) should, with orders from higher command, launch immediate assault under heavy artillery fire. Weapons elements should occupy fire positions on favorable terrain to provide fire support to the infantry elements in assault. The assaulting elements should penetrate enemy positions from the flanks and breaches and annihilate the enemy with a combination of fire, demolition, and surprise. This should be followed by exploiting the victory.

E. Swift and Strong Attacks to Annihilate all Enemy Troops

After penetrating the enemy position, the company(platoon) should reorganize and simultaneously attack the enemy's weak points. Then, by mobilizing strength, fire power, and employing breakthrough and cutoff tactics, annihilate the enemy.

(1) Attacking enemy weak points

After penetrating the enemy position, the company(platoon) should attack the command post, communication center, artillery, and other key positions from flanks and breaches using breakthrough and cut-off tactics. At the same time, the company(platoon) commander should direct his weapon and reserve elements to move forward and provide timely and effective support to the advance elements. After

approaching the target, a fierce, surprise assault should be launched to confuse the enemy, occupy key positions, cut off the enemy retreat and annihilate the enemy individually.

(2) Encircle and destroy the retreating enemy

During the retreat of enemy infantry, tanks or armored vehicles, the company(platoon) commander should direct his elements to pursue and destroy while the enemy is in a state of confusion. If the retreating enemy occupies strong defense positions, the commander should immediately investigate the situation and attack the point from many directions and destroy the enemy by converging attack. Also, the commander can use a small force to attack the front and one flank of the position and then use the main force to attack another flank. If the enemy is retreating, follow-up or parallel types of pursuit tactics should be initiated. The elements pursuing the enemy should advance to positions on the enemy's front or flank and then launch an assault to cut off its retreat and destroy the moving enemy troops.

During pursuit, the company(platoon) commander should be at the front of his elements to give brief mission assignments. If pursuit is by vehicles, tanks should be included quickly and the situation reported to higher command and friendly troops.

While pursuing the enemy, the company(platoon) should press forward, follow closely and destroy them before regrouping is possible. If a small enemy force resists, the company(platoon) should destroy them or keep them under observation until a larger force can swiftly pass over the small enemy force and then continue pursuit of the enemy main force. If the enemy attempts to resist by occupying a defense position, the company should bravely assault and destroy them with concentrated force while the enemy is unprepared. If there are any local militia elements, the company(platoon) should take the initiative to contact and coordinate with them to annihilate the enemy.

(3) Annihilation of enemy airborne troops

To destroy enemy airborne troops, the company(platoon) should coordinate closely with the local armed militia elements, close with the airborne troops quickly and destroy them in close combat.

When enemy parachute troops are still in the air, the company(platoon) should direct its elements to occupy favorable terrain points, control landing zones and to the extent possible, destroy the enemy troops in the air with concentrated fire. When enemy helicopters are ready to land, concentrated heavy fire power should be used to destroy the helicopters and troops inside. If the enemy troops are off-loading from the helicopters, the company(platoon) should rapidly close with the enemy troops before their deployment; then encircle, cut-off, and destroy them with concentrated fire and strong assault.

When the enemy is attempting to retreat by helicopter, the company (or platoons) should increase the attack on the enemy forces on the ground. Simultaneously, fire power should be quickly directed toward the enemy's helicopters. When the enemy is assembling to board the helicopters, part of our force should destroy the stubbornly resisting enemy while the main forces attack the enemy boarding area to drive wedges between their positions and destroy enemy helicopters and forces. When enemy's helicopters are trying to flee, concentrated fire power will shoot them down.

THE CHARACTERISTICS OF MOUNTAIN OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS

Owing to the intricate terrain, dead areas, lack of roads, and climatical changes in mountain combat operations, it is easier for us to conceal our movements to outflank, encircle and break through the enemy's defense force. However, observation, mobility and command and control of supporting fire power are made more difficult. Moreover, it is easier for our troops to become separated and lost.

In a mountain offensive operation, a company (platoon) should adhere to the principle of concentrating a superior force to destroy the enemy forces individually. The company (platoon) should promote our strong close combat, independent operation, and combined operation capabilities and should adopt encirclement and outflanking tactics as well as encourage the use of flanking and rear attack movements to annihilate the enemy.

1. Making Detailed Preparations for Combat:

After receiving orders, the company (platoon) should prepare a combat plan based on orders from higher headquarters and the assigned mission under the guidance of the Party Branch. The commander should assemble his unit, conduct an inspection to ensure that his unit is combat ready, assign specific missions to subordinate elements, and select approach routes and assault points.

A. Selecting the Assault Points:

The assault point of a company (platoon) is normally from high ground and in terrain that provides concealment. Fire support should be first set up and the attacking force should move close to the enemy before launching an in-depth attack against the enemy's flanks or rear.

B. Troop Disposition:

The company (platoon) should concentrate its main force and attack the enemy flank or rear by infiltration or a flanking movement. Some of the troops should launch a supporting attack against the enemy's front and one flank or both flanks so as to form an encirclement. If an encirclement can not be carried out, the company (platoon) should concentrate its main force against the enemy's weak points, then encircle the enemy immediately after the break-through. In accordance with instructions from higher headquarters, the company may also dispatch small, elite elements to infiltrate the enemy lines under cover of darkness or favorable terrain, to attack key targets or capture important terrain, and aid the main force in annihilating the enemy. The company should also have a reserve element and deploy it as near the front line as possible.

A weapons team should be assigned to each platoon according to need and be as near the front line as possible so as to fully utilize its independent fighting capability and ensure its timely support to the infantry. Mortars are usually concentrated for use by the company. They are used to destroy the enemy in dead areas, on reverse slopes, valleys and forests. Recoilless rifles are usually issued to the platoon and are used against enemy tanks and strong points. Most of the heavy machineguns are distributed to the platoon and are used against enemy ground forces and low-flying enemy aircraft. Light flamethrowers and rocket launchers are usually issued to platoons (squads). Artillery positions should be set up on terrain from which the artillery pieces can fire directly at the enemy. Machineguns should be positioned so as to facilitate flanking and overhead firing in support of the infantry.

C. Organization and Coordination:

The company commander (platoon leader) should formulate a careful coordination plan after he assigns the mission. The plan should cover:

- (1) Formation to the assembly area, fire support plans and actions to be taken at the assembly area.
- (2) Actions for each element during the assault.
- (3) The course of action for each element while attacking high ground, mountain passes or facing an enemy counterattack.
- (4) Ways and means for overcoming man-made and natural obstacles.
- (5) Methods of coordinating with friendly troops and for securing limiting points in the flanks.
- (6) Signal.

B. Approach the Enemy Swiftly and Silently and Assault Him Fiercely and Bravely.

- (1) Approach the enemy swiftly:

While approaching the enemy, the company (platoon) should take advantage of concealed terrain, darkness, and climatical conditions. The company (platoon) should move up to the attack position in a column formation as quickly as possible. The company commander should go with the advance element to familiarize himself with terrain conditions and direction of attack. During the movement, reconnaissance patrols and advance guards should be increased. If the enemy situation is unknown, advance guards should be sent out to secure important key points to prevent a surprise attack by the enemy. If a path needs to be cleared, it should be done silently by the advance guard.

B. Assault Fiercely:

The company (platoon) should be fully prepared for the assault once it has occupied the attack position. In preparing gun positions, they should be directed against enemy fire support bases. When the order to attack is sounded, the attack should be launched swiftly and fiercely under friendly artillery support so as to surprise the enemy, break through his positions and annihilate him. The fire power of mortars, recoilless rifles and heavy machineguns should be used to destroy and reduce the enemy's frontal and flank fire bases in support of the assault force. The weapons should be moved forward in accordance with the situation to support the infantry. The reserve element should also move up and be prepared to go into battle.

C. Seize the High Grounds and Annihilate the Enemy in Depth:

After breaking through the enemy's position, take advantage of the enemy's weak spots and flanks to execute encirclement and outflanking maneuvers to slice up the enemy forces, cut off his retreat routes, and annihilate him one at a time.

(1) Seize the high ground.

In seizing the high ground the company (platoon) should utilize mortars to neutralize enemy positions on top of, midway up, or on the reverse slope of mountains. Recoilless rifles and rocket launchers should be used to destroy the enemy fire bases or tanks. Machineguns should be used to hold down the enemy's frontal or flanking fire bases in support of the attacking infantry. The infantry elements should assign a small number of troops to attack the enemy from the front while diverting the main force to attack the enemy from the flank or the rear in order to seize the high grounds simultaneously. Refer to Chart 1. If the enemy holds the high ground and has constructed multicircular defense positions,

the company (platoon), under protective fire power and favorable terrain cover, should attack the enemy positions with heavy fire and explosives one at a time. As to enemy defensive positions which run parallel with the mountain ridge, the main force should launch a breakthrough attack against one of the two ends while other smaller forces launch a frontal attack and an attack against the other end, thus encircling and destroying the enemy. (Refer to Chart 2). When attacking enemy positions which run across the mountain ridge, the attacking force should concentrate its strength to penetrate the enemy position from either one or two different points and then move rapidly toward either end to complete an encirclement movement. (Refer to Chart 3). When attacking a valley, the protective fire cover should be tightly organized and the attacking force should concentrate on attacking and securing one side of the valley at a time. In some cases, the attack can be launched simultaneously against both sides of the valley to win a rapid victory.

After capturing the high ground and the valley, the enemy should be pursued so as to exploit the success. After preparations against enemy counterattack have been made, some of the troops should be kept in position to control key points. The rest of the force should withdraw from the mountaintop and take shelter on the reverse slope to avoid being fired upon by enemy artillery.

(2) Crush the enemy's counterassault.

When the enemy launches a counterassault from high grounds, the company (platoon) should take up position under favorable terrain coverage and return strong and concentrated fire against the enemy. During the confusion of the fire exchange, a portion of the troops should be sent to the rear of the enemy line to cut off his retreat and attack him from the rear while the main force is attacking him from the front. If the enemy launches a simultaneous counterattack along the mountain ridge and in the valley, the company (platoon) should promptly

take up defensive positions in strategic key positions. The main force should concentrate on annihilating the enemy who is attacking from the ridge while coordinating with friendly forces to destroy the enemy which is attacking from the valley. When enemy tanks or armored vehicles are passing through a narrow valley passage or over rugged terrain, they should be attacked and destroyed with antitank weapons and explosives.

(3) To annihilate an enemy that is retreating into a tunnel:

The company (platoon) should promptly carry out an encircling maneuver after breaking through the enemy position. Mortars and machine-guns should also be used to cut off the enemy's retreat so as to destroy the enemy in place. If the enemy attempts to retreat into a tunnel, he should be chased, overtaken, cutoff, and destroyed before he reaches the tunnel entrance. If the enemy succeeds in retreating into the tunnel, the commander should immediately ascertain the total number of tunnel entrances/exits, determine whether the tunnel chambers are interconnected, assign troops to seal off all exits, and then prepare a plan to systematically destroy the enemy. When engaging an enemy force which is occupying a tunnel, concentrated fire power should be directed toward the entrance of the tunnel to neutralize and destroy enemy gun positions in or near the tunnel entrance. After doing this, a team should advance toward the entrance under cover of a smoke screen and fire support and attack the tunnel entrance with explosives. After the explosion, the commanding squad will enter the tunnel immediately and move forward along one side or both sides of the tunnel, covering each other by turn, making a thorough search section-by-section to destroy the enemy with close fire, hand grenades and bayonet assault. In short and shallow tunnels, flame-throwers or smoke can also be used to annihilate the enemy. If a tunnel is hard to seize temporarily, a small number of troops may be used in accordance with high echelon instructions to blockade it and to keep it under surveillance, or to blow up its entrance and exit and ventilation openings so as to suffocate the enemy. When annihilating the enemy in a tunnel,

part of the troops should be used to control the commanding ground and the key points in the vicinity so as to strengthen our position outside the tunnel.

Chart 1: Sample 1 of Inf. Company Mountain Offensive Operations

Chart 2: Sample 2 of Inf. Company Mountain Offensive Operations

Chart 3: Sample 3 of Inf. Company Mountain Offensive Operations

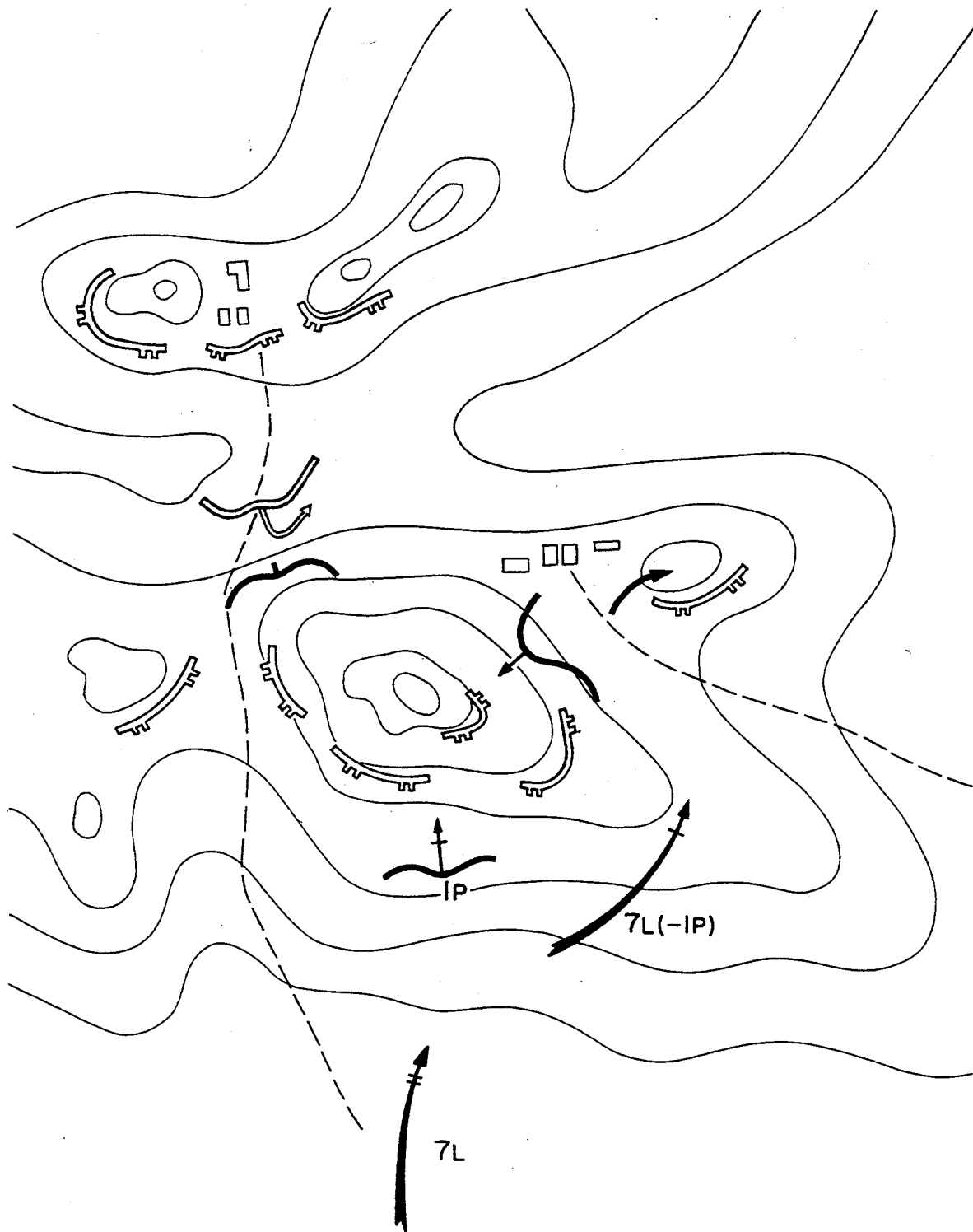


Chart 1 Sample 1 of Infantry Company Mountain Offensive Operations

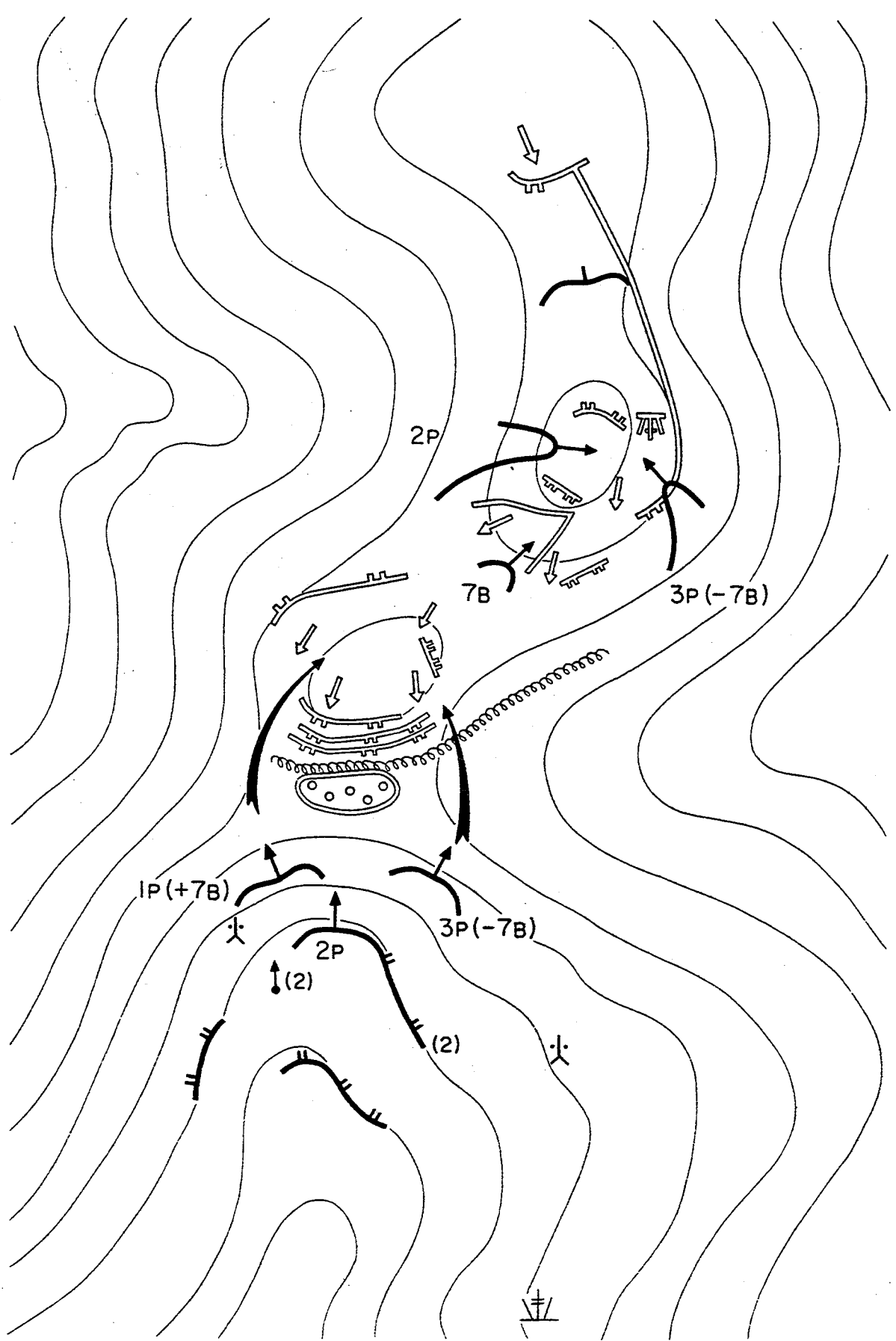


Chart 2 Sample 2 of Infantry Company Mountain Offensive Operations

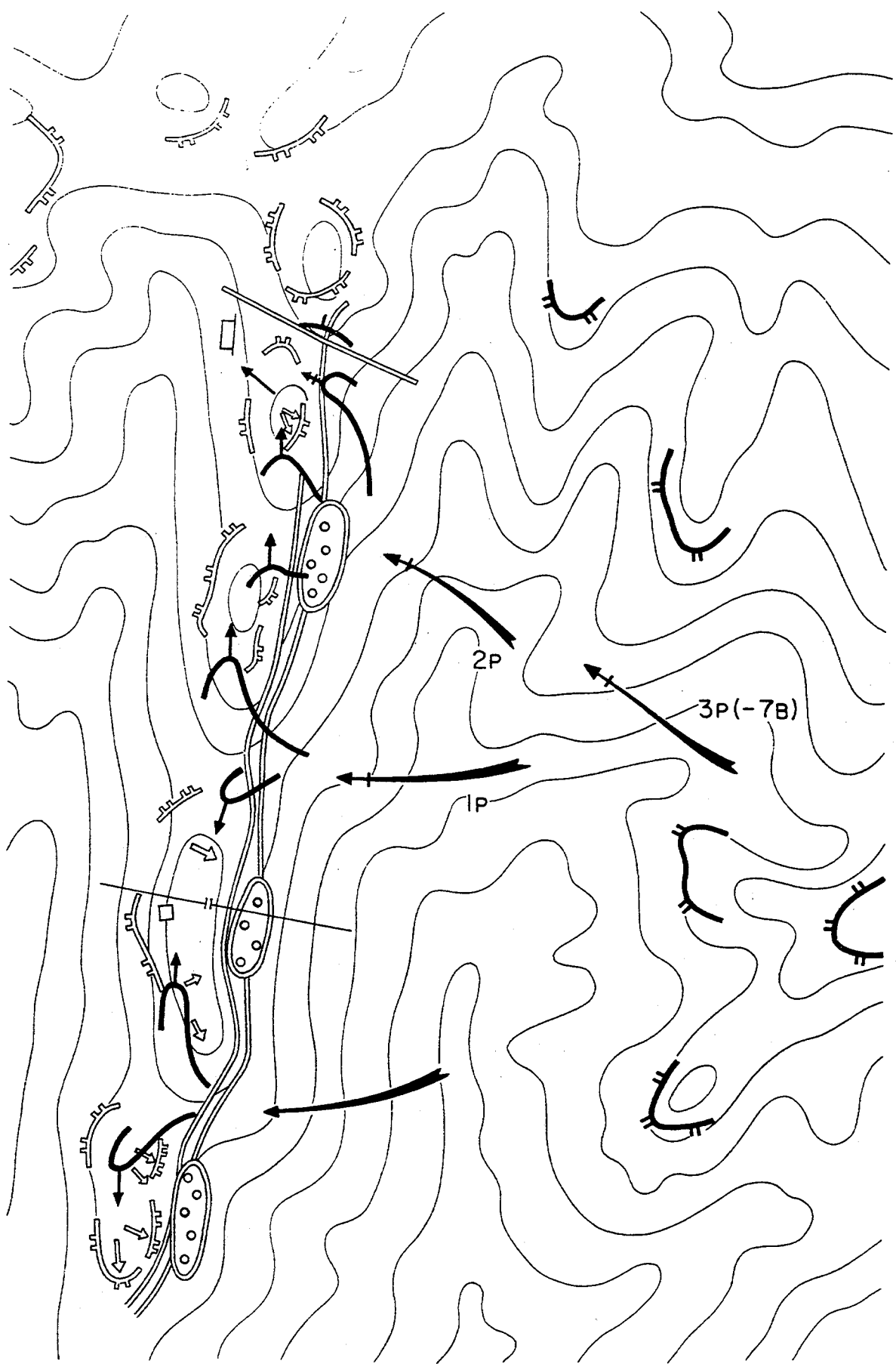


Chart 3 Sample 3 of Infantry Company Mountain Offensive Operations

CHARACTERISTICS OF RIVER OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS

Rivers are natural barriers. The terrain conditions on both sides of a river, conditions of its bottom, its depth, and current velocity all have direct influence on the movement, command, coordination, and communication of the elements in attack. During the process of river attack, the company (platoon), with the spirit of determination, boldness and independent combat, capture, expand and consolidate the landing point with a surprise attack or a forced crossing so as to provide cover for and facilitate the river crossing by the rear echelons.

In a river-attack operation, a company (platoon) may be assigned as an advance detachment or as a commando or reserve element. The main mission of an advance detachment or a commando element is to capture and consolidate the landing point and to provide cover for the main force in crossing the river. The main mission of a reserve element is to consolidate and develop the landing point secured by the commandos and to protect the follow-up echelons while they cross the river.

1. River Crossing Preparations:

Based on directives from higher headquarters and the leadership of the Party Branch, the company (platoon) should accomplish the following matters in preparation for river crossing:

A. On-the-Spot Reconnaissance and Selection of River-crossing Point:

The company commander (platoon leader) should familiarize himself with the following conditions by conducting on-the-spot reconnaissance:

(1) Width, depth, current velocity, bottom conditions, branches, eddies, fording areas and ferry points of the river and civilian boats available on it.

(2) Disposition and fire power of enemy units and tanks, locations and types of barriers set up in the water and along its banks, location of enemy reserve elements and direction of counterassault, and nature and extent of blockades set up by enemy artillery and air force elements.

(3) Terrain conditions on the enemy side of the river, location of curves in the river, points for secret and concealed approach and dead angles along the river banks, favorable areas for landing and consolidating forces and concealing departure positions, and terrain and route conditions from equipment assembly area to crossing positions.

The company (platoon) commander should select a river crossing point within the river-crossing area designated by higher headquarters. The river crossing point should be selected on a salient point which curves to our side and which can also dominate and control the bank on the enemy side. In addition, the crossing point should be at a place where the river is narrow and the current is slow and where it is also convenient for dispersal and disposition of equipment, for secretly approaching the ferry area, for our boats to draw alongside the bank under concealment, and for fording.

B. Preparation of River-crossing Equipment:

The company (platoon) should, if at all possible, use civilian boats and equipment available on hand for river-crossings. If standard river-crossing equipment is available, it should be constructed and used under the guidance of engineer units. The company (platoon) should also help the engineer units to construct access roads and simple piers.

The river-crossing equipment should be deployed in the area designated by higher headquarters in proper concealment and dispersion, and at the same time camouflage and security for the equipment should be stressed.

C. Combat Organization

Combat organization and proper allocation of river-crossing equipment are implemented according to the missions of various elements, and conditions of river-crossing equipment and situation of the river. A company (platoon) should try its best to cross a river by one echelon, or if impossible, in two echelons. Boats should be allocated according to the mission and organization of the elements. If a unit riding in the same boat is composed of varying elements, a cadre should be appointed to exercise overall command in the boat. The weapons elements should cross the river separately on board the boat or other river crossing equipment of each platoon (squad) so as to ensure the independent combat ability of each boat. At the same time a portion of the weapons should be kept ready for firing against low flying enemy aircraft. The company should organize life-saving teams for river-crossing, and in each boat persons should be appointed for life-saving mission. The company (platoon) commanders should separately be on board the boats or river-crossing equipment of platoons (squads) for river crossing so as to exercise timely command without interruption.

D. Mission assignment and Arrangement of Coordination:

When the company (platoon) commander assigns missions to its subordinate elements and arranges coordination, the following items should also be clearly prescribed:

- (1) Missions of the company (platoon), crossing point, landing point, attack targets, and areas to be seized and consolidated.

(2) River-crossing equipment for various platoons and squads, routes and formations for approaching the ferry area, location and time for the crossing, landing point, attack target and areas to be consolidated.

(3) The river-crossing boats or equipment for various weapons elements and their fire supporting methods while crossing the river, attack targets, seizing and consolidating landing points.

(4) Locations of the enemy barriers along river banks and in the water and the methods for destroying and passing through these barriers.

(5) Fire supporting methods from higher echelon artillery and air force units and areas for applications of smokescreen.

(6) Countermeasures, communication and signals while confronting various kinds of situations in crossing the river.

(7) Location of the commander upon completion of river-crossing preparations.

E. Preparatory Training Before Actual Operations:

The company (platoon) commander should conduct preparatory training before actual river crossing operations according to the mission received. Soldiers who are skilled swimmers and platoon and squad cadres should be organized and trained in the use of various river-crossing equipment and familiarize themselves with river-crossing skills and life-saving activities. The elements should be trained in swimming, embarking and disembarking. If necessary, terrain similar to that in the target area may be selected and the enemy situation simulated for practice.

2. Command and Movement in River Crossing:

A. Surprise Attack:

To launch a surprise attack, preparations for a forced crossing must be completed. The company (platoon) assigned as the advance detachment should approach the crossing area quickly and stealthily under cover of darkness, and attack the enemy by surprise, seize the crossing point and bridge, and take control of all boats. The company should then seek the best opportunity to cross the river and occupy and consolidate key positions on the enemy side of the river. Sneak crossing of a river can also be conducted secretly under cover of darkness and when visibility is poor. In a sneak crossing, the elements should keep complete silence, strictly control lights, and maintain their combat formation. Any emergency situation which arises should be handled calmly. After reaching the enemy side of the river, a sudden and fierce assault should be launched to destroy the enemy and seize landing points. Should the sneak crossing be discovered by the enemy, a forced crossing should be adopted immediately.

B. Forced Crossing:

The company (platoon) should arrive at the ferry or crossing ground according to the time and routes assigned by higher headquarters, and swim across by using equipment or by riding on amphibious tanks (trucks). If a company crosses a river alone, observation personnel should be assigned and at the same time a portion of the weapons should occupy firing positions so as to provide cover near the ferry point. Life-saving teams should be ready to save personnel falling into the water. The company (platoon) commander should insure that his men cross the river quickly. At the same time, he should keep higher headquarters informed of the situation at all times and keep constant watch for signals from them.

In river-crossing operations, the company (platoon) commander should continuously observe the enemy situation and timely command the elements to cross the river with determination and calmness. Fire power should be immediately organized to neutralize or destroy enemy fire points that obstruct our river crossing operations. When encountering interdiction fire from enemy artillery or air force units, rush out of the enemy's zone of fire with great speed, and keep swimming rapidly toward the enemy's side of the river. Antiaircraft weapons should fire against low flying enemy aircraft with fierce fire. If enemy barriers are confronted in the water, they should be cleared immediately by specially assigned personnel. If our river crossing equipment is damaged by the enemy, repair and life-saving actions should be immediately taken. Personnel falling into the water should continue to cross the river by swimming or using available equipment and take active participation in battle.

C. Capture and Consolidate the Landing Point:

To capture the landing point requires most nerve-shaking and fierce fighting. The company (platoon) must conduct a quick landing, smash the enemy counterattack, and consolidate and develop the landing point with determination and bravery.

Approaching the enemy bank, the company (platoon) commander should organize fire power to suppress or destroy enemy fire points and direct his men to land quickly. After landing a fierce assault must be launched immediately to destroy the enemy with concentrated fire, demolitions and surprise. Those elements failing to land at the prearranged spot should land in an area nearby and take active participation in battle initiatives. At the same time, the elements should keep contact with higher headquarters and friendly troops and approach the designated target while fighting.

After penetrating into enemy area, the company (platoon) should immediately suppress enemy fire points by organizing fire power, direct its men to conduct a fearless breakthrough of enemy defense gaps and flanks and destroy the enemy. Following the victory, the depth and flanks of the landing point must be expanded. The company should give the enemy no time to rest or reorganize for resistance. Then the company can quickly occupy favorable ground, exploit its victory, and consolidate and expand the landing point.

After capturing the landing point, the company (platoon) commander should immediately report the situation to higher headquarters. At the same time, he should also regroup his troops, repair defensive works, construct barriers and use favorable terrain features to prevent a counter-assault by enemy infantry troops and tanks, and facilitate and provide cover for the main force and other units in the rear to cross the river and participate in the battle.

CHARACTERISTICS OF ATTACK AGAINST CITIES

Cities, with their high buildings, crisscrossing streets and roads, and underground facilities, provide good opportunities for approaching under concealment and cut down the enemy, and are also advantageous to the conduct of close combat. However, cities are not conducive to making observations, conducting firing, exercising command, carrying out communications and coordination, and maintaining proper combat formations. Therefore, in attacking cities, the company (platoon) should carry out the principle of concentrating strength to destroy the enemy forces one by one, make well-organized preparations and full use of small groups, develop the spirit of independent combat and initiative in coordination, utilize buildings, underground tunnels and sewers to launch an encirclement of the enemy forces, and annihilate the enemy in close combat in coordination with the militia and guerrilla forces.

1. To Organize Combat Carefully and Properly:

After receiving its mission, the company (platoon), in accordance with higher-echelon instructions and under the leadership of the party branch, should conduct a careful on-the-spot survey and make careful preparations for combat.

A. On-the-spot Survey and Selection of the Breakingthrough point:

The company commander (platoon leader) should use every means possible to check the deployment of enemy forces; location of overt and covert fire points; installation of obstacles; and the conditions of streets/roads to be attacked, underground facilities and fortified buildings; concealed approach area; and the terrain features of the assault departure position.

The breakthrough point should be selected at a place where the enemy strength, fire power and defensive works are weak and where it will be convenient for our breakthrough, consolidation of the gap and development into the enemy depth.

B. Troop Disposition:

The company (platoon) should concentrate its strength to penetrate a key sector and conduct combat organization in accordance with both the need for fire power and explosives in the assault and the capability to fight independently. In accordance with the situation, the company may organize an assault, an engineer/security, a weapons, and a reserve element. The platoon may be assigned as the assault or reserve element.

The assault element is composed of infantry troops equipped with machineguns, rocket launchers and light flamethrowers. Under protective fire, the element should attack boldly, break through the enemy defensive line, fortify and enlarge the breakthrough point, and insure the participation in combat of the follow-up echelons.

The engineer team is composed of its attached engineers or soldiers who have received specialized training. They are equipped with whatever materials and equipment they need and are responsible for clearing away obstacles and demolishing fortified enemy positions.

The weapons element is composed of the machinegun, recoilless rifle and mortar elements. Its mission is to destroy the enemy fire point and concealed field works, to neutralize the enemy weapons, to kill the enemy reserves and to support the various elements in combat.

The reserve is composed of the infantry element. Its main mission is to exploit the success, cope with unusual situations, and take over the mission of the assault element, if necessary.

C. Arrangement of Coordination:

After assignment of its mission, the company (platoon) should make careful and thorough preparations for combat and coordination. Coordination should cover:

(1) The targets to be neutralized and destroyed by higher echelon artillery and air force elements and actions to be taken by the fire power team, engineer/security team, assault element and reserve element.

(2) The combat actions of each element during the assault.

(3) The actions of each element while fortifying and enlarging the breakthrough point and smashing the enemy counterassault.

(4) The actions of each element while attacking and seizing heavily defended buildings in the enemy's depth.

(5) The signals.

2. To Capture, Consolidate and Widen the Breach.

The company (platoon) should concentrate its strength and fire power on the breach so as to insure the entry of the following elements into combat.

A. Opening of the breach.

In fire preparation, the company (platoon) commander should personally observe the effect of fire preparations and changes in the enemy situation and make a report to the higher level. The fire power team should

neutralize and destroy the remaining and newly discovered enemy fire points. Under the cover of fire power or smoke screen the engineer/security team opens up avenues through enemy obstacles with explosives or by erecting bridges (for trenches) with ladders. The assault element should speedily complete assault preparation.

As soon as the assault signal or order is given by higher headquarters, the assault element should launch a fierce assault and get through the passage rapidly; then, it should force a breakthrough into enemy position and use close fire, hand grenades, explosive charges, bangalore torpedoes, flamethrowers and bayonets to destroy the enemy. The assault element should also attack and seize the street barricades and major buildings in the vicinity of the breach. The engineer/security team should come up immediately behind the assault element and stand by to remove/clear away enemy obstacles, to demolish the enemy fire points, and to protect the movement of the assault element. After the breach has been made by the assault element, the reserve element should enter the breach rapidly and stand ready to fight. The weapons team should support the assault element with fire power and constantly support the combat of other elements by shifting its position in accordance with instructions.

When the assault is supported by tanks, the tanks should utilize their fire power to destroy the enemy fire points at and on both sides of the breach. The tanks and armored vehicles should provide support to the infantry assault and the infantry must launch a fierce assault under their support. The infantry must continuously assault and advance forward when the tanks are obstructed by the enemy. Some of the troops and firearms should be assigned to assisting the tanks in overcoming and destroying the obstacles to their advance.

B. To Consolidate and Widen the Breach and to Smash the Enemy Counterassault:

After the breakthrough, the assault element should rapidly move in depth and toward the enemy flanks so as to widen the breach. The weapons team must promptly take up firing positions in favorable terrain to destroy the enemy fire points on both sides of the breach and in depth, and to support the combat of various elements. The engineer/security team, under cover of protective fire, must overcome the enemy's obstacles and provide a path for the assault element and tanks to develop their attack. The assault element should attack the enemy's flanks or depth resolutely and fiercely to widen the breach with the support of the weapons team and engineer/security team. The reserve element should engage in combat on the flank of the assault team and from other favorable directions to enhance the assaulting strength or launch an outflanking attack in concert with the assault element so as to encircle and annihilate the enemy.

When the enemy launches a counterassault against us, the company (platoon) commander should promptly report it to higher headquarters. At the same time he should direct the elements to seize favorable terrain and buildings, organize fire power, use antitank weapons and antitank element to destroy enemy tanks, and utilize fierce fire power to deal a crushing blow to the enemy's infantry. The company (platoon) should then immediately launch an assault to the enemy's rear flank so as to annihilate the enemy and exploit the success in depth.

C. To Cut and Encircle the Enemy Forces and Crush Them One by One:

In city combat, the commander must duly check the situation, enhance signal communications, exercise steady command, launch an outflanking encirclement, break through and cut up the enemy forces, and establish close links with local armed forces to destroy the enemy one by one.

(1) Annihilate the enemy in the streets.

When fighting in the streets, the company should move along one side or both sides of the street under cover of fire. It may move through courtyards to wage an outflanking encirclement, or follow underground facilities to the enemy's flank rear to throw the enemy into confusion and to annihilate him. While advancing, the company should strengthen its reconnaissance, shift the position of its various weapons and give timely support to other elements. If it is necessary to cross the streets, extend the distance and move across by rushes. If the enemy puts up stubborn resistance in a building, the company should organize fire power to interdict doors, windows and embrasures, demolish a corner or a wall to open a way into the building and, taking advantage of the explosion and smoke, storm the building and annihilate the enemy with close fire, hand grenades and bayonets.

(2) Destroy the enemy bunkers in the streets.

When encountering an enemy bunker or a group of bunkers at an intersection or square, first ascertain the situation, then seize the structures on one side or both sides of the bunkers. Set up your machineguns in these structures to interdict the embrasures of these bunkers. Tanks, recoilless rifles, rocket launchers and flamethrowers will be placed at vantage points to destroy the bunker which offers the most threat to us and to support the infantry assault. The engineer/security team should utilize favorable terrain features and buildings to rapidly approach and demolish the bunkers, while the assault element takes advantage of the effect of neutralization fire and explosion to fiercely and bravely attack and annihilate the enemy in the bunkers. Or as directed by the higher level, the company (platoon) may assign a small number of troops to mop up or to keep the enemy still in the bunkers under strict surveillance while the main force continues its advance.

(3) To encircle and annihilate the enemy in a fortified structure:

In attacking a fortified structure, the enemy in its surroundings should be exterminated first, then we should seize the nearby structures and encircle the enemy; finally concentrate our strength and fire power against a point which facilitates our concealment and approaching, disposition of various firearms, and assault against the fortified structure. When assaulting the rifles and machine guns should be used to interdict the doors, windows and embrasures of the structure. Tanks, recoilless rifles, rocket launchers, light flamethrowers, and explosives must be used to destroy the enemy fire point at middle and lower layers. The mortars should be used to neutralize the enemy fire point at the upper layer and in the rear area of the shelter. The assault element, under the cover of fire power, should utilize the effects of fire and explosives to break into the structure resolutely and bravely, then rapidly occupy both sides of the stairway, the corners of corridors, entrance and exit for the purpose of providing mutual support from the bottom to the top of the stairs, seizing each floor and fortifying it one by one. As to the basement, a few troops should be dispatched first to keep the enemy under surveillance so as to prevent the enemy's sudden attack. If the stairways are closely blockaded by the enemy, the assault element may launch an assault by breaking holes in the ceilings and walls. Otherwise long ladders and ropes can be used to scale the building for the purpose of launching an attack from the bottom and top of the building so as to annihilate the enemy.

(4) To wipe out the remnants of enemy forces in the basement (underground passage):

While mopping up the enemy forces in the basement (or underground passage), the company should keep close ties with the militia and immediately check the locations of the building's entrance and exit, the enemy strength, fire power and the condition of basement (underground passage). Recoilless

rifles, rocket launchers and explosives can be used to destroy the fire point in the vicinity of the entrance and exit of the basement (underground passage). The combat teams should support each other to enter the basement (underground passage) and to exterminate the enemy in conjunction with the political offensive. Also, flame throwing, smoking, water-drowning and explosive methods may be utilized to wipe out the enemy, if necessary.

CHARACTERISTICS OF INFANTRY COMPANY (PLATOON) OFFENSIVE
OPERATIONS IN RICE FIELDS

During irrigation season, rice fields are muddy and full of water, making it difficult to effect coordination and move troops. But, for the same reason, it is also more difficult for the enemy to construct strong defensive works and his defensive position is often broken up by rivers and brooks, thereby creating gaps in or exposing one flank of his defensive position and making it easier for us to encircle and destroy him.

1. Make Thorough Offensive Preparations:

When launching an offensive against the enemy, the company (platoon) should make careful combat plans and swiftly complete its offensive preparations in accordance with directives from higher headquarters and under the leadership of the Party Branch.

A. On-the-spot Inspection and Selection of Attack Point:

In preparing for offensive action in a paddy area, get as close as possible to the enemy and study the situation over the widest possible area. Emphasis in assessing the situation should be on determining the location of the enemy's forward positions, disposition of enemy forces, allocation of fire power, location and nature of obstacles set up in rivers and brooks in front of the enemy's forward positions, nature of river and stream beds and their banks, water depth and flow speed, and the depth of the mud in the rice fields within the offensive area.

In selecting an attacking point, select a place with vertically and diagonally running rivers or roads but not a place with horizontally running rivers and ditches. However, sometimes an area with crisscrossing rivers and ditches may be selected to achieve the effect of a surprise attack.

B. Disposition of Strength:

Disposition of Strength: In a main attack, major strength and fire power should be concentrated on the attack point while part of the strength is used to make secondary attacks on the enemy's front or on one or both flanks so as to encircle the enemy. If an encircling disposition cannot be formed before attacking, the main force should be concentrated to penetrate one point. Then encirclement and outflanking will follow. In order to overcome the various kinds of obstacles which may be encountered, an engineer element composed of engineers and infantry troops who have received specialized training will be organized. The combat formation should be formed as close to the front as possible so as to save time in negotiating obstacles such as rivers and ditches when all the elements are under enemy fire, and to facilitate the launching of a surprise attack against the enemy.

Employment of weapons: Rocket launchers, light flamethrowers and most of the machineguns should be assigned to the infantry platoons (squads). Recoilless rifles are generally assigned to the infantry platoons to strengthen their capability to fight independently and to combat tanks. Mortars are generally put under unified control. If necessary, 60 mm mortars may be attached to any platoon participating in the main attack. Artillery is generally placed along roads or rivers or at the edge of a village to facilitate maneuvering and furnishing fire support.

C. To Organize Coordination:

The company commander (platoon leader) should carefully plan coordination when he issues orders or assigns missions to his subordinates. Coordination should cover:

(1) Time for the various elements to occupy their attack positions and methods to maintain coordination.

(2) Actions for the various elements to take in their attack, and in successively overcoming rivers and ditches, etc.

(3) Actions for the various elements to take when encircling and annihilating the enemy's points of resistance.

(4) Actions for the various elements to take when smashing the enemy counterassault.

(5) Signals (mmarkings).

D. Precautionary measures

(1) To strengthen reconnaissance and guard. If necessary, a reconnaissance team will be dispatched to penetrate secretly under the cover of dark or fog into the enemy's rear or flanks to conduct reconnaissance.

(2) To designate weapons for shooting down low-flying enemy aircraft.

(3) To prepare materials and equipment for overcoming mud and for river crossing, and to improve the waterproof and moisture proof qualities of these materials and equipment.

2. To Secretly Approach the Enemy and Fight Fiercely:

A. To Secretly Occupy the Attack Position:

The company (platoon) usually takes advantage of darkness and bad weather to secretly and swiftly occupy its attack position. Sometimes, under the protective cover of air force and artillery fire, the company (platoon) may advance by rushes in an extended formation along longitudinally running irrigation ditches, river banks, and roads to occupy its attack position secretly and swiftly. After occupying the position, the company should adequately camouflage it to prevent enemy attack. Meanwhile, a further briefing will be given to the various elements on their missions so that assault preparations can be made well in advance. According to plan, the engineer element should open passages through the obstacles both in the water and on land in front of the enemy's defensive positions.

B. To Attack Fiercely:

If the front of the enemy's defensive position is on the other side of a river or brook, a forced crossing of the river or brook should be made first under protective fire. Then by utilizing longitudinally running irrigation ditches, roads or river banks, etc., attack fiercely and move forward to the designated objective. If the front of the enemy's defensive position is on our side of the river, attack this front and wipe out the defending enemy troops first and then quickly cross the river and proceed to the designated area.

In case supporting tanks and amphibious tanks are available, the company (platoon) should point out to them the target and the route of advance. Then, with the tanks leading the way and providing fire support, attack fiercely and wipe out the enemy.

3. Decentralize the Enemy and Destroy Them One by One.

After penetrating the enemy's position, the company (platoon) should, with fire support, quickly seize and occupy key points such as bridges, fords, high grounds, etc., and then cross the river with river-crossing

material and equipment, or cross the river by swimming or fording. After crossing the river or brook, the company should quickly advance and boldly carry out an encirclement and outflanking maneuver, effect a breakthrough, cut off the enemy's retreat route and defeat them one by one.

A. To Encircle and Wipe Out an Enemy Key Point Surrounded by Water.

When confronting an enemy key point surrounded by water, the company (platoon) commander must quickly find out the enemy situation, fire points and location and number of tanks and armored vehicles. Part of our forces should be used to attack and pin down the enemy on the front, while our main force under the protective cover of artillery, mortar and machinegun fire, attacks the enemy on their flanks and rear along rivers or roads, or makes several attacks in different directions with emphasis on key points to strongly penetrate the enemy resistance points and annihilate the enemy.

B. To Smash the Enemy's Counterattack:

When the enemy's amphibious tanks and amphibious vehicles are advancing along rivers and roads, and meanwhile carrying out a counter-attack, the company commander (platoon leader) should have his men occupy favorable positions along the river banks, in the villages and on high ground, etc. to concentrate fire power to sever the enemy forces' connections between land and water, and to wipe out with our main forces the enemy elements constituting the biggest threat to us.

When the enemy's tanks and amphibious vehicles are advancing along the river and its infantry forces are making counterattacks along the road, the first thing we must do is to sever their contact between water and land, and to destroy the amphibious tanks and armored vehicles with antitank weapons. Meanwhile, fire power should be directed to wiping out the infantry troops and to throwing their formations into disorder. By exploiting the enemy's confusion, attack fiercely on its flanks with

part of our forces, and then annihilate them all in coordination with our main forces.

Concentrate fire power to annihilate in the water the enemy forces which are conducting a waterborne counterattack from the river.

MEETING ENGAGEMENT

A meeting engagement is a battle that occurs when two opposite forces encounter each other during movement. There are two kinds of meeting engagements -- the anticipated and the unanticipated military engagements. The characteristics of a meeting engagement are: the suddenness of battle without knowing the enemy situation, a dramatic and rapid change of situation, unfamiliarity with terrain features, limited time for combat deployment, and exposed flanks on both sides. But in meeting engagements it is convenient to employ large-scale mobile tactics. For this reason, when encountering the enemy, the company (platoon) should try its best to avoid being placed in a passive position, so it can gain the initiative and force the enemy into a passive position. Then breakthrough and cut up tactics are used together with surprise and fierce fire power and overwhelming assault to quickly destroy the enemy.

1. Preparations for Meeting Engagements.

In anticipated meeting engagements, preparations for engaging the enemy should be completed before and during the march; in an unanticipated meeting engagement, the preparations should be made while fighting.

A. To Determine the Plans of Action:

If the situation permits, after receiving its mission from higher headquarters, the company should hold a party branch conference to study and discuss the order from higher headquarters and analyze the enemy's intentions, movements and possible areas where enemy troops may be encountered. The route of march and terrain conditions should also be studied at this time. Then the marching formation can be determined and a plan for the meeting engagement can be prepared according to the

possible sequence of going into combat. To deal with an unanticipated meeting engagement, the commander can make an on-the-spot decision and report to the Party Branch later.

B. To assign missions:

To assign missions to various organic and attached elements, the company (platoon) commander should emphasize:

- (1) Enemy position, intention and possible areas of encounter.
- (2) Plan of higher headquarters.
- (3) Activities and conditions of our reconnaissance element and local civilian armed groups.
- (4) Company (platoon)'s missions, order of march, and organization and missions of advance and reconnaissance elements.
- (5) Missions and coordination methods of various elements while engaging enemy troops.
- (6) Position of commander.
- (7) Signals and markings.

After mission assignment, cadres and soldiers must be ideologically prepared in accordance with the characteristics of the meeting engagement. The company (platoon) commander should also check to insure that the various elements understand their mission and that all weapons, ammunition, materials and equipment are ready for use. The situation should then be reported to higher headquarters.

C. Command of March:

The company (platoon) should march according to the combat organization and prearranged sequence of commitment into combat. Antitank weapons and machinegun elements ordinarily march in front of the main force. During the march, the elements should keep alert and emphasize reconnaissance and security. Reconnaissance or advance squads should be assigned at the front and flanks of the main force. The company (platoon) commander should march in front of the main force, personally direct the actions of the advance squad, and insure that every element is ready to fight at any moment.

The company (platoon) commander should carefully survey the situation and take the initiative to contact local militia elements. Any suspicious situation or action should be closely investigated, analyzed and appraised. When nearing areas where enemy troops may be encountered, the company commander, in addition to closing up the march formation, should call his platoon (squad) leaders together so as to facilitate the relaying of orders to his subordinate elements.

D. Action When Encountering Enemy Troops:

Upon encountering the enemy force, the company (platoon) should give immediate assistance to the advance squad in destroying the enemy reconnaissance team (vehicle). At the same time, the company commander should quickly apprise himself of the situation, report it to higher headquarters and make an immediate decision on the action to be taken. He should direct his men to take the initiative in opening fire against the enemy, capturing favorable terrain features, deploying troops and launching an assault. All these actions should be taken before the enemy has time to react. The company should try its best to destroy the enemy troops while they are in movement. Our own flank must be protected at the same time.

After capturing key positions, the company (platoon) commander should take the initiative and order the weapons platoon to open surprise fire before the deployment of enemy troops. Antitank weapons, hand-thrown mines, explosive packages, and bangalore torpedoes should be used to destroy enemy tanks and armored vehicles, while hand grenades, submachine guns and bayonets can be used to destroy enemy infantrymen. When enemy troops retreat, fierce pursuit action should be taken to destroy them. (See Chart 1). If key positions can be captured without the enemy's awareness, an ambush attack should be employed to destroy the enemy's advance element and compel the enemy's main strength into an unfavorable situation, whereby they can be destroyed in coordination with the main strength.

If our troops are deployed at the same time with those of the enemy, the company (platoon) must capture favorable terrain features with determination and fearless action. It is very significant to victory to capture key positions before the enemy does. The commander should immediately direct the weapons element to occupy firing positions and to open fire before the enemy does so as to destroy enemy tanks, armored vehicles and infantry troops and hamper the deployment and mobility of enemy forces. If both our troops and those of the enemy arrive at a key position simultaneously, we should launch an immediate attack against the enemy and destroy him with close fire, hand grenades, bayonets, and antitank weapons. After capturing a key position, immediately exploit the victory by organizing fire power, constructing defensive works and realigning troop disposition. Also, be prepared for successive assaults by the enemy and give the main strength protective cover for deployment and participation in battle. (See Chart 2).

If enemy troops occupy a key position before we do, the commander should quickly survey the situation and order mortars to take up positions for concentrated fire to suppress enemy fire power. He should also use antitank weapons to destroy enemy tanks and armored vehicles. At the same time, by taking advantage of the enemy's unreadiness for combat, the

platoons (squads) should launch a fierce assault against enemy combat formation gaps and flanks under protective fire so as to destroy the enemy and capture key points. If the enemy launches an assault against our troops, the commander should calmly direct his men to occupy nearby favorable terrain features, destroy enemy tanks and armored vehicles with antitank weapons and antitank teams, separate the enemy infantry from their tanks with mortar and submachine gun fire, and kill enemy infantry troops massively, defeat enemy assault and encirclement, defend the favorable terrain features already occupied with determination and then shield the main force to deploy and go into combat. (See Chart 3).

When encountering enemy troops marching from a lateral direction, the company (platoon) commander should immediately direct his elements to launch a fierce assault with strong fire power so as to disorganize and sever the enemy combat formation, destroy the immediate enemy, capture key positions and shield the main force so it can participate in combat. (See Chart 4).

Samples of Infantry Company (Platoon) Preparing for Meeting Engagements

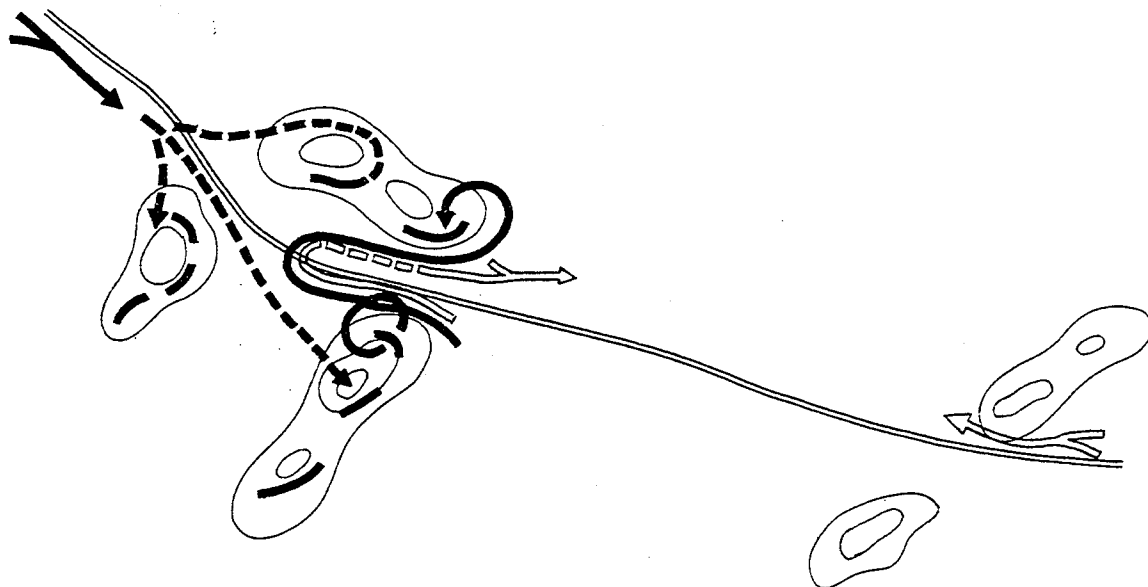


Chart 1

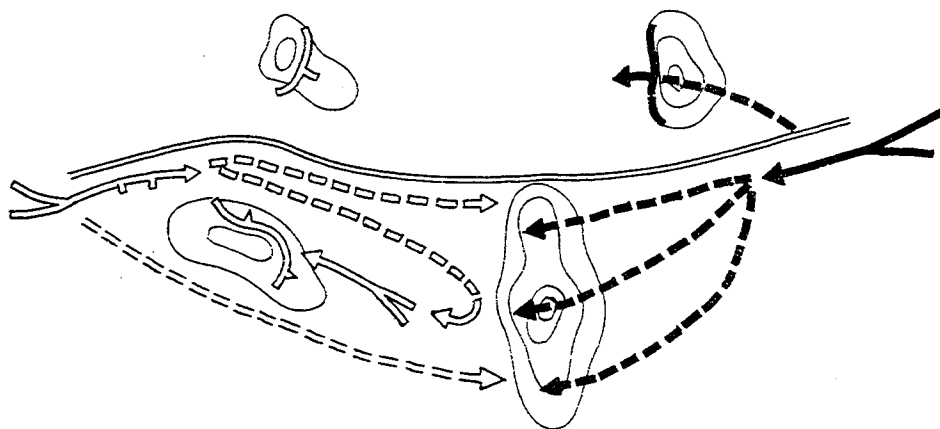


Chart 2

Chart 3

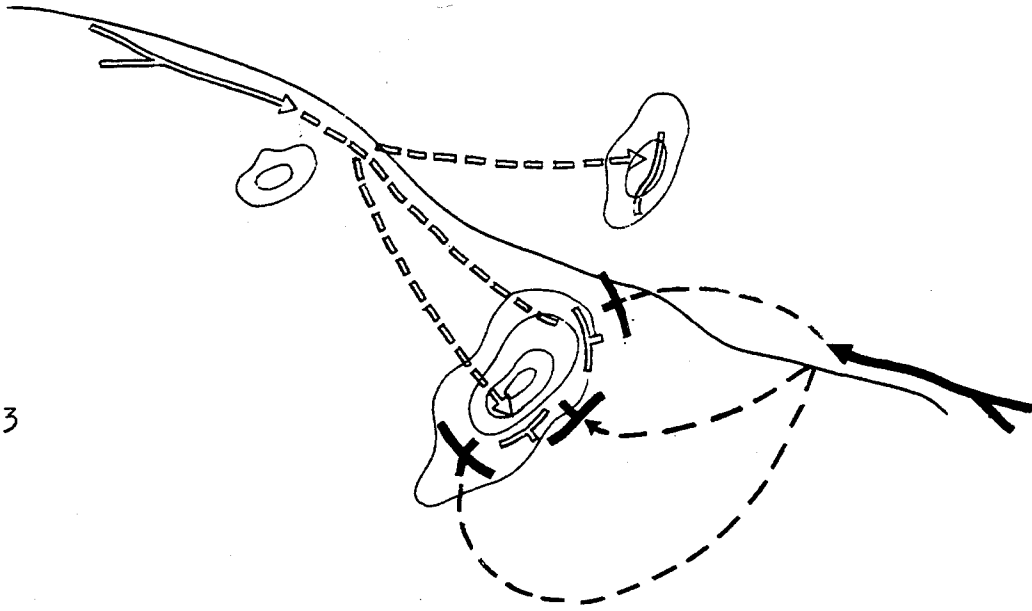
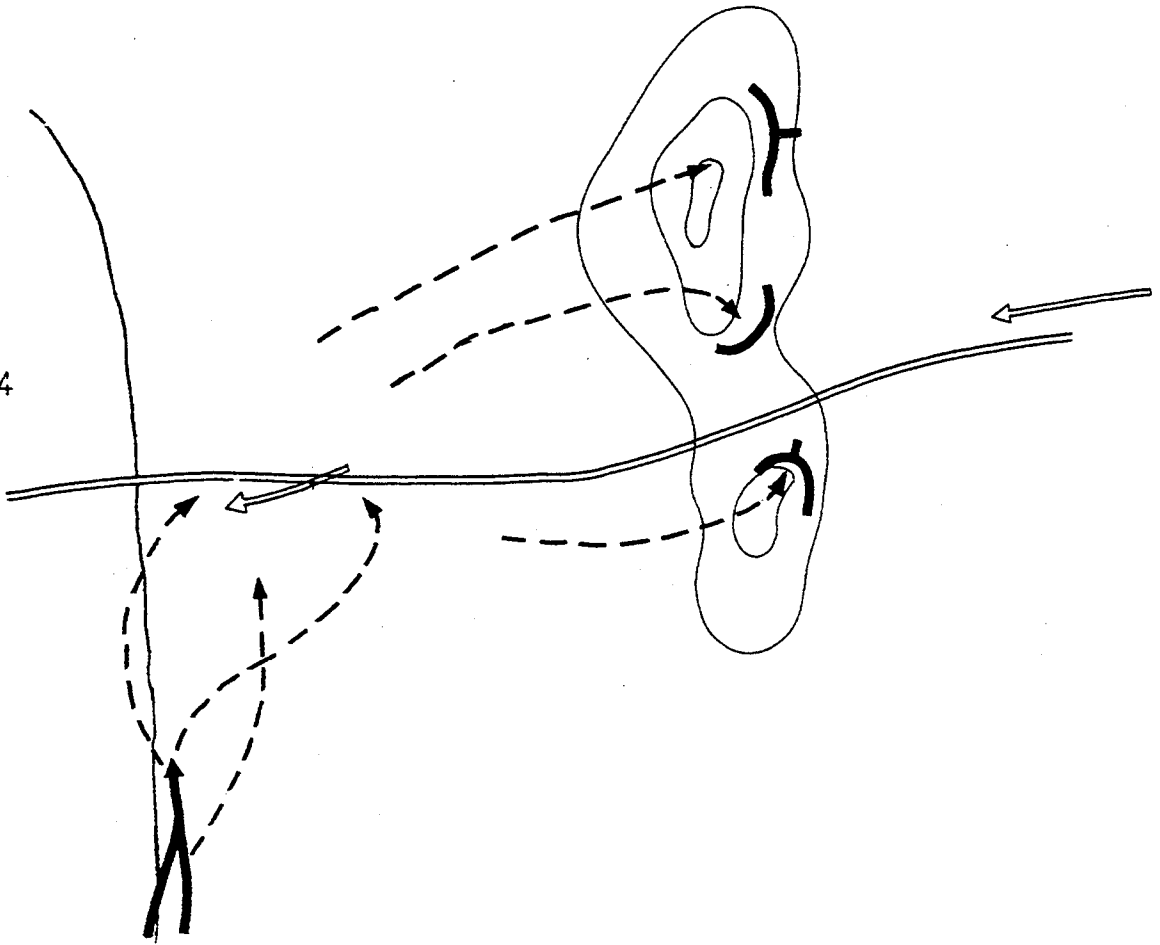


Chart 4



COMPANY (PLATOON) AMBUSH OPERATION

To launch a surprise attack against enemy troops moving in a certain area in which our own troops have been deployed and concealed in advance is called an ambush operation. There are two kinds of ambushes -- to ambush the enemy by waiting in a selected position and to ambush the enemy by deception and forcing it to move to a preselected position. In an ambush operation, the company's (platoon's) main strength must be concealed beside the road along which enemy troops will inevitably pass. When the enemy passes, the company (platoon) suddenly encircles and attacks the enemy troops and ends the battle quickly.

1. To Make Detailed Ambush Preparations and to Determine Troop Disposition for the Ambush Operation.

In preparing for an ambush operation, the company (platoon) must try its best to prepare a deliberate and detailed plan, and secretly and quickly complete preparations for the ambush.

A. To Make a Preliminary Decision:

After receiving its mission, the company (platoon) must understand the exact plan of higher headquarters, study the enemy situation and terrain, find out the enemy strength, intension and march routes, terrain conditions along the routes, enemy activities and conditions of the local populace. A timely preliminary decision can then be made on the basis of an analysis and assessment of the above-mentioned conditions. The company must then call a party branch meeting to brief the personnel involved as to the orders from higher headquarters and the commander's preliminary decision, to study and to determine the requirements for and methods of combat mobilization, to specify the cadres' mission, and to arrange various preparation activities in an orderly manner.

B. To Select an Ambush Position:

The company (platoon) commander must secretly lead his platoon and squad leaders and the leader of the supporting weapons element to the selected ambush area for the purpose of terrain inspection and selection of the ambush position. The ambush position must be beside the road along which enemy troops must pass. The local populace in the ambush position area must be friendly to us so that they will not inform the enemy of our ambush and so that we can secure the cooperation of the local militia. There must be concealed access roads in the ambush position area. In addition, the ambush position area must be convenient for concealing troop deployment, fire power delivery and sudden launching of assaults. Valleys, defiles, forest edges, bridges and ferry points, which are unfavorable for enemy deployment, are desirable areas for ambush operations.

For the purpose of concealing our ambush plan and preventing enemy air and artillery fire attack and reconnaissance, the company (platoon) ordinarily selects its assembly position in the flank rear or flank areas of the ambush position. The position of readiness must be as near the ambush position as possible, ordinarily two to three kilometers distant.

C. To Determine Ambush Disposition:

Troop disposition for ambush operations depends upon enemy movement, assigned mission, and terrain conditions. A "bag-shaped" disposition is most desirable for ambush action. In case of terrain limitation, the troops and weapons may well be placed on one side of a favorable terrain feature from which fire power can be easily delivered. The size of the ambush circle must be decided according to the plan of higher headquarters, terrain conditions and the strength of the enemy forces and our own. The thinning out of our strength must be avoided.

Ordinarily, the company (platoon) organizes flank attack elements with its main strength. The flank attack elements should be placed on one side or both sides of the ambush position for the main attack. The locations where the flank elements are disposed must be convenient for launching a sudden attack but must afford concealment from enemy observation. Blocking and rear attack elements should be organized with a portion of the troop strength and necessary antitank weapons. The blocking element should be placed in the vicinity of the key point from which enemy troops can be easily blocked. The rear attack elements should be placed on one side of the road along which enemy troops will pass. Deployed in the afore manner, these two elements can block and sever the enemy troops and destroy them in coordination with the flank attack elements.

Antitank weapons should be deployed under concealment on one flank or both flanks of the ambush position and in terrain convenient for weapons to destroy enemy tanks. Machineguns should be set up in concealed positions where it is convenient for them to deliver fire power and cover the infantrymen's assault operations. Mortars are ordinarily set up in concealed positions where they can support infantry combat and control dead areas. All weapons should be placed on the main routes within the ambush circle and organized into a fire-net with direct, flank and oblique fire for the main purpose of destroying tanks.

The command position should be in a concealed location which is convenient for observation and command. Observation teams should be dispatched to a point at a proper distance from the enemy so they can keep tab on the enemy situation.

D. Assignment of Mission and Organization of Coordination:

The company (platoon) commander should assign missions and organize coordination in a concealed location. When doing this he should specify the following:

(1) The enemy's strength, possible direction of movement, routes of attack, and estimated arrival time in our ambush area.

(2) Plans of higher headquarters and the mission of each element.

(3) Time, route and methods for entering the assembly position and the ambush position.

(4) Organization of flank attack, blocking and rear attack elements and the locations, missions, attack routes, methods of coordination, and antitank measures for these elements.

(5) Firing positions, missions, and methods of supporting infantry attacks with various kinds of weapons.

(6) Methods of coordination with militia units.

(7) Methods of maintaining liaison with the observation team.

(8) Signals (markings).

(9) Time for completion of ambush preparations.

In organizing combat, the commander should study the situation and possible developments and devise countermeasures by promoting the spirit of military democracy, prescribe ambush discipline and security measures, inspect the readiness status of his subordinate elements with regard to equipment, rations, water and cold protection items for ambush and submit a report to higher headquarters.

2. To Occupy the Ambush Position Under Concealment:

The company (platoon) should stealthily and quickly occupy its ambush position under cover of darkness and poor weather, then wait for its chance. In the ambush area, an observation team should be assigned a suitable distance away in the direction of the enemy's approach to watch the enemy's movements. The main force should rapidly advance in a march formation along the prescribed route under the cover of the advance reconnaissance team. The commander should march at the front of the main force and should keep tab on the enemy situation and the changing terrain and control the direction of march. After entering the ambush position, the company (platoon) should immediately dispatch observation and security teams and assign elements to prepare camouflage and other necessary works and lay antitank and antiinfantry mines so as to rapidly complete combat readiness.

The company (platoon) should assign security troops to control the ambush area while waiting for its chance in the assembly position. If the situation permits, necessary personnel should be assigned to construct firing positions for main weapons in the ambush area and assign observation teams to watch the movement of the approaching enemy. When the enemy appears, the elements should stealthily approach and occupy the ambush position from separate directions.

In accordance with the situation and instructions from higher headquarters, the company may organize small elite elements to divert the enemy troops in coordination with local militia elements into our ambush circle where they can be destroyed.

Either in the ambush position or in the assembly position, the ambush element should carefully and deliberately prepare for combat, take good cover, maintain tight security, wait patiently, be prepared to fight and keep frequent contact with higher headquarters.

3. To Launch a Surprise Attack and Destroy the Enemy in Close Combat.

All elements should keep calm and take good cover, and should allow enemy reconnaissance personnel (vehicles) to enter and pass through our ambush area. No one shall fire until the open-fire order is given, and the ambush position shall not be exposed.

When the enemy's main force enters the ambush circle, the company (platoon) commander must make a firm decision as to the precise moment to open fire on and destroy the enemy. The company (platoon) should destroy the enemy troops while they are moving. Antitank weapons should be concentrated on first destroying the enemy tanks and armored vehicles in front and then those at the far rear for the purpose of blocking the advance and retreat routes. With its fierce fire, the mortar element should break up the enemy march formation, prevent the enemy from deploying, destroy the enemy effective strength and support the assault of the infantry element. The blocking element should determine to contain the enemy troops by taking advantage of favorable terrain features, force the enemy into an unfavorable position and then destroy the enemy troops in coordination with flank attacking elements. The flank attacking element should immediately launch a fearless assault, break through the enemy march formation, and decentralize and encircle the enemy troops. Bangalore torpedoes, explosive packages and hand-thrown mines should be used to destroy enemy tanks and armored vehicles. Close fire, hand grenades and bayonets should be employed to destroy enemy infantry troops. The rear attacking element must quickly occupy key positions, cut off enemy retreat routes, intercept his reinforcements, attack his rear, and then encircle and destroy him in coordination with the main force.

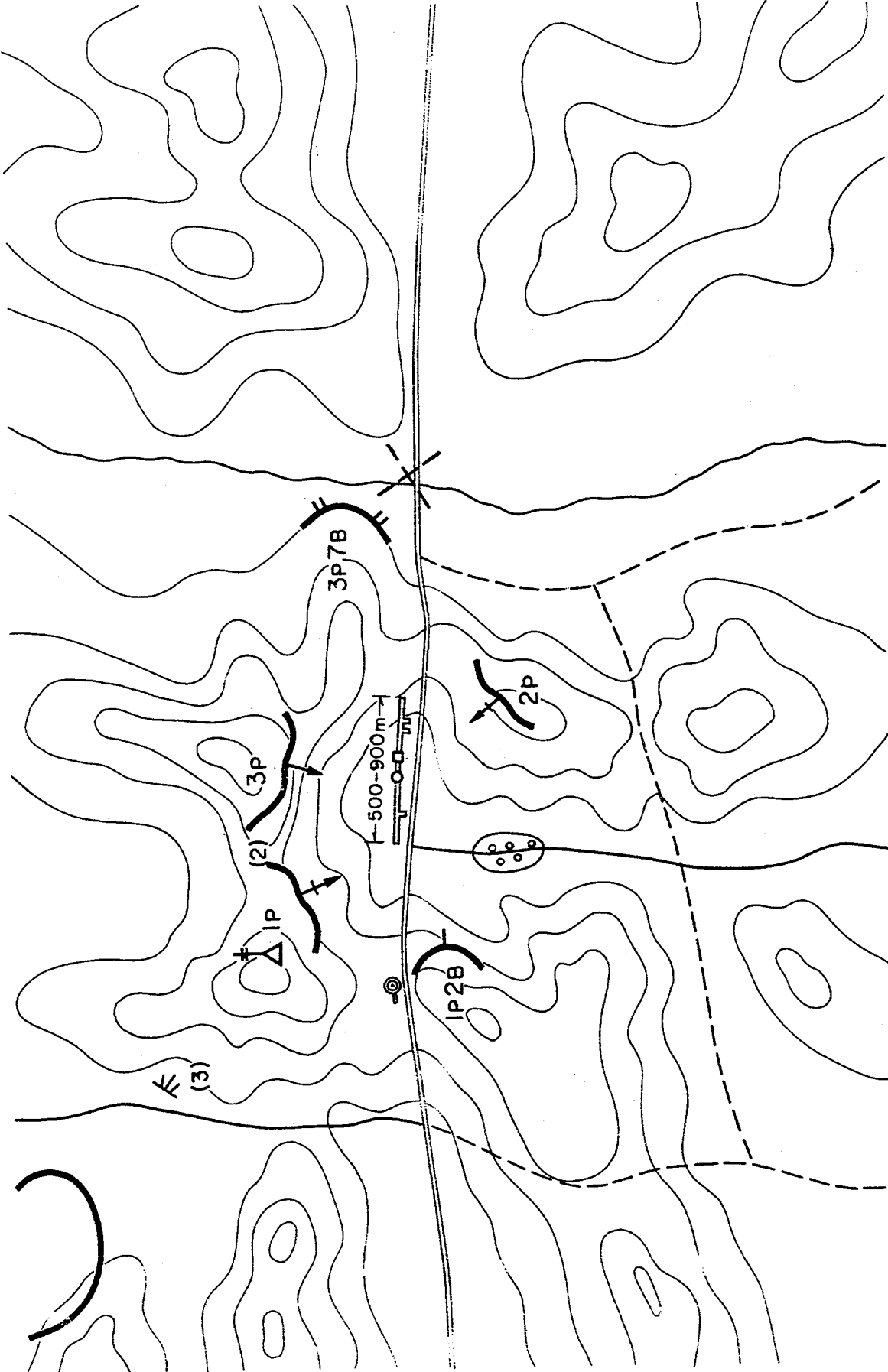
If enemy troops resist obstinately with the help of terrain features, tanks and armored vehicles, the company (platoon) must concentrate strength and fire power to assault the enemy flanks and destroy them before they are in position.

4. To Make a Timely Withdrawal from the Ambush Area:

After completion of the ambush mission, the company (platoon) must dispatch security guards to watch the direction from which enemy troops had come. Except for a small force assigned to clear the battlefield, the main force must quickly withdraw from the ambush area to avoid surprise attack by enemy artillery and aircraft. The troops may withdraw from the ambush area by one or more routes according to the situation. If necessary, rear security guards should be dispatched to prevent pursuit by the enemy.

If our ambush plan is found out by the enemy and cannot be carried out as scheduled, the company (platoon) must make an immediate decision to attack and destroy a part of the enemy force with fierce fire power and then quickly and in an orderly manner withdraw from the ambush area. Hesitation under enemy fire and reluctance to disengage from an uncertain battle must be avoided.

Sample of Infantry Company in Ambush Positions



POSITION DEFENSE OF THE INFANTRY COMPANY (PLATOON)

Defense is an auxiliary means of offense or a means of preparing to switch over to offensive. "The basic principle is to acknowledge active defense and oppose passive defense." In a defensive operation, to stop the successive assaults of enemy tanks has great significance in achieving combat victory. In defense, the main force will be concentrated to defend key points against the enemy's tank assault. With the aid of these key points and with fierce and accurate fire power and brave counterassault, smash the enemy's offense and firmly hold the defensive position.

In general, the company (platoon) organizes its defense within the battalion's (company's) organization. It may act as a first echelon unit or as a reserve element. Sometimes, it may perform an independent, defensive mission. The mission of the first echelon unit is to defend the forward strongpoints and to employ fire power and counterassault to annihilate the enemy. The mission of the reserve element is to support and provide replacements for the first echelon unit to prevent the enemy from developing in depth and to wipe him out by counterassaulting. The reserve also has the mission of exterminating enemy airborne troops in coordination with the friendly forces.

In a defensive operation, the company (platoon) may be attached with mortars, recoilless rifles, heavy machineguns, company machineguns, and light flamethrowers, while the platoon may be attached with 60mm mortars, recoilless rifles, rocket launchers, heavy machineguns, company machineguns and light flamethrowers.

1. To Convene Party Branch Meeting and to Conduct Combat Mobilization:

The company Party Branch is the core of the company's centralized leadership and united combat. "All important questions..., should be referred to the Party Committee for discussion. The members present will freely express their opinions and make clear and accurate decisions. These decisions will then be implemented individually. After receiving its combat mission, the company should, on the basis of the commander's understanding of the mission, his estimate of the situation and his initial decision, timely convene a Party Branch (enlarged) meeting to transmit orders and directives of higher command, to study both the combat intention of the higher command and its own mission, to analyze the commander's initial decision, to draw up a combat plan and be familiar with it, to specify the combat requirements of combat mobilization and the tasks of cadres, to designate cadre successors, and to complete preparations for combat.

Carry out combat mobilization to the hilt. According to the mission of the company and the intentions of the commander, combat mobilization should usually be carried out first within the Party and then without. During mobilization, place emphasis on the enemy situation, our mission, purpose and objective, conditions of victory and methods of overcoming difficulties and defeating the enemy; devise effective combat slogans, promote the basic functions of the Party and CYL members; develop the ideological and political work among the troops, stimulate the sense of class hatred and combat enthusiasm of all commanders and fighters, instill in the minds of the troops the confidence to win victories, and raise the fervency of the troops to establish merits by killing the enemy. During combat, continuously promote propaganda work, develop the leadership of Party and CYL members, and encourage all commanders and fighters to fight stubbornly, to kill the enemy bravely and to accomplish the combat mission resolutely.

2. Organize Combat Closely and Prepare Defense Work Well.

Based upon the principle of making thorough preparations for every battle, the company commander (platoon leader) should act in accordance with the orders of higher headquarters and the directives of the Party Branch to make a detailed on-the-spot inspection, to select proper defensive key points, to decide defense disposition, to have close coordination and to accomplish the combat mission swiftly.

A. On-the-Spot Inspection and Selection of Key Defensive Positions.

When making an on-the-spot inspection, the company commander (platoon leader) should begin from the main direction of enemy attack and from the forward area to the rear. Emphasis should be placed on the following: terrain within the defense area, road conditions, defensive front, platoon positions and locations of the firing positions of major weapons; possible places of concealment of enemy tanks and infantry troops, possible assembly areas, and the major direction of his attack.

Through reconnaissance and a proper estimate of the situation, select key defensive positions that are convenient for observation, for delivering fire power, for attacking enemy tanks, for defending independently, for troop maneuver and for assuring the stability of defense in favorable terrain in the possible direction of enemy attack.

B. Disposition of Strength and Distribution of Fire Power.

Disposition of strength should be made in accordance with the enemy situation, our mission and terrain. The main force should be concentrated on defending key positions. Other troops should be deployed in depth under concealment in an extended formation. A strong, powerful force should be kept as reserves, which should be located in the center of our position or at a place which provides convenient concealment and mobility. The company usually uses two platoons to form the forward

strong points and the third to form a strong point in depth. (See Figure 1). Or it can use one platoon to form the forward strong point and the other two to form the strong points in depth. (See Figure 2). Fire power, obstacles, communication trenches, and fire trenches are used to connect various platoon strong points to form the company strong point. Sometimes, the whole company is used to form one strong point (see Figure 3) with each platoon responsible for defending a certain sector (see attached drawing) within the company strong point. The location of the company CP should be selected in the major defensive position within the strong point so as to facilitate observation and command.

Organization of fire should be made in accordance with the enemy situation, our mission, the characteristics of our weapons, and terrain conditions. Based upon the principles of weapon distribution and fire concentration, various weapons should be emplaced and used under sound planning. Recoilless rifles usually are concentrated for use at the company or they can be organized into an antitank team or attached to a platoon (squad) for deployment where an enemy tank threat exists. Mortars are usually concentrated for use by the company. Sometimes, 60mm mortars may be attached to the infantry platoon in the main direction of attack and be placed at concealed locations in depth where fire power can be fully developed. Machineguns are usually attached to the squad and placed at points in forward positions or in depth where fire power can be conveniently developed. Light flamethrowers organized into teams are usually attached to the platoons (squads), and placed in fire or communication trenches in the frontage with each team as a single fighting unit. At the front, on the flanks, at the limiting points between elements and in depth, multilayer fire nets for direct firing, flanking firing, oblique firing and firing from lying on back should be organized. Dead areas, covert approaches and tunnel openings should be controlled with mortars and machineguns or with hidden fire points. Machinegun elements should organize antiaircraft fire against enemy air attack. All weapons must complete their preparations for mobile firing and maintain close coordination with one another so that fire power can be concentrated within the shortest period of time in the area under threat.

C. Assignment of Mission and Organization of Coordination:

The company commander (platoon leader) should give the various elements a clear assignment of mission. First indicate azimuth, then emphasize the following points:

(1) Enemy situation.

(2) Missions of higher headquarters and this element.

(3) Missions of the adjacent friendly units.

(4) Platoons' (squads') defensive positions, key points, firing areas, zones of concentrated fire, and measures for the protection of the flanks and the limiting points.

(5) Missions, firing positions of various weapons, firing areas, alternate firing areas, and zones of concentrated fire of the various attached elements.

(6) Organization, placement, and missions of antitank teams.

(7) Time to complete combat preparations.

(8) Location of CP.

The company (platoon) usually specifies coordination at the time missions are being assigned, or after the assignment of mission. The following points would be clearly specified in establishing coordination:

(1) Methods for supporting the security elements in combat and for covering their withdrawal from combat.

(2) Action to be taken by the various elements when attacked by enemy atomic and chemical weapons and air force and artillery fire.

(3) Actions to be taken by the various elements to stop the enemy approaching our frontage and to resist the enemy attack.

(4) Actions to be taken by the various elements to annihilate the enemy penetrating our defenses and to carry out a counterassault.

(5) Actions to be taken by the various elements to smash the enemy's breakthrough and encirclement.

(6) Methods of coordination with artillery, air force, and adjacent friendly units and the militia.

(7) Signal (Markings).

D. Construction of Defensive Works and Establishment of Obstacles:

The company (platoon) should make the most of the terrain to construct defensive works. The defensive works should be convenient for developing fire power, firm and strong, located at a low level, dispersed, concealed and strictly camouflaged. Antitank positions should be built in the main direction from which enemy tanks may possibly attack. When constructing the works, the commander should specify clearly the locations of the various kinds of works, priority and requirement of each construction, construction method, and the time allowed to complete it. Normally, construction operation should start from the major works. Frontage comes first and those in depth follow. Foxholes and weapons positions have priority over trenches, shelters (tunnels), and communication trenches. The fire and communication trenches in key areas should be covered. If the earth is loose, the trenches should be reveted. Some small holes should be dug in fire trenches and weapons positions. If conditions permit, shelters (tunnels) should be provided with adequate facilities

against enemy atomic and chemical attack and for storing foods, ammunition and water. Efforts should be made continually to improve the defensive works.

In constructing obstacles, these should be emphasized: the obstacles established should be closely linked with fire power and natural obstacles. Usually, in an area convenient for tanks to maneuver, antitank trenches and traps are dug, or antitank mine fields, stone obstacles and abatis are established, and precipices are constructed. At the front of our position or at the flanks where it is convenient for the enemy to conduct outflanking maneuvers, wire entanglements, abatis, and antiinfantry mine fields should be set up in the gaps. If time permits, net-shaped antitank positions should also be constructed.

E. To organize various precautionary and security measures:

The company (platoon) should organize a reliable reconnaissance and observation reporting system so as to prevent a surprise attack by the enemy. Antiatomic and antichemical material and equipment should be well prepared. The organization and disposition of the company ammunition point, and the stock of food supplies, ammunition and water of each element should be specified. The battalion aid post and measures for self and mutual assistance should also be specified.

If time permits, the company should make efforts to conduct training before going to battle so as to improve the skills and the combat standards of the various elements, to familiarize them with the coordinating actions, and to revise and improve the combat plan.

3. Actively Attack the Enemy and Guard Against his Fire Attack.

The company (platoon) should try to "gain the initiative and avoid passiveness." All possible active methods will be adopted to kill, to

deplete and to exhaust the enemy. Meanwhile, preventive measures will be taken to effectively preserve our own strength.

A. Actively Attack the Enemy.

When not in direct contact with the enemy, the commander, in accordance with orders from higher headquarters, will dispatch small elements together with the militia to conceal themselves in ambush by the road in front of our position where the enemy is sure to pass, with the mission of keeping the movements of the enemy under surveillance, and catching and killing small enemy reconnaissance groups. When the enemy is approaching us, active combat action should be taken to destroy his effective strength, to force him to deploy, to slow down his actions and to cover the various elements in their preparations for an assault against the enemy.

When in direct contact with the enemy, utmost use should be made of surprise rifle and artillery. Meanwhile, small elements may be dispatched, in accordance with orders from higher headquarters and by taking advantage of darkness, to conduct reconnaissance, ambush or assault against the enemy's weak points.

B. Guard Against Enemy Fire Attack.

Upon receiving warning of enemy atomic or chemical attack, except for the observer who will take cover on the spot and put on protective gear to continue his observation mission, the rest of the men will quickly seek cover in a shelter or tunnel. After the enemy's atomic attack, the commander should organize various teams to rescue, to put out fires, to decontaminate, to repair defensive works, to keep watch over the enemy's activities and to make a timely report on the actual situation to higher headquarters.

When under attack by enemy air force and artillery elements, the observer and the weapons on duty will stay to keep on watching enemy activities and actively fire on low flying airplanes, while the rest of the men will quickly take cover and remain in concealment and get ready for combat. The commander will make a personal inspection of the situation to find out indications of impending assault by the enemy so as to issue timely commands to the various elements to take up their positions, to construct field works and to be ready for the enemy assault. But, attention should be paid to the enemy's false fire shifting.

4. To Stubbornly Resist the Enemy Assault.

When resisting enemy tank and infantry assault, the company (platoon) should be "brave, firm and calm" and annihilate the enemy with concentrated fire power and close combat. In annihilating the enemy, destroy those that threaten us most first and then shift fire against the others.

When the enemy starts his assault, the commander will make a timely estimate of the direction of the enemy's main attack. According to the situation, he should then command the various elements and weapons to occupy positions by turn. Mortar fire will be used first to kill enemy infantry troops. When the enemy's tanks come within our firing range, the commander will order his antitank weapons to open sudden fire on the tanks and armored vehicles to destroy them.

When the enemy is approaching our obstacles and moving through a passage, the commander should direct the antitank teams (sections) and the various antitank weapons to concentrate fierce fire power to destroy the tanks which threaten us most, then the rest. With accurate and fierce fire power, our rifles, machineguns and mortars will throw the enemy combat formations into confusion, cut off the connections between his infantry and tanks and wipe out his effective forces.

When the enemy is approaching the frontage of our position, the commander should direct the various elements to attack and destroy the enemy tanks with antitank weapons and explosives when they are within firing range, and to smash the enemy assault waves with fierce fire power and bayonets in front of our positions.

When the enemy are being killed or wounded by our fire and their combat formations are thrown into confusion, the situation is then favorable to us. The commander should grasp this opportunity to attack the enemy's flanks with squads teams in short-distance assaults. If the enemy is retreating, fire power should be organized immediately to pursue the enemy. If the enemy is assaulting our friendly forces nearby, support them in combat with fire power.

After crushing the enemy's assault, make preparations against enemy fire attack. Actions should also be taken to quickly regroup, conduct mobilization, make emergency repair of field works, replenish ammunition and be ready to meet the enemy's new assault.

5. Counterattack Resolutely to Destroy the Penetrating Enemy.

When the enemy is successful in penetrating our position, fight hard to hold the position and kill the penetrating enemy with fierce and accurate fire to stop them from developing, to block the gaps and to stop the entering of their follow-up forces. When the enemy suffers heavy casualties and his combat formations are thrown into confusion and they are not combat-ready, or when we can take advantage of the night darkness, we should use our reserve elements to conduct a firm and fierce counterassault against the enemy's flanks and rear to wipe out the penetrating enemy and regain our positions. If the enemy is in a superior position, the company (platoon) should stubbornly prevent them from developing in depth and actively participate in the counterassaulting actions of higher echelon units to annihilate them. Usually, the various

elements should obtain approval and fire support from higher headquarters for any counterassault they are going to conduct.

When conducting a counterassault, the commander should specify the following: mission of the elements responsible for making this counterassault, direction, area for deployment, time of action and signal, fire support and the methods of coordination among the various elements. The counterassaulting elements should, utilizing the effects of our fire power and coordinating with the advance element, attack firmly and fiercely against the enemy's flanks and rear, annihilate the penetrating enemy with fierce fire and bayonets and regain our position. When conducting a counterassault, the platoon usually uses its squads deployed in depth to do it along the dugouts and trenches.

If the counterassault fails, the nearby favorable terrain should be occupied and fortified quickly so as to prevent enemy strength from expanding and to recover our positions in concert with higher level's counterassault.

6. Smash Enemy Encirclement and Defend the Tunnels.

"No matter how complicated, serious and miserable the situation may be, what the military commander needs first is the organization of independent initiative, and the capability to use his own power." When the company (platoon) is cut up and encircled by the enemy or evacuated to a tunnel to continue fighting, efforts should be made to hold firmly the key positions or the openings of the tunnel and fight bravely, with no fear of sacrifice and with the single-handed fighting spirit. The company should fight independently and bravely, kill the enemy actively and smash the enemy's decentralization and envelopment actions.

A. Smash the Enemy's Decentralization and Encirclement Actions.

When threatened by enemy's decentralization and encirclement actions, the commander should maneuver rapidly the company's strength and fire power in the direction where the enemy threatens us the most so as to prevent him from developing in depth and smash his intention of decentralizing and encircling us.

When part of our positions is decentralized and encircled by the enemy, the encircled element should make timely adjustment of its disposition and by relying on the key points, defense works and obstacles, destroy enemy tanks with fierce fire power, kill enemy infantry, fight repeatedly and hold the positions resolutely. The commander should also direct other elements and weapons to support the enveloped elements and to smash the enemy's encirclement.

When the company is being encircled, the commander should quickly adjust its disposition, concentrate its strength to hold the key points, concentrate particularly the antitank fire to destroy the enemy's tanks, kill the enemy with fierce fire power and by active combat action, and protect our combat formation from being decentralized so that our objective, "when there is man there is position," can be maintained. With support of the higher command and coordination with friendly forces nearby, stubbornly smash the enemy's encirclement.

B. To Firmly Defend Tunnels to Continue Fighting.

When the enemy has occupied our ground positions or when we are ordered to evacuate to tunnels, the company (platoon) should organize its strength and fire power to drive back the enemy who is following us closely. Weapons elements will be designated to occupy the defensive works in the vicinity of the openings of the tunnels or other favorable terrain to provide cover and prevent the enemy from following at our heels. When

evacuating to the tunnels, wounded personnel will be the first to enter, then ammunition and the various elements. The commander will be with the covering element. At the time when the various elements are going into the tunnels, the company should immediately organize observation posts and assign weapons and combat teams to defend the points of entry.

After entering the tunnels, the company should organize the men into defensive, assaulting, reserve and service teams in accordance with the situation. The mission will be clearly specified and a unified command established. The exemplary leading function of the Party members and members of CYL should be promoted. Ideological and political work would be strengthened. Infinite faith in the final victory must be maintained. The principle that "No matter how difficult and miserable the situation is, if there is still one man left, this man must keep on fighting," must be executed by action. Meanwhile, the company must try its best to keep in touch with higher headquarters, and to save food, ammunition and water to facilitate a prolonged defense.

The defense of a tunnel (underpass) is mainly a defense of the entrance. The company (platoon) should, with the support of and coordination with higher headquarters and the adjacent troops, take all possible measures against the enemy's destructive action and blockade, and to hold firmly the entrance to the tunnel. When the enemy is trying to block, explode and throw flames into the entrance, the company (platoon) should act firmly to annihilate him with fire power. In case there is damage to the entrance, a repair team should be formed immediately to repair the damage and to control this damaged area with fire power. If the enemy uses poison gas against us, gas masks and other available protective gear and material will be used for protection. Those affected by the gas should receive proper medical care at once. If the enemy has constructed works and set up obstacles near the entrance, these should be destroyed by fire power and explosives or the artillery element may be requested to

destroy them. In case the entrance is occupied by the enemy, positive action should be taken to retake it.

The element responsible for defending the tunnel may, by utilizing darkness, dawn or the effects of our artillery fire, dispatch a combat team, secretly and swiftly, to make an unexpected assault on the enemy and fight indomitably against the enemy at the entrance to the tunnel. At the time when higher command is conducting a counterassault, initiative should be taken to conduct an assault, and make active coordination. Before making assault, the commander should give his subordinates clear mission assignments, conduct mobilization and clear the obstacles at the entrance to the tunnel. When assaulting, the assault team should jump out of the tunnel suddenly during the short period of the lifting of artillery fire or according to signal fiercely attack the enemy at his flanks or in the rear in coordination with the counterassaulting elements of higher command to wipe out the enemy and to regain the lost position.

7. Night Defense.

Night defense of the company (platoon) should strictly adhere to the fine traditions of close combat and night combat of our military forces, and should be organized to safeguard against enemy assault and to wipe out the enemy by close fighting.

A. Make Good Preparations.

When daytime defense is changed to night defense, the company (platoon) should have all preparations completed before darkness. The commander should point out the night azimuth to his subordinates. Security guards will be dispatched to areas in front of our positions or in the directions easy for the enemy to approach. Observers and roving patrols will be increased

within the position. Part of the weapons will be moved forward to temporary fire positions to control the flanks and the gaps. Firing sectors for the various elements and for the weapons will be designated and preparations for night firing will be completed. Weapons will also be assigned to destroy the enemy's illumination and night observation material and equipment. If conditions permit, noise making, shining and illuminating materials should be put in the defense sectors where the enemy is likely to approach. Night operation plans will be prepared. Identification and communication signals or markings should be specified.

When organizing night defense, the company commander (platoon leader) should direct the various elements to occupy their positions secretly. Observers and guards will first be dispatched. Duty weapons will be assigned. Then, based on the visible terrain and its features, the commander should specify the mission, position locations, specially-defended key points and the main defense direction of the platoon (squad), firing positions, firing mission of the detached weapons and the methods to support infantry elements. The various elements should first construct important defense works and weapons firing positions, and then strengthen them gradually. At dawn, further adjustment in disposition, specification of mission and organization of coordination should be made according to the situation.

B. To Prevent the Enemy from Making a Surprise Assault and to Wipe Out the Enemy in Close Combat.

In conducting night defense, the company (platoon) should increase its vigilance, make thorough combat preparations, exercise strict light control, and maintain quiet so as to prevent the enemy from making a surprise assault. The commander should increase the number of guards and step up inspection, take appropriate measures to deal with various

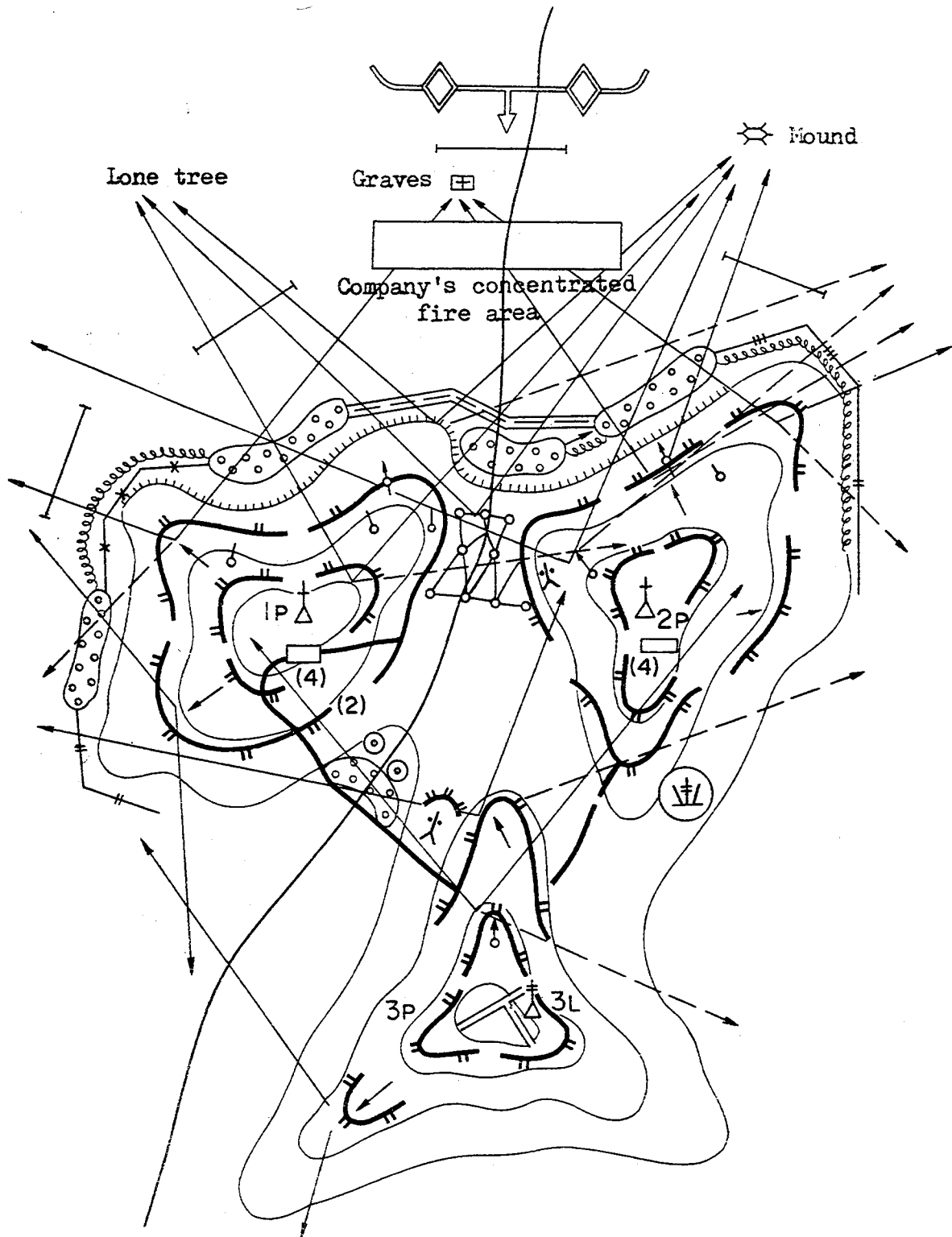
situations, and not be taken in by the enemy's feinting actions. Active combat action should be taken to find the enemy in advance and take the initiative in assaulting them.

If a small number of enemy are found conducting reconnaissance or a surprise assault or destroying our obstacles, wait and let them come closer. Then, with sudden, fierce fire power or using a small element of our forces to outflank them from the sides or in the rear, kill them or capture them alive. A small team may also be dispatched to ambush the enemy in the direction where the enemy is likely to move or to maneuver. The obstacles damaged by the enemy should be quickly repaired or placed under the control of our fire power.

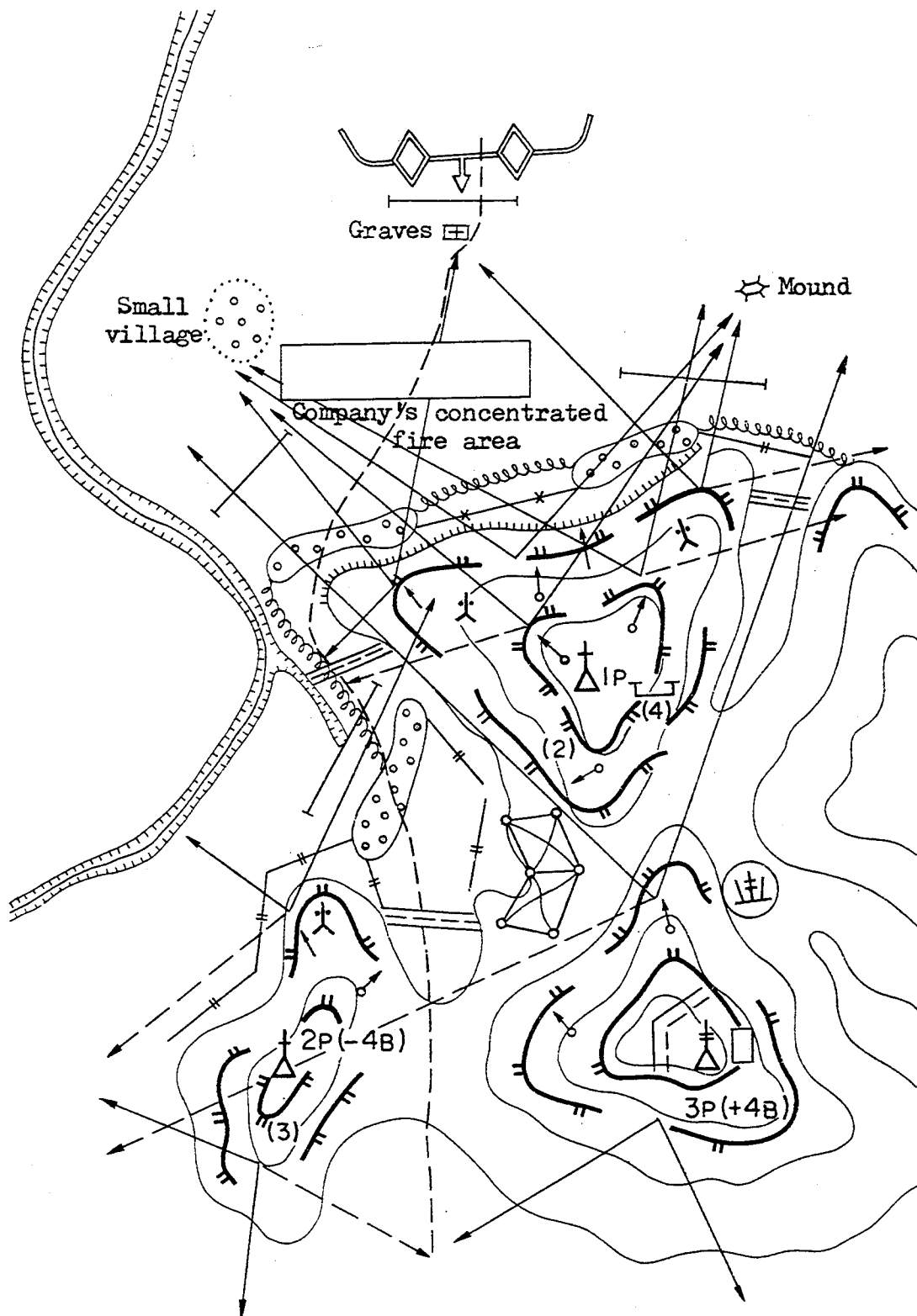
When the enemy is making an assault against us under the cover of artillery fire, the commander should direct the weapons elements to take their position and delay the enemy's action with fire. When the enemy is approaching the obstacles, the enemy's illumination should be fully utilized to open sudden, accurate and fierce fire to destroy enemy tanks and kill his infantrymen. When the enemy is passing the obstacles, fierce fire and hand grenades should be directed at the enemy to kill him in front of the forward position. When the enemy is suffering heavy casualties and his formation is being thrown into confusion, small elements may be used to make a sudden, fierce assault on the enemy's flanks or rear and annihilate him. After repulsing the enemy assault, special attention should be paid to searching for and killing the remaining enemy troops.

When changing from night defense to daytime defense, the company (platoon) should quickly make necessary adjustments of its disposition, strengthen the camouflage of its positions, make thorough preparations against enemy assault and report to higher headquarters.

Sample 1 of Infantry Company in Defensive Position

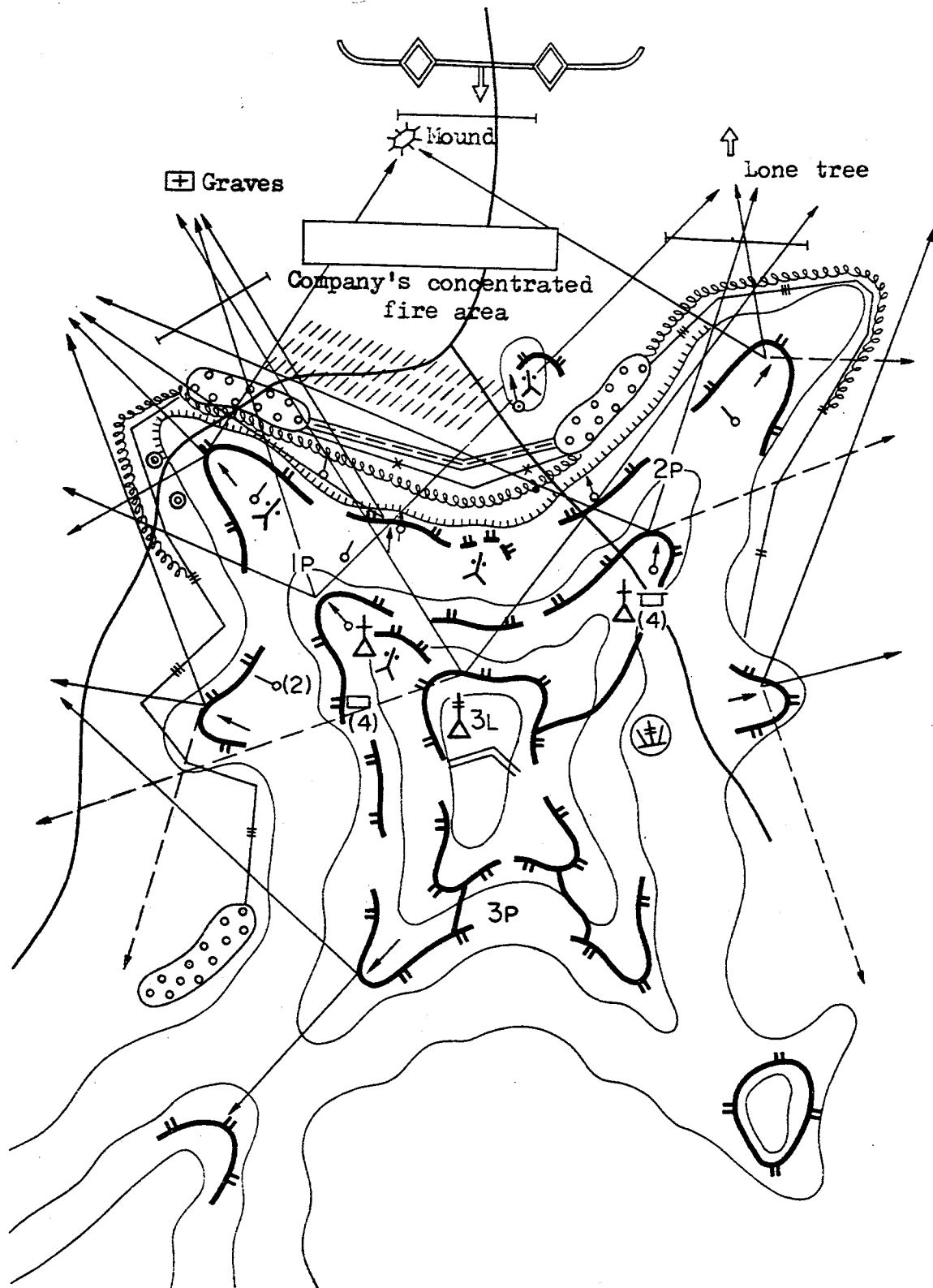


- Notes:
1. Defensive frontage is approximately 800 meters and its depth approximately 700 meters.
 2. Reinforced by a 82mm mortar company, a 82mm recoilless gun platoon, a heavy machinegun platoon, and a light flame thrower squad.
 3. * indicating 82mm recoilless guns; ↓ indicating anti-tank team; ○○○ indicating net-shaped position of anti-tank.



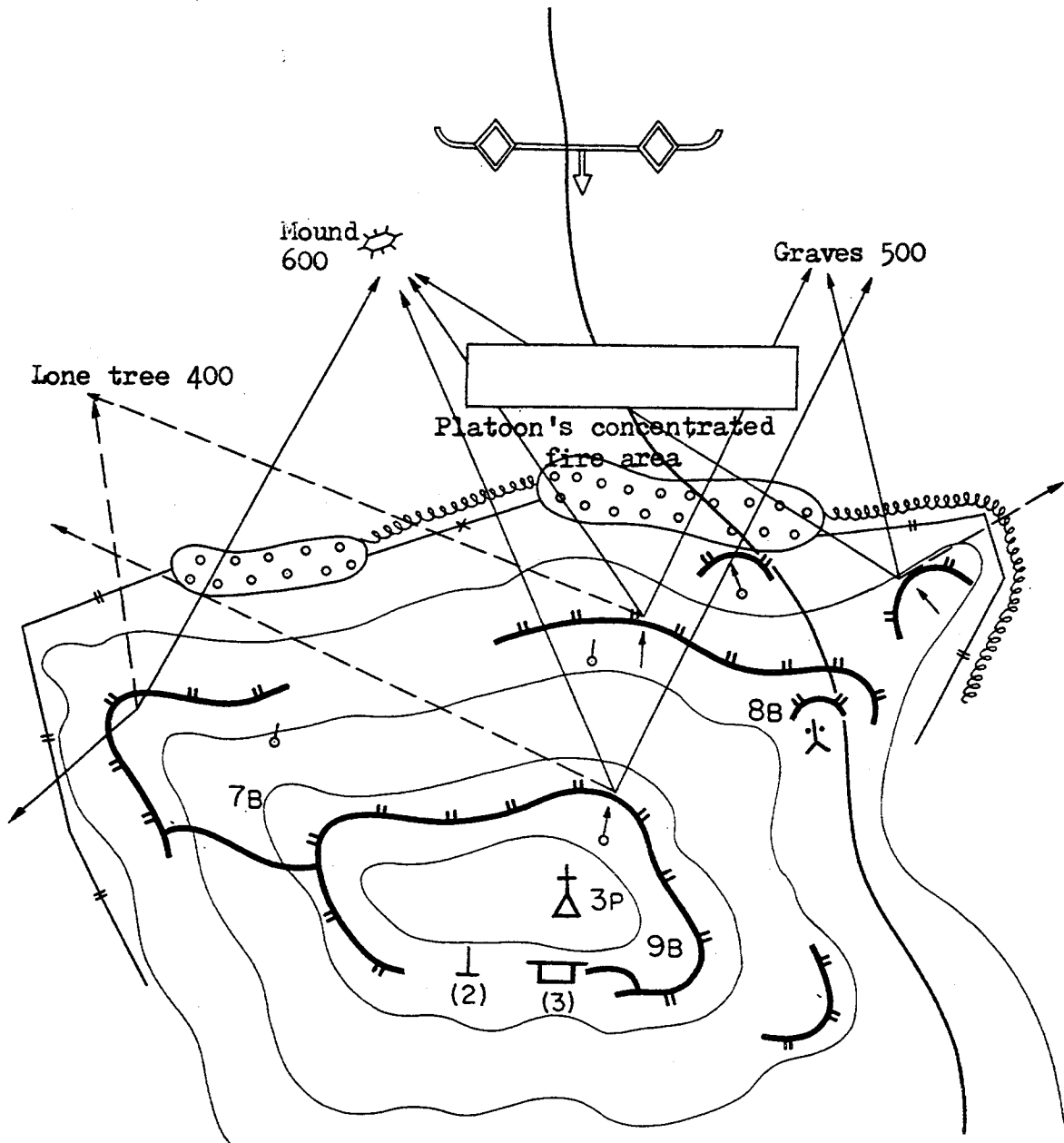
- Notes:
1. Defensive frontage is approximately 500 meters and its depth approximately 600 meters.
 2. Reinforced by a 82mm mortar company, one each 82mm recoilless gun and heavy machinegun platoons, and a light flame thrower squad.
 3. * indicating 82mm recoilless guns; ☉ indicating net shaped position of anti-tank.

Sample 3 of Infantry Company in Defensive Position



- Notes:
1. Defensive frontage is approximately 850 meters and its depth approximately 900 meters.
 2. Reinforced by a 82mm mortar company, a 82mm recoilless gun platoon, a heavy machinegun platoon, and a light flame thrower squad.
 3. ★ indicating 82mm recoilless guns; ↑ indicating anti-tank team.

Sample 3 of Infantry Company in Defensive Position



- Notes:
1. Defensive frontage is approximately 400 meters and its depth approximately 200 meters.
 2. Reinforced by two 60mm mortars, two 82mm recoilless guns, two heavy machineguns and a light flame thrower team.
 3. * indicating 82mm recoilless guns; † indicating anti-tank team.

CHARACTERISTICS OF COMPANY (PLATOON) MOUNTAIN DEFENSE OPERATIONS

In mountain defense operations, it is easy for us to conceal our troop deployment and weapons and to put up a strong defense. However, it is also easy for us to leave gaps, to expose our flanks, to have our combat formation decentralized by the enemy, and to lose mobility and command coordination. Therefore, the company (platoon) must organize a strong point defense by utilizing favorable terrain features and relying on controlling high grounds. The company should also strengthen the security and protection of the flanks and limiting points between various elements and take preventive measures against enemy encirclement and outflanking maneuvers.

1. Control High Grounds and Organize a Strong Point Defense.

After receiving his mission assignment, the company (platoon) commander must, under the guidance of higher headquarters and the Party Branch, lead his platoon (squad) leaders and the leader of the reinforced weapons element to conduct an on-the-spot inspection, and select a strong defensive position where it is easy to control the whole front from various points, to observe the enemy, to develop fire power, and to defend important points independently, so as to organize a strong point defense.

A. Deployment of troops and Distribution of Fire Power.

The following principle of defending a selected key point must be strictly observed in troop deployment: main strength should be concentrated around high grounds, mountain passes, defiles and key points so as to have a troop deployment with in-depth dispersion and concealment. Areas that are difficult for enemy troops to approach may be controlled by a small force or fire power. If a company is defending several high grounds at the same time, two platoons are ordinarily used to organize separate strong points

in the forward area and one platoon is used to organize strong points in depth. (See Chart 1). When a company is defending a narrow area, it may use a platoon to form forward strong points and two platoons to organize a strong point in depth. (See Chart 2). When a company is defending a single high ground, it forms a strong point by itself, (See Chart 3), with the platoons defending separate parts of the high ground.

In distributing fire power, weapons should be attached downward to the lower elements and distributed in concealed layers according to the principle of concentrated fire power, with dispersed weapons. Antitank weapons are ordinarily controlled by the company and organized into antitank teams (sections) to be deployed on both sides of valleys, salient points and roads which the enemy tanks may use. Rocket launchers should be attached to squads to be placed in the forward position. Mortars are collectively controlled by the company and should be placed on reverse slopes of high ground and valleys. The 60mm mortars can also be attached to platoons and placed in concealed fire positions. Heavy machineguns, ordinarily distributed to platoons, and squad machineguns, ordinarily distributed to squads are placed on both sides of salient points and high ground. Light flamethrowers should be attached to platoons and squads and organized into teams to be placed near forward fire or communication trenches. A fire-net should be formed in front of our position with various kinds of weapons for direct, flanking, oblique and cross fire. Mortar fire power should be used to control dead spaces, defiles and concealed areas convenient for enemy troops to approach. Antitank fire power should be used to control valleys, roads, entrances to mountain passes and other areas convenient for enemy tanks to pass. Places for firing from lying on back should be established along the front and in depth in favorable terrain. Hidden fire points and antiaircraft fire should be established on both sides of high ground and reverse slopes. The fire power of various strong points should be able to support one another with all their rifle, artillery, high trajectory, flanking and oblique fire combined, so that the main fire power can be concentrated against the threatened direction on short notice.

B. Construct Defensive Works and Establish Obstacles.

The front of a defensive position is ordinarily on the slope facing the direction of the enemy, on both sides of the road or on the edges of a forest with smaller dead angles. Trenches and weapons fire positions should be constructed around the high ground according to the terrain condition. All weapon emplacements should be constructed at the bottom, concealed and covered. An antitank fire net should be constructed in the area convenient for enemy tanks to move through. Shelters should be constructed on the reverse slopes or both sides of the high ground by utilizing and improving mountain caves and other natural features. If the situation permits, tunnels should be constructed with the tunnel entrances in the flank and rear areas. Strong fire positions should also be constructed at the entrances. Anti-atomic and anti-chemical installations should be constructed in shelters and tunnels. Dummy positions may be constructed according to the situation. All defensive works and installations should be constructed and camouflaged at the same time.

Obstacles should be placed in roads, valleys, defiles and gaps in close coordination with fire power and natural obstacles. Cliffs, trenches, fallen trees, rock barriers and "rock mines" may be used to further strengthen our defenses.

In addition, preventive measures against fire, mountain slides and flood should be emphasized, and ammunition, foodstuff and water should be adequately stocked.

2. Fight with Determination on High Grounds.

The company (platoon) should fully develop its ability for close combat and fighting independently with small groups and smash the enemy attack with positive combat action by taking advantage of favorable terrain features and strong defensive works.

A. Repel the Enemy Assault with Determination.

In the face of an enemy assault, the company (platoon) must be brave, steady and calm, and direct its elements to occupy positions successively according to development of the enemy situation. Antitank weapons should be used to destroy enemy tanks and armored vehicles, and the fire power of machineguns and mortars should be used to kill enemy infantrymen. When enemy troops approach close enough, elements along the frontage should destroy the enemy with fierce and precise fire power of rifles, machineguns, hand grenades, bangalore torpedoes and explosives. The weapons disposed in depth should support the elements along the frontage with fierce fire and then smash the enemy assault.

When the enemy's formations are thrown into disarray by our fire power and the situation is favorable to us, the commander should take the initiative to assign squads (teams) to conduct a short-distance attack against the enemy flanks from the front of our defensive position. Mortars and heavy machineguns should be used to suppress enemy follow-up echelons and weapons in order to support the actions of our elements.

When the enemy assaults our position from different directions, the commander should first concentrate the main strength against the direction that poses the greatest threat to the unit, then swiftly shift the strength to destroy the enemy from other directions. When enemy tanks encircle our position along valleys and roads, our concealed antitank weapons should open sudden and precise fire on the tanks and destroy them in close combat. Mortars and rifles should be used to annihilate the enemy infantrymen. When the enemy troops retreat, fire power must be delivered to pursue them. At the same time, preparation must be made against another possible enemy assault.

B. Launch a Fierce Surprise Counterassault.

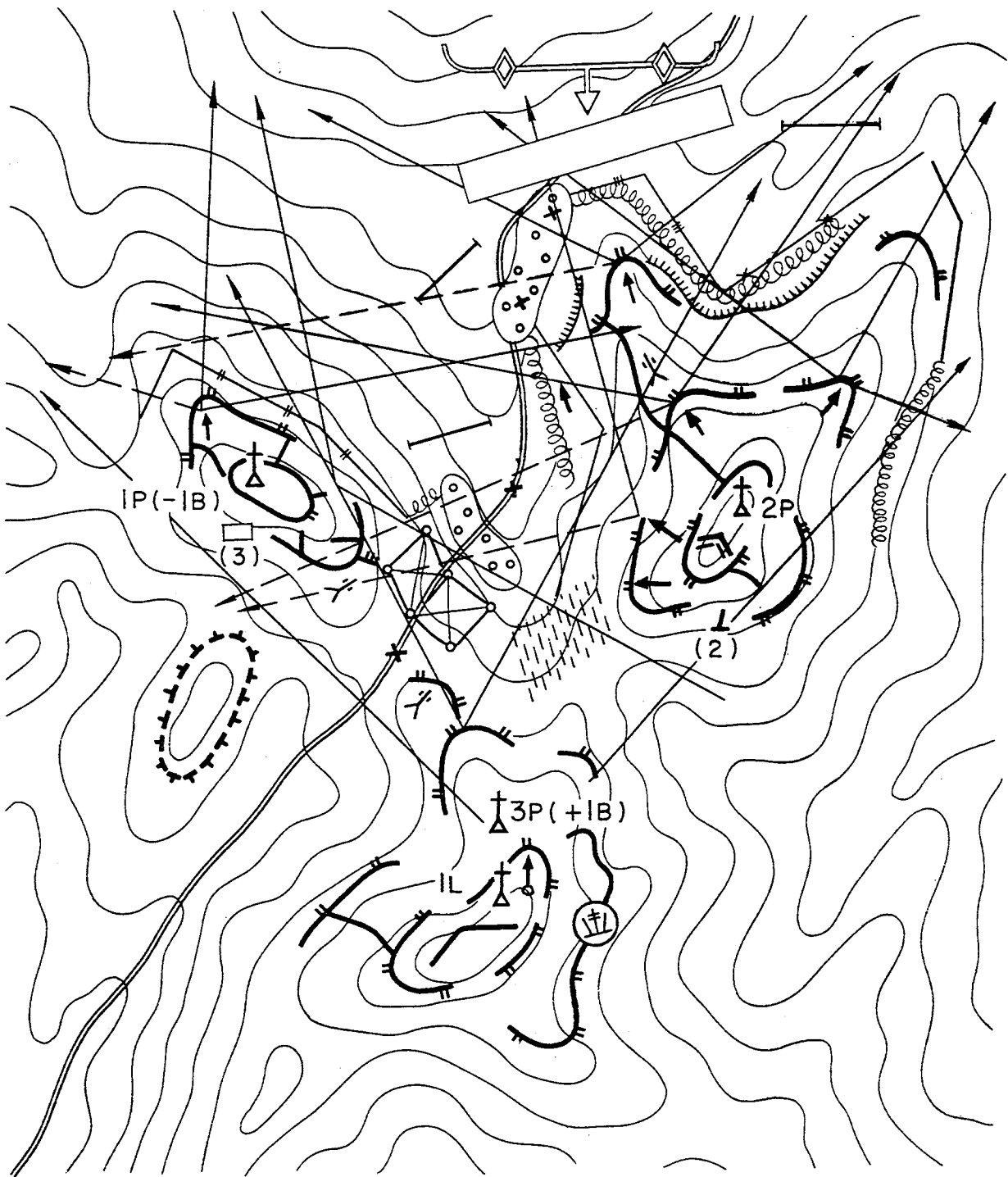
In case our defensive position is penetrated by the enemy, the company (platoon) should encourage its men to fight the enemy to the

last, and concentrate its fire power on killing the enemy troops penetrating our position. At the same time, fire power must be delivered to block the breach and stop successive echelons of enemy troops from entering the position. By taking advantage of the enemy's confusion and the inability of his follow-up echelons to enter into battle, the company (platoon) reserve elements should launch a fierce and sudden assault against the enemy's flank rear by utilizing favorable terrain and retake our position.

C. Defend High Grounds with Determination.

When encircled by enemy troops, the company (platoon) should strengthen its political and ideological work and promote the spirit of bravery, endurance and independent combat among its men. Furthermore, the commander should take it upon himself to redeploy his troops and take whatever other action is necessary to firmly defend his high ground and create favorable conditions for combat by higher echelon forces. When the low ground defensive position is occupied by the enemy, the company (platoon) should move into underground tunnels to continue its resistance. When the higher echelon unit launches a counterattack, the company (platoon) should actively attack the enemy in close coordination with the higher echelon force so as to destroy the enemy and regain our defensive position.

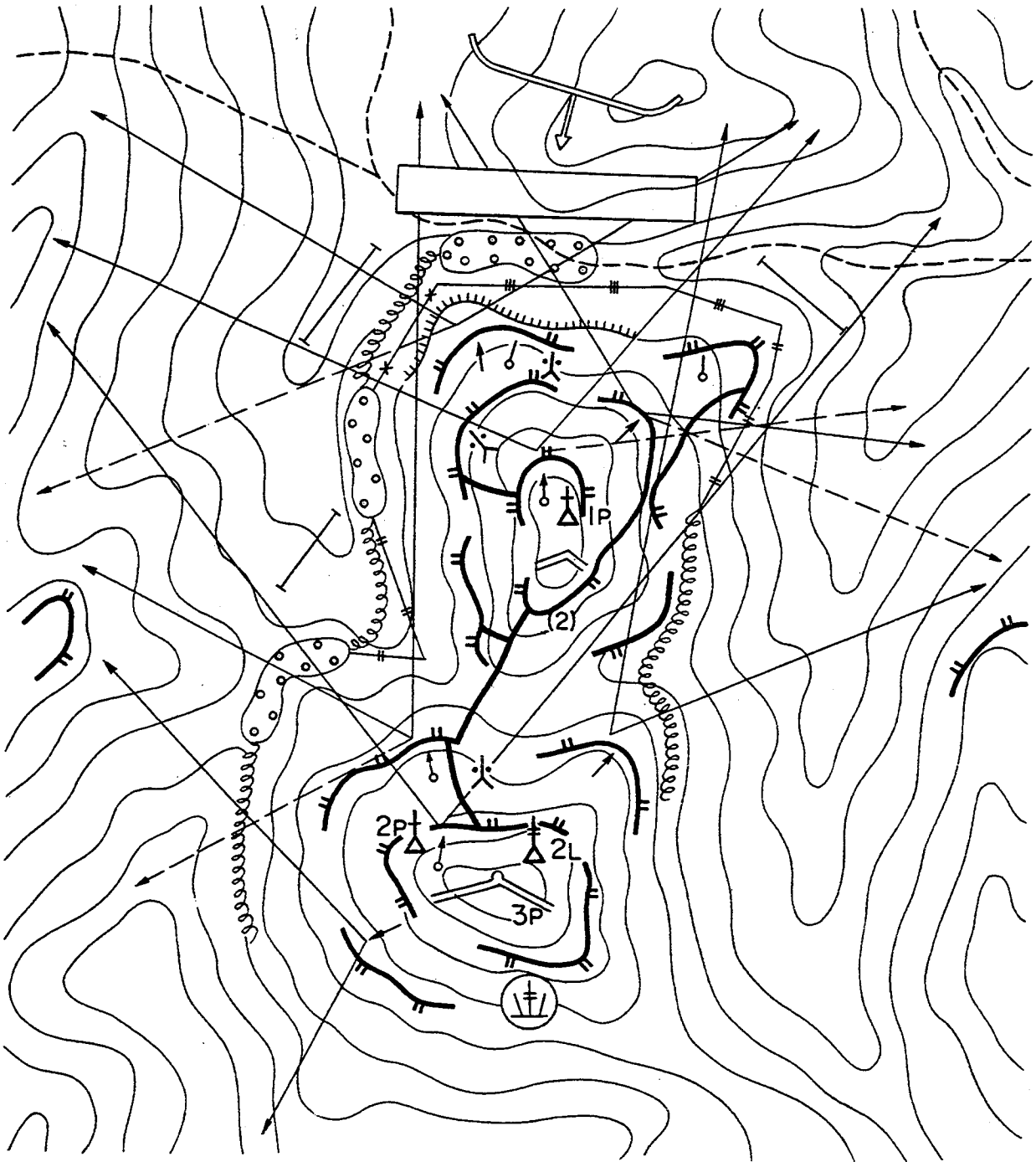
Sample 1 of Infantry Company Mountain Defense Operations



Notes: 1. Reinforced by a 82mm mortar company, one each 82mm recoilless gun and heavy machinegun platoons, and a light flame thrower squad.

2. * indicating 82mm recoilless guns; ↑ indicating anti-tank team; ⋯ indicating net shaped position of anti-tank.

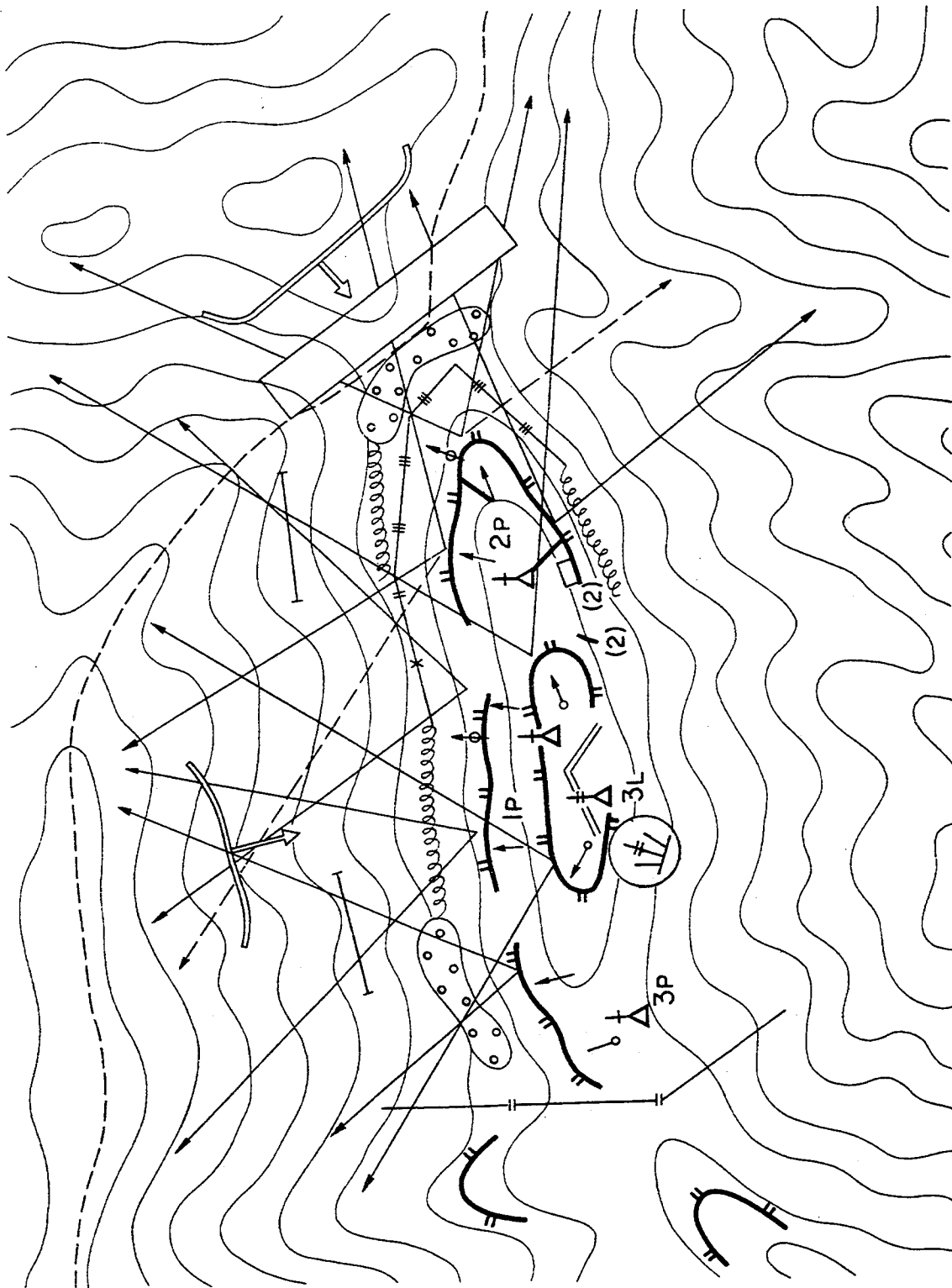
Sample 2 of Infantry Company Mountain Defense Operations



Notes: 1. Reinforced by a 82mm mortar company, one each 82mm recoilless gun and heavy machinegun platoons, and a light flame thrower squad.

2. Δ indicating 82mm recoilless guns.

Sample 3 of Infantry Company Mountain Defense Operations



Notes: Reinforced by a 82mm mortar company, a heavy machinegun platoon, and a light flame thrower squad.

CHARACTERISTICS OF COMPANY (PLATOON) IN CITY (TOWN) DEFENSE OPERATIONS

In city (town) defense operations the defensive unit is in a favorable position to construct strong defensive positions and advantageously deploy its troops and weapons, but in an unfavorable position to effect observation, firing, command and coordination. The defensive unit is also vulnerable to enemy aircraft and atomic and chemical attacks. In city defense operations, the company (platoon) must promote the spirit of heroism, endurance and independent combat among its men, and make good use of strong buildings and underground facilities to form a defensive position with strong points. In close coordination with militia units, the company (platoon), in a vigorous effort, repels enemy attacks with fierce fire power and firmly defends the position.

1. Organize a strong defense with buildings.

After receiving his mission, the company (platoon) commander should, under the guidance of higher headquarters and the Party branch, lead his platoon and squad leaders to conduct an on-the-spot inspection, select key defensive points, properly deploy troops, carefully organize fire power, construct strong defensive works and barriers at selected important places by using buildings and underground installations so as to organize a strong defensive position.

A. Select key defensive points.

In conducting an on-the-spot inspection, the company (platoon) commander should find out in his defense sector the terrain features, and conditions of streets, buildings, underground installations and tunnels, as well as the enemy's possible direction of attack and probable staging area. Key defensive points should be selected where our troops can better control the whole defense sector from vantage points, and where they can observe, deliver fire power, prevent enemy atomic, chemical and aircraft attacks, destroy enemy tanks, fight independently, effect mutual support and ensure the defense of key buildings.

B. Troop deployment.

In troop deployment, the principle of defending key points must be strictly observed. The main force should be concentrated on holding favorable terrain and important buildings. The company (platoon) will ordinarily organize an independent defensive position with one or several buildings, which are connected to form a defensive ring in accordance with the enemy situation, terrain conditions and mission. When a strong point is set up in a single building, the main force should be placed on the first floor, a smaller force on the middle and upper floors and the reserve elements in the basement. If the strong point is composed of several buildings, the main force is ordinarily used to defend the building that is most important to the whole defensive system, while platoons (squads)

are used to defend other buildings, and the reserve elements are positioned in underground installations where they can launch a counterassault and reinforce the platoons (squads) in combat. When the company (platoon) organizes a defensive line along the edge of a city (town), favorable terrain features and buildings nearby should be used to organize forward strong points, and the reserve elements should be positioned at strong points located in depth of the defensive position so as to facilitate their support of forward combat elements and capacity to launch a timely counter-assault.

C. Fire distribution.

Fire power should be organized according to our mission, weapons capabilities, terrain conditions and possible enemy actions, and distributed in an annular, multilayer pattern with adequate concealment. Most of the weapons should be deployed along the front edge of the defensive position, on the first floor and in the defensive works around the building. Necessary weapons and expert riflemen should be placed on the upper and middle floors. Hidden fire points should be located at the wall bases, building corners and street corners.

Recoilless rifles, ordinarily under the direct control of the company, are organized into an antitank team, or attached to platoons. Rocket launchers are usually attached to platoons (squads). Antitank weapons will be deployed on both sides of the streets or areas conducive to the passage

of enemy tanks.. Antitank teams can be placed on roads along which enemy tanks must pass. Mortars are ordinarily collectively used by the company. 60mm mortars are usually used by platoons and placed inside enclosures and courtyards. Light flamethrowers are ordinarily used by platoons (squads) and placed in the defensive works on both sides of the streets and crossroads. Machineguns are ordinarily attached to platoons (squads) and placed on the front edge and flanks of the defensive position, at crossroads, in bunkers, at tunnel entrances, on the first floor of a building and other convenient locations for the delivery of fire power. Machineguns can also be placed in defensive works on the upper floors and roofs of buildings.

All weapons must be closely coordinated to form a fire-net for the delivery of multilayer, flank, oblique, cross, open and cover fire.

D. Construction of defensive works.

The company (platoon) should construct complete defensive works by utilizing and improving available buildings and underground tunnels.

High and strong buildings should be used to construct antiaircraft defensive works from which fire power can be delivered to control the streets and attack enemy aircraft. The elements occupying various floors of buildings should open embrasures and observation holes in the walls according to their mission and plans. Walls, doors and windows used as fire power points should be reinforced and consolidated to prevent them from collapsing.

Communication trenches should be dug to link various buildings, fire points, and front edges and interior areas of the defensive position. Access roads between courtyard, buildings and tunnels should be constructed. If necessary, additional openings to underground passages should be constructed so as to insure that all points above and under the ground are connected with one another, and will facilitate mobility and mutual support.

Underground installations should be fully used as shelters for protection against enemy atomic and chemical attacks. Well camouflaged fire points should be constructed at the following locations: both sides of the roads (streets or lanes) along which enemy infantry troops and tanks must pass, crossroads, street (lane) corners, perimeters of buildings, wall corners, basements and favorable terrain points near tunnel entrances.

Fire-fighting measures should be taken by preparing various kinds of fire-fighting equipment, sand and water. Inflammable installations and buildings should be dismantled or demolished according to instructions from higher headquarters. Wooden floors and staircases should be covered with sand. Wooden parts exposed from sheltered defensive works should be covered with mud.

2. To guard against enemy fire attack.

The company (platoon) commander should conduct a personal inspection of the enemy situation, make a clear and timely judgment of the enemy's

intention and organize strict preparations against enemy atomic, chemical and aircraft and artillery fire attacks. At the same time, the company (platoon) commander should also direct his men to fight whenever the enemy attack occurs. When alerted of atomic or chemical attack, all elements, except for observation personnel, should immediately take shelter in covered emplacements or tunnels. When under attack by enemy aircraft or artillery fire, the weapons elements on duty should occupy air defensive works to fire against low flying enemy aircraft. After the attack, immediate action should be taken to adjust troop deployment, repair defensive works, fight fire, rescue the wounded, clear away collapsed objects which may hinder our troop movement, and get ready for combat. Furthermore, a surprise or harassing action must be conducted to kill enemy troops by taking advantage of favorable conditions of city defense, known enemy pattern of movement, and close coordination with local militia elements.

3. Hold key points and repel enemy assault.

Close combat and street combat are two important actions in city (town) operations. The company (platoon) must utilize favorable terrain features and strong buildings to force the enemy to attack house by house and street by street, and must also fight repeatedly with the enemy even for one point so as to smash the enemy assault with determination.

When enemy tank groups launch an assault against our position, the company (platoon) commander should instruct his antitank weapons and

antitank teams to occupy preselected positions, attack first the tanks which are most dangerous to us, and throw their formations into disarray, and then at the opportune time the antitank teams approach the enemy tank groups and destroy them.

When enemy infantrymen and tanks launch assaults against our position, antitank weapons should be used to deliver fierce fire against the tanks. The antitank elements (teams) should destroy enemy tanks with antitank weapons, explosives and bangalore torpedoes by taking advantage of a slowing down or changing of direction of the tanks. At the same time, fierce and surprise fire power of all weapons must be employed to cut off the connection between enemy infantry troops and tanks, and to decentralize the enemy combat formations. Hand grenades and bayonets should be used to destroy the enemy in front of our defensive position.

When the enemy penetrates our defensive position, we should defend our position heroically and resolutely, and interdict the breach with concentrated fire power so as to prevent enemy follow-up echelons from entering the defensive position. From buildings fire power should also be directed against enemy tanks and troops so as to prevent them from developing in depth. When the enemy formations are still in disarray and the enemy troops are unprepared for combat, the reserve elements should quickly approach the enemy flanks by passing through small lanes or courtyards and launch a sudden counterassault under the support of artillery fire and the elements on both sides of the breach.

When it becomes clear that the enemy intends to decentralize or encircle our defensive strong points, the company (platoon) commander should direct the antitank elements (teams) to occupy positions on both sides of streets or lanes along which enemy tanks must pass. Various kinds of barriers should be constructed in streets or gap areas through which enemy troops may pass. These streets and gap areas should also be blocked by fire power. When enemy troops and tanks approach, the company (platoon) should first destroy the leading tanks so as to obstruct their access passage, kill enemy infantry troops and smash the enemy's encircling tactics. In case the defensive position is encircled by the enemy, the encircled elements must be brave, firm and calm and prepare to fight independently. Immediate action should be taken to adjust troop deployment, concentrate the main force on defense of key points, strengthen antitank measures, block street entrances and doors and windows, and construct barriers so as to prevent the enemy from decentralizing our combat formation and to destroy the enemy in close coordination with adjacent friendly troops. Elite small elements should also be organized to stage an active counterassault against the enemy by taking advantage of darkness and poor visibility. These teams may also attack the enemy and smash his encirclement in coordination with the counterassault launched by higher echelon forces.

4. Hold underground passages and fight independently.

"If there is one person left alive, he should fight persistently under

any difficulties and hardships." When the ground position is occupied by enemy troops, the defending elements should go into underground passages and continue fighting as directed by the higher headquarters.

After entering the underground passages, the company (platoon) should organize its strength and fire power to firmly defend the entrances, and take all preventive measures to prevent the enemy's destroying or blockading them. When enemy troops approach the entrances, fire power should be concentrated on destroying them. When the entrances are blasted, blocked or burned, immediate action should be taken to repair the damage, remove the debris or extinguish the fire. When the entrances are occupied by the enemy, the elements and weapons defending the entrances should be directed to stop the enemy troops from entering the underground passages. Other elements should be directed to sneak out from culverts or under cover of darkness, and strike the enemy from the rear in a surprise attack, and recapture the entrances.

When the higher echelon forces launch their counterassault, the company (platoon) must attack the enemy suddenly and fiercely to recapture the ground position in coordination with these forces.

After the enemy troops are repelled or annihilated, precautionary measures against surprise enemy attacks and successive assaults should be taken during the lull in fighting.

CHARACTERISTICS OF GARRISON COMPANY (PLATOON)
IN ISLAND AND COASTAL DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS

Islands and coastal regions are easier to defend than to attack because of their complicated terrain, changeable weather, and varied tides in different places. When organizing such a defense, the company (platoon) commander, with the support of local people, must set up a military-civilian joint defense. He must also instill in the minds of his men the thought of a long-term defense, independent combat, and resolute destruction of the enemy, and must concentrate the main force for defending key points so as to organize a solid strong point defense. Furthermore, in a determined effort, he should try to stop the enemy at the beaches.

1. Prepare well for a long-term defense.

"With adequate preparation, any situation, however complicated, can be properly handled." After receiving its mission, the company (platoon) must prepare a combat plan, expedite combat mobilization and mobilize the masses to the fullest extent in making long-term defense preparations in accordance with the instructions from higher headquarters and under the leadership of the Party Branch.

A. Strengthen military-civilian joint defense.

A timely joint defense meeting should be duly convoked by the company (platoon) on the basis of peacetime military-civilian joint

defense operations to transmit the orders and instructions from higher headquarters, to study the enemy situation, to prepare a joint defense plan, to strengthen the command of the joint defense and to complete various combat preparations so that there will be a unified command for unified actions.

B. Determine defensive disposition.

The company (platoon) commander should assign some of his men and militia cadres to make a study of the terrain, beach, and tide conditions at various points and to estimate the enemy's capabilities and possible landing area so he can determine the proper defensive disposition of his forces.

The key defensive point should be selected in accordance with the mission and terrain conditions and should be selected in the direction of possible enemy landing. The terrain selected should be conducive to effective control of the enemy key landing area and to independent defense and troop movement so as to insure the defense of our position.

In deploying troops, the company (platoon) should concentrate its main force to defend the key point. The deployment should be circular in form with depth (in coastal defense, the deployment should be extended under concealment in depth), and should include a strong reserve element. The forward strong point is defended by the first echelon platoon. Depending on the terrain features in its sector, the first echelon platoon

may assign some firearms to set up hidden fire points in the vicinity of the high tide line. The company's reserve element should be wholly deployed in the core of the position or part of its strength can also be placed closer to the front. The antitank team (branch) and firearms must be located in the area most threatened by enemy tanks. Militiamen are normally deployed in areas inconvenient for enemy landing and in sectors vulnerable to possible enemy airborne attack.

In fire distribution, the company (platoon) must concentrate its main fire power against the direction and area the enemy vessels are most likely to approach and land. Most of the flat trajectory weapons should be placed in the front and salient part of the main defensive direction, and part of them should be deployed in the heart of the position in concealed terrain where maximum fire power can be developed. Mortars should be placed in depth in concealed terrain where they can control the beach and support the company in combat. Most of the big caliber machineguns and heavy machineguns should be deployed in front of the main direction of defense. The salient part of the shore and exposed reefs nearby may also be utilized to set up fire points. A multilayer fire net for flanking fire, oblique fire and inclined fire may be organized in nearby waters, at the beach, and in our defensive depth. Fire power should be organized to control areas and gaps inconvenient for enemy landing. Furthermore, weapons should also be assigned to cope with enemy air attack.

C. Organization of coordination.

After receiving its mission assignment, the company (platoon) should make careful plans for organizing coordination. Coordination should cover:

(1) Time for flat trajectory artillery to open fire and actions to be taken by each element when waves of enemy landing craft approach the shore.

(2) Actions to be taken by each element for annihilating debarking enemy troops, and resisting the enemy's assault.

(3) Actions to be taken by each element for annihilating the penetrating or airborne enemy troops and for undertaking a counterattack.

(4) Methods for making coordination with the militia and friendly troops.

(5) Fire for adjustment area of the higher headquarters, and coordination with the naval and air force units.

(6) Signals (markings).

D. Construct defensive works and obstacles.

The company (platoon) should organize its elements and the militia forces to construct fire and communication trenches and alternate firing

positions in addition to the already established tunnels and permanent defensive works to form a circular position with trenches as the main support. In nearshore waters where the enemy tanks can land and in areas where the enemy tanks can maneuver easily, submarine mines, floating obstacles, mine field, stone barriers, hand-thrown mines, traps, in-bedded sharpened stakes, wire entanglements, etc. should be set up. All defensive works as well as obstacles should be skillfully camouflaged in accordance with the special features of the terrain.

E. Adopt protective measures.

The company (platoon) should strictly organize a sea and air observation and warning system, assign a duty weapons element, strengthen reconnaissance and security, and adopt protective measures for military personnel and civilians against enemy atomic and chemical attacks, shore fire from enemy warships and fire from enemy aircraft. Efforts should also be made to store sufficient food, ammunition, and water as well as other material and equipment required for combat and for subsisting. Medical and first aid service should also be organized to ensure that our forces can carry out a long and firm defense and accomplish their combat mission.

2. Wipe out the enemy in nearshore waters.

Combat in the water near the beach is a good time to wipe out the enemy but it is also the time the enemy's direct fire is the most

fierce. The company (platoon) should make the most of camouflaged works and tunnels to preserve its effective strength, to strengthen observation and to make a timely estimate of the enemy's intention. If necessary, it should lose no time in directing its subordinate elements to join in combat and to make full use of various weapons to wipe out the enemy in nearshore waters.

A. Open sudden fire to wipe out the enemy in nearshore waters.

When an enemy minesweeper is close to the shore to clear a mine area, artillery on duty will be ordered to fire on it. When a wave of enemy landing ships is approaching our shore, the commander should find out the direction of the enemy's main attack and order the flat trajectory artillery to take its fire position. At the opportune time, he commands firing, first against the landing craft and other landing apparatus which threaten us the most and then other landing craft and equipment. Larger caliber machine guns, heavy machine guns, and expert gunners will be used to kill the enemy's commander, drivers and gunners aboard the landing craft and other landing apparatus. Antiaircraft fire will be used against low-flying aircraft. Infantry and mortars will be commanded to take their firing positions at the proper time and to quickly complete their preparations for combat.

B. Wipe out the enemy on the beach with concentrated fire.

When a large number of enemy troops try to make a forced landing,

the commander should concentrate his flat trajectory artillery first against the enemy's forward landing craft, landing apparatus and tanks and then against the follow-up landing craft waves. Meanwhile, mortars, rifles and machine guns, as well as the hidden fire points in front of the forward positions, will be commanded to make a sudden and fierce assault on the enemy's main landing area, and to kill in large numbers enemy troops who are debarking, fording and landing on the beach. If the situation is favorable, small elements may be used to make an assault, under the cover of our fire power, on the enemy's flanks to destroy them on the beach.

C. Repel the enemy assault.

When the enemy is assaulting our positions, fire power will be first concentrated on annihilating those endangering us the most. Then, fire will be shifted to wipe out the remaining troops one by one. Flat trajectory artillery and antitank teams will be used to destroy enemy tanks. Meanwhile, concentrated rifle, machine gun and mortar fire will be employed to throw the enemy's combat formations into confusion, to cut off the connection between the enemy infantry and tanks, to kill enemy infantrymen in large numbers and to smash the enemy's assault. When the enemy is retreating, pursuing fire will be made immediately to kill them. Meanwhile, preparations will be made against renewed enemy assaults. If the enemy attacks the friendly forces nearby, fire power support will be given them so they can continue their fighting.

D. Coordinate with friendly forces nearby in annihilating enemy airborne troops.

When the enemy is trying to make assault landings from the air, the commander should make an estimate of the enemy's intention, report to higher headquarters and inform friendly forces and militia. Antiaircraft fire will be used to kill the enemy in the air. If the enemy is landing in the vicinity of our positions, part of our strength will be used in coordination with the friendly forces and militia to annihilate the enemy before they are able to secure their landing area.

3. Hold the key points resolutely and fight stubbornly.

Under any serious difficulties, the company (platoon) must take the initiative to organize and use its own strength independently, fight stubbornly, and hold its key points until final victory.

A. Kill the penetrating enemy.

If the enemy penetrates into our forward positions, the company (platoon) should, with the heroic spirit of overwhelming all and yielding to none of the enemy, fight bravely, and with fire power, stop the enemy's development in depth and block the breaches so as to prevent the entry of the enemy's follow-up echelons. When the enemy has suffered heavy casualties and cannot adequately defend himself, the commander, by using darkness or bad weather or with the support of artillery fire

from higher headquarters, should use the reserve element to conduct a fierce counterassault on the enemy's flanks to kill the penetrating enemy and to recover the lost positions.

B. To persistently hold the key positions.

When the company is being decentralized and encircled by the enemy, the commander should swiftly redeploy his troops, concentrate its strength on holding the key points, and by relying on field works, attack the enemy again and again, and in coordination with higher headquarters and the friendly forces, fight hard to smash the enemy's decentralization and encirclement tactics. If the company (platoon) is subject to successive attacks by the enemy, has suffered heavy casualties, and seems unable to hold the ground positions any longer, it may evacuate to the tunnels to continue the fighting according to the orders of higher headquarters or the pre-determined operation plan. When higher headquarters or the friendly forces are conducting a counterassault operation toward the company's direction, it should quickly organize its strength and move out against the enemy in coordination with their attack, so as to annihilate the enemy and recover the lost positions.

CHARACTERISTICS OF COMPANY (PLATOON) COMBAT OPERATIONS IN SEVERELY COLD WEATHER

Severely cold regions are characterized by their low temperatures, strong winds, deep snow, slippery roads, and frozen rivers and ground. Troop mobility, observation, firing, command, coordination activities and construction of field works are unfavorably affected by such conditions during combat operations. In addition, weapons and equipment easily go out of order in cold weather, so maintenance becomes a problem. Preservation of supplies and protection of personnel from frostbite and conservation of body energy are also difficult. For this reason, when fighting in such cold areas, the company (platoon) must strengthen the leadership of the Party branch and political indoctrination and promote the spirit of bravery and combat endurance. Then the company (platoon) can deliberately formulate its combat organization, make good preparations against cold weather conditions and actively destroy the enemy by taking advantage of wind, snow and cold nights.

1. Organize combat in severely cold weather.

After receiving his mission, the company (platoon) commander should actively conduct a detailed on-the-spot inspection and finalize his combat organization. The length of the on-the-spot inspection time should be reduced to the minimum.

In conducting an inspection and observation of the enemy situation and terrain conditions the commander should get as near as possible to his targets. Important terrain features and roads should be inspected on the spot by the commander himself or someone assigned by him. The depth of the snow, thickness of the ice, road conditions, and ice or snow barriers which can be used by both the enemy and our troops should be clearly checked. While attacking, the company should know exactly the location of snow-camouflaged enemy tanks, fire points, field works and obstacles. The attack point is ordinarily selected on the enemy's flank rear area with shallow snow and slight slope and convenient for all elements of various branches to conduct joint operations. The attack point can also be selected in a concealed location with deep snow through which enemy troops will have difficulty passing and where they can be subjected to a surprise attack. In defensive operations, areas convenient for enemy tanks to approach and assault must be found. Key defensive points are ordinarily selected in a terrain with shallow snow and a gentle slope, convenient for enemy tank/infantry assaults. Strong, annular defensive positions should be organized by utilizing natural barriers of snow and ice.

In the deployment of troops, weapons should be primarily attached to lower echelon units (platoons and squads) so as to increase their independent combat capability. Reserve elements should be placed as near the front line as possible to enable them to participate in combat in time. Complex troop movements should be avoided while fighting. In offensive operations,

the elements conducting a surprise attack should be located as near the objective as possible so as to shorten the assault distance. Small elite elements can also be organized to infiltrate into the enemy's flank rear to destroy the enemy in coordination with the main force. A roving security team may also be organized to clear up ice and snow barriers.

2. To construct field works and barriers under frozen conditions.

Under severe cold weather conditions, field works should be constructed by utilizing and improving favorable terrain features so as to reduce the construction time and to save equipment. In an emergency, field works can take the form of dugouts which are partly underground and partly formed of piled-up ice, snow and frozen earth. These works can gradually be improved and deepened when time permits so as to convert them into concealed works which can be used to deliver fire power and provide protection against the cold. The company (platoon) commander should carefully select the locations of field works and then concentrate his main force and equipment to ensure the timely completion of key works. The methods of excavating, exploding, and burning can be used to dig out frozen earth. For the purpose of strengthening the field works, top them with a layer of earth and spray the earth with water, which will later freeze solid. For establishing barriers, ice, snow and favorable terrain features should be used to form ice slopes, snow bunkers and traps which will be arranged in close conjunction with mine fields, barbed wire entanglements and fire

power. When there are rivers in the combat area, explosives can be buried under the ice surface across which enemy troops must pass. When enemy troops approach, the explosives can be set off to obstruct the enemy movement. Field works and barriers should be camouflaged with snow to make them blend in with the natural surroundings.

3. To overcome ice and snow barriers and to improve troop mobility when moving in severely cold weather, the company (platoon) should strengthen its road reconnaissance, carefully choose the proper time to move, and precisely prepare the marching schedule. The load carried by individual soldiers should be reduced to the minimum. Heavy weapons should be towed by sledges. Roads, shallow snow areas, frozen rivers and ditches, and connecting trenches should be well utilized for troop movements. When confronted by ice slopes or dangerous roads which are hard to pass, the company should select concealed detours or reduce its marching speed to cross the area by helping one another. If necessary, roving security teams may be used to open a passage quickly and stealthily. In crossing a river which is frozen over, the commander should check the thickness of the ice and then direct his men to cross quickly.

4. To destroy the enemy by taking advantage of wind and snow conditions.

In offensive operations, the company (platoon) usually stealthily approaches the enemy by taking advantage of wind, snow and cold nights,

and attacks him by penetrating into his position at one point with the main force, or from different directions toward one point. The attack must be a surprise one so as to destroy the enemy troops in field works or in a state of confusion. Small elite elements can also be assigned to reach the enemy's flank rear by passing through deep-snow or hard-to-climb areas so as to disorganize the enemy deployment and destroy enemy troops in coordination with the main strength in a fierce and surprise attack.

In defensive operations in severely cold, snowy and windy weather, the company (platoon) should, according to the instructions from higher headquarters, assign small elite elements to conduct a surprise attack on salient points in the front edge of the enemy position and flanks to capture enemy PWs, kill and wear down enemy troops. At the same time observation and security activities should be strengthened and preventive measures against surprise attacks by enemy tanks and ski forces should be taken. The stronger the snow and wind, and the lower the temperature, the more alert the company (platoon) should be against enemy attack. If necessary, security guards should be dispatched to the roads in front of our position along which enemy troops are sure to pass so as to watch the enemy's movements. When the enemy launches a surprise attack, the company (platoon) commander should, with a brave, steady and calm attitude, direct his men to occupy key points and open sudden fire to stop the enemy troops in deep snow and in front of the ice slopes and extend the period of their

suffering from cold. At the same time, concentrated fierce fire power and short-distance attacks in front of the position should be used to destroy enemy tanks and infantry troops.

5. To strengthen cold protection measures.

For combat operations in severely cold weather, thorough preparations for cold protection must be made to prevent reduction in strength for noncombat reasons, and to keep weapons and equipment in good combat ready condition.

Cold protection for personnel: Fighting in severely cold weather, personnel should be supplied with cold protection equipment. All available materials should be used to make cold protection articles. Clothing regulations must be strictly observed to prevent frostbite and snowblindness. Long periods of exposure in the open should be avoided. While staying in the open, do not lie on the snow or ice to avoid the wetting of clothes, socks and shoes. Hands and feet should be kept moving and the face should be rubbed frequently. When the troops move lightly equipped and clad, special personnel should be assigned to deliver the rest of the equipment and clothes to the appointed location in time. Vehicles should be equipped with canvas tops and wind shielding plates and straws for the floor. Personnel should put on enough clothes. Move the hands and feet frequently. No sleeping is permitted. Heating facilities or some means of keeping warm should be available in underground tunnels and covered works. The

number of personnel on observation and security duty should be reduced by increasing the number of shifts. Food should be well prepared to provide enough calories. Food and water should be kept warm. The water content in field rations should be reduced to the minimum in order to prevent them from freezing too hard.

Maintenance of weapons and equipment should be strengthened. Weapons should be thoroughly cleaned and lubricated with anti-freezing oil. Do not use too much force in operating a weapon. The trigger should be tested before firing. Moisture on optical instruments and compasses should be frequently wiped clean with a dry cloth or towel to keep them in good condition.

Rescue operations should be well implemented. Self-saving and mutual-rescue actions should be effectively carried out. Searching for wounded personnel should be thorough; rescue and evacuation of the wounded should be prompt. While being evacuated, the wounded must be clad, covered with an overcoat or quilt and frequently examined to prevent frostbite.

ADVANCE COMPANY (PLATOON)

The advance element is for protecting the main body against surprise attack when the entire unit is advancing. The company (platoon) assigned as the advance element must keep highly alert, endure fatigue, strengthen reconnaissance, and keep combat ready at all times in order to safeguard the security of the unit (element) it is protecting.

1. To assign mission.

The advance company (platoon) is normally assigned by a regiment or battalion to watch the direction most threatened by the enemy. The distance between the main force and advance element is prescribed by higher command, normally 1 to 2 kilometers at night, and it can be increased while marching in daylight, on vehicles or away from the enemy. The advance company (platoon) can be reinforced with mortars, recoilless rifles, heavy machineguns, company machineguns, engineer troops, a chemical reconnaissance team and communication equipment.

The infantry company (platoon) may be assigned as a front, flank or rear advance element while the main force is marching, or as a flank security element while the main force camps. The main missions of the advance element are: to spot the enemy as quickly as possible, to prevent the enemy from spotting our forces, and to safeguard the main force from a surprise enemy attack or pursuit. Upon encountering the enemy, the

advance elements should shield the main force so that it can easily deploy and enter into combat. The advance company (platoon) should check road conditions and mark the direction of march. If possible, the company should also repair damaged roads and bridges. The rear guard company (platoon) should, according to instructions from higher command, destroy roads and bridges, establish barriers, remove road markers and shield the movement of the main force. The advance company (platoon) in charge of flank security of the main force should occupy and hold the selected positions according to the prescribed time schedule to cover the main force when it is passing. Then the company (platoon) should follow the main force along the prescribed routes.

2. Preparations for marching.

"With proper preparation, various kinds of complex situations can be properly met." In an emergency situation, the advance company (platoon) should make preparations while marching. Under normal conditions, the following work should be done:

A. To determine troop deployment.

After receiving its mission, the advance company (platoon) should call a party branch committee meeting, assign missions, study the enemy situation and the terrain conditions of the march route and estimate the possible areas where the enemy may be encountered. At the same time, the advance company (platoon) should also prepare an action plan for dealing

with the enemy when encountering him, decide on the march formation and organize security elements.

The march formation of an advance company (platoon) is organized according to the enemy situation, mission and road conditions. The formation should enable the elements to swiftly deploy and enter into combat on short notice. The advance company (platoon) should assign an advance squad to the front of the company. Flank guard squads or scouting squads should also be assigned when the situation so requires. The company commander should lead antitank weapons, machineguns, engineer elements and the chemical reconnaissance team in front of the main body. Mortars follow the main body in the rear (See Chart). When marching away from the enemy, the advance company will march in the reverse order (as a rear guard element).

B. Mission assignment.

When assigning mission the advance company commander should point out:

- (1) Enemy location, and activities and possible area of encounter.
- (2) Company (platoon) mission, march routes, distance, time of departure and arrival, areas for regrouping and long rest periods.
- (3) Areas of activities of the forward reconnaissance element, local armed elements and militia elements, and method of liaison with them.

(4) March order and missions of various elements.

(5) Organization and mission of advance squads.

(6) Possible situations to be encountered during marching, and actions of various elements.

(7) Communications and signals.

After the assignment of mission, the company (platoon) commander should carry out mobilization, supervise and inspect the march preparation of various elements, and report the situation to higher headquarters.

3. To command the march.

While marching, the company (platoon) commander should investigate the enemy situation, terrain, and the conditions of roads, bridges and villages. The march direction should be properly oriented and marked by asking guides to lead the way or following a map. The advance company commander should keep constant contact with higher headquarters and the advance squads.

When passing through residential areas, forests, roads, bridges, defiles and ferry points where there is reason to believe enemy force may be hiding, advance squads or additional scouting teams should be assigned to reconnoiter these places to prevent surprise enemy attacks. Reconnaissance should be conducted quietly and quickly so as to avoid any delay

in the movement of the main force.

When confronting enemy reconnaissance or harassing troops, the advance squads should be directed to move surreptitiously to kill or to capture the enemy. When encountering the enemy's main body, direct all the elements to deploy immediately, capture favorable terrain points, actively attack the enemy and delay the enemy movement so as to safeguard the deployment of our main force for entering into combat. At the same time the situation should be promptly checked out and reported to higher headquarters.

When encountering damaged roads and bridges, minefields and contaminated areas, promptly check them out under the cover of security guards and weapons, and with the support of local militia elements and populace, overcome these hazards or make a detour to avoid these areas. When crossing a river, the width, water depth, current velocity, bottom conditions, fordable locations and bank conditions of the river must be checked out and reported to higher headquarters. These conditions should be indicated with markings or personnel left behind to relay this data.

When receiving orders for a long rest from higher headquarters, the commander should have advance squads, scouting teams and weapons on duty occupy favorable terrain points and assign observation personnel to strengthen both ground and air observation activities. The rest of the elements should disperse and rest themselves in the designated area

but should be prepared for combat at any time. The commander should use all available time to investigate the enemy situation, terrain and road conditions, and rotate advance squads and road guides on schedule.

After arriving at the designated area, the advance company (platoon) should immediately occupy favorable terrain points and ensure that all protected units (elements) can safely enter the camp area. The advance company (platoon) will not enter the camp to rest until so instructed by higher headquarters.

The company (platoon) in charge of flank security should stealthily move to the designated area, occupy favorable terrain points, conduct observation, prepare fire power, and prepare field works and camouflage. If attacked by the enemy by surprise, the company (platoon) should actively kill the enemy and defend the positions so as to safeguard the passage of the main force. The company (platoon) then can withdraw according to orders from higher headquarters or the prearranged plan.

If the rear guard company (platoon) is pursued by the enemy, its elements should cover each other while moving to favorable positions, and withdraw while fighting. Under the instruction of higher headquarters and in coordination with local militia elements, the company (platoon) should destroy roads and bridges, construct barriers and lay mines to obstruct enemy tanks and motorized infantry troops. After the main force safely passes through, the advance company should quickly disengage the enemy and

follow the main force in a march formation, or advance along the routes designated by higher headquarters.

INFANTRY (PLATOON) MARCH AND CAMPING

During marching and camping, the company (platoon) should be on the alert, step up reconnaissance, security and command liaison, pay attention to camouflage, and strictly prevent surprise enemy attacks. It is important to promote the spirit of withstanding hardship and being able to endure, to arrive at the designated place on time, and to insure that various elements can rest in safety and quickly enter into combat.

MARCHING

Every marching action is for the purpose of fighting. A march is made to transfer strength, to gain the initiative and to make an organized movement to a designated area, and is usually carried out under cover of darkness or poor visibility. There are two categories of march: regular and forced. The speed of march depends on the enemy situation, and mission, road conditions, the weather and season, etc. In a regular march, the normal speed of soldiers on foot is four to five kilometers per hour. If the soldiers are riding on vehicles, the normal speed is 15 - 20 kilometers per hour at night, and 20 - 25 kilometers during the day. A forced march is conducted by either increasing the speed of march or extending the time of march.

1. Organization and preparation for a march.

After receiving its mission, the company (platoon) should complete

all preparations before the march starts. In case of emergency, preparations will be made while marching.

A. Assign missions and conduct mobilization.

After receiving march orders, the company should convene a meeting of the Party branch committee to transmit the march order of the higher command and its own mission, to study the enemy situation, our routes of march and the situation of the terrain along the roads; to specify the order of march, to prepare plans to meet different situations and to assign tasks to cadres.

Political mobilization must be carried out thoroughly among the elements so as to stimulate the troops' morale, to instill in them the revolutionary spirit of fearing neither hardship nor death and to insure completion of the military mission.

B. To assign mission of march.

The following should be specified when assigning mission of march:

- (1) Enemy situation.
- (2) Its own mission, route of march, distance, locations of bivouac and rest, time of departure and time of arrival.
- (3) Uniform to wear, assembly point and march order.

(4) Time required for preparing march.

(5) Command and liaison signals; identification markings and passwords at night.

When marching independently, the company (platoon) should organize an advance squad and a reconnaissance team, assign them missions, and specify their routes of movement, distance from the main body, area where the enemy may be encountered, and actions to be taken when encountering the enemy.

C. To organize march security.

After assigning the mission, the company commander (platoon leader) should organize march security.

Assign observers and duty anti-aircraft weapons, and specify actions to be taken by the various elements when being attacked by enemy aircraft, artillery, atomic and chemical weapons as well as tanks.

A collecting team should be organized, usually with one cadre and several medics and strong enlisted men to collect the wounded, the sick and stragglers.

Before departure, the company commander (platoon leader) should inspect the various elements to insure that proper preparations have been made for their rations, drinking water, weapons, ammunition, equipment, clothing and necessary anti-sunstroke, anti-frostbite and anti-epidemic

medicines. He should also make arrangements to take care of the sick and the wounded, inspect troop discipline, hire a good road guide and make a report to higher headquarters about these preparations.

D. Organization of bivouac.

When marching independently and there is no fear of enemy attack, a camping-team may be dispatched, which is usually composed of the first sergeant (or a supply man), a messenger and cooks. This camping team should start earlier than the rest of the unit to prepare food, fuel, vegetables, drinking water; to investigate local and epidemic situation; to divide and assign camping areas for the platoons and the squads; to dispatch men to guide the various elements to the camping area, and to report to the company commander about the general camping situation.

2. The command of march.

During marching, the company commander (platoon leader) should be kept well informed about the enemy situation, the terrain along the way and the road conditions. He should timely organize the various elements to overcome the difficulties and to move swiftly and stealthily to the assigned area following the road designated by higher headquarters.

A. To assemble and depart on schedule; to maintain the march order.

The assembly area should be selected at a suitable location in the direction of advance. The company commander (platoon leader) should

arrive at the assembly area first. Upon his arrival, he should send out security guards and make an inspection of personnel, arms, material, clothing, camouflage, etc. Then he will lead his elements to the point of departure as scheduled. When marching on the highway or village roads, the unit will proceed along one side or two sides of the road in a single column or two columns. The company commander (platoon leader) usually marches in front of the main body. During the march, efforts should be made to promote mutual assistance among the troops, raise the troops' morale, and obey the orders of the sentries. Without permission from higher headquarters, do not pass the elements marching ahead. Let vehicles and special duty elements pass through.

B. Maintain the march route, marching speed and distance.

During march, the company (platoon) should use road guides, get help from local residents, utilize a compass in deciding the azimuth or proceed with maps, etc. so as to maintain the march route, marching speed and distance. At the beginning of the march, first proceed at a relatively slow speed and later assume the regular marching speed. In case of losing the way or taking the wrong direction, stop the march immediately, and resume marching after having ascertained the correct route and direction. When falling behind, catch up with the main unit in double time. If several units pass through a ferry point, bridge, defile or crossroad at the same time, the company commander (platoon leader) should personally take command to avoid congestion and proceeding in the wrong direction.

After passing, the lead elements should slow down their speed to give those in the rear time to catch up without overtiring themselves.

C. Rest and discipline.

Whether to take a long rest or just a short break period is determined by higher headquarters. During a short break, the elements should stay at the roadsides and maintain their original formations. At the first break, the commander should have his men adjust their shoes, socks and other personal equipment. Usually, a longer rest period is allowed after marching one half of the distance set for the day. In the long rest all the men will leave the road and enter a designated resting area, but they must maintain combat readiness and should be able to continue marching immediately. A long rest is usually about two to three hours. When taking a long rest, post security guards, designate an assembly point and a dispersal area, and direct the various elements to prepare meals. When necessary, the company may occupy favorable terrain nearby and assign antiaircraft and antitank weapons to take up their positions and be ready for enemy ground or air attacks.

While marching, strict discipline and military security should be maintained. During night marching, illumination and fires should be strictly controlled, and everyone should maintain silence. During breaks, no one may leave the area on his own and everyone must keep his weapon and equipment with him. When resuming the march, make an accurate head count and a thorough check of men, ammunition, equipment, material

and general articles in order to avoid losses.

3. Motorized march.

A. March preparation.

When assigning missions, emphasize the following: distribution of vehicles, march order, vehicle speed and distance, basic load of ammunition, POL and provisions, vehicle refueling methods, location of the higher headquarters vehicle repair team in the marching column and the procedures for requesting repair service. Each vehicle is assigned a vehicle commander and an observer (signal liaison). When the company is marching alone, an advance vehicle should be assigned. Usually its distance from the main body is one to two kilometers at night and two to four kilometers during the day.

Before departure, carefully check the condition of vehicles, POL required, spare parts, tools, equipment to overcome obstacles, and camouflage for vehicles. When marching in winter time, inspect all vehicles to see that their anti-skid apparatus and heating equipment are in good order. If time permits, dry runs on boarding vehicles should be conducted.

B. Command of march.

While marching, vehicles should maintain the proper speed and interval. Without proper authorization, no vehicle may pass another or stop.

If one vehicle is out of commission, it should stop along the roadside. The driver assigned to the vehicle may fix it or the vehicle repair team may be asked to make hasty repairs. Those riding on the vehicle will get off and take a rest in a concealed place, or occupy favorable terrain nearby and be ready for combat. After the vehicle is repaired, it should rejoin its own convoy or join the convoy of another unit and proceed to the next resting point of its own unit. If the road is wide enough and approval is obtained from the higher command, it may pass the other vehicles and return to its own unit as soon as possible. In case the vehicle is beyond repair, the higher command may be requested to dispatch another one to replace it. Or the men riding on the vehicle may be split up and assigned to other vehicles to continue the march. During marching on vehicles, the company (platoon) should obey the orders of the sentries, and give way to the command, signal or medical vehicles.

After marching for two to three hours, a short 20 to 30 minute rest should be taken. During the short break, the vehicles should stop at the right side of the road. Observer, guards and duty weapons should be posted. Drivers should be organized to inspect the vehicles. Men riding on the vehicles should get off according to the prescribed signal and take a rest in concealed places. It is strictly prohibited to loiter on the highways.

After completing one half of the distance for the day, a favorable location may be selected for a longer period of rest, usually one and

a half to two hours. During the long period of rest, observer and guards should be posted. The commander should assemble the vehicle leaders to inspect the concealed areas of dispersal for vehicles and men, and the vehicle entry and exit roads, and to prepare a vehicle boarding schedule. Meanwhile, the vehicle leaders should supervise the drivers to check their vehicles and have a good rest.

If there is an air raid during the march, the commander should direct the vehicles either to leave the road quickly and to disperse and take cover according to the actual situation, or to lengthen the interval between vehicles. The vehicles will be parked at the roadside and all the men on the vehicles will get off the vehicles, disperse and take cover quickly. According to the actual situation, fire will be organized to shoot down low-flying enemy aircraft. If the mission is urgent, the interval between vehicles will be lengthened and fire power organized to fire while moving, and speed accelerated.

4. Marching in complicated terrain and adverse weather.

To march in the woods of a mountain area, special attention should be paid to strengthening observation, guard and security duties. When passing through a mountain pass or up or down a slope, slow down the marching speed. If vehicles are used, the distance between vehicles should be increased. When passing through a difficult or dangerous area, command should be emphasized and strengthened. When marching in a forest, special attention should be paid to anti-fire measures, and

marching distance should be shortened. Command and communication should be strengthened to avoid stragglers. If the concealment is good, daytime march can be organized. If marching in tropical woods, efforts should be made to march along the road and the mountain ridge. If there is no road available, move according to the set azimuth. Post road markers to indicate the route of march. Furthermore, organize a roving security team to open roads, and also adopt measures against sickness, sunstroke and poisonous insects.

When marching in a desert, special attention should be given to controlling the direction of march and maintaining communication. If no clear road is available, move according to the set azimuth. When encountering a sandstorm, take shelter in a covered terrain and wait until the storm is over. The basic carrying load of rations and water should be increased and water consuming standards set up when marching in the desert.

To march on a plateau and in excessively cold areas, countermeasures against freezing and skidding should be taken. Tools and equipment for overcoming ice and snow should also be prepared. The marching speed should be reduced and the number of short breaks should be increased. However, the break period itself should not be too long. To lie down on the ground is absolutely prohibited. If riding on vehicles, everyone should get off and take a walk or exercise to avoid frostbite. When walking on snow-covered ground under sunny skies, goggles should be worn to avoid becoming snow-blind.

In summer, it is best to march at night or in the early morning or late evening hours. An adequate supply of boiled water and anti-sun-stroke medicine should be carried. More short breaks are required to avoid sunstroke.

CAMPING

Camping is necessary for the troops to get proper rest and an opportunity to reorganize, and to prepare for continuing the march and for participating in combat. Camping is usually conducted in two ways: bivouacking and billeting. The camping site of the company (platoon) is decided by the higher command. The area selected should have good terrain and an abundant water source and be far away from any infectious disease area. For motorized elements, the area should have good entry and exit roads.

At the time of camping, favorable terrain should be utilized and the troops dispersed with squad and platoon as the basic unit. If conditions permit, tents or grass mat shelters could be set up. In summertime, the camping site should be away from areas which are apt to be flooded during heavy rain. In winter, the camping site should not be too windy. It should face south and be easy to camouflage. If it is in a mountain area, it should best be away from landslide areas. In a grass plain or a desert, it should not be selected in a windy direction. If the troops are quartered in billets, the allocation of

billets should be done according to the table of organization, and the billeting area should be convenient for assembly and movement.

1. Command and control of camping.

In setting up a camping site, the commander should clearly specify the job of each element so that the work can be accomplished quickly and in good order so that the men can rest as quickly as possible.

A. To organize reconnaissance and security.

If there is any danger of enemy presence in the area, the company (platoon) should make a reconnaissance of the projected site before entering it so as to ensure unit security. The water source should be inspected and guarded. After entering the camping area, post security guards and designate duty antiaircraft or antitank weapons. Based on instructions of higher headquarters, a sentry squad, sentries, roving sentries and hidden sentries will be dispatched to the direction threatened by enemy forces. The company commander (platoon leader) should call the platoon or squad leaders concerned together to make a reconnaissance of the terrain around the camping area; to study and prepare combat plans against a sudden enemy atomic, chemical, air or tank attack, to divide the air defense zone; to assign an emergency assembly area and alternate assembly area; and to organize the men to construct and to camouflage necessary field works.

When a motorized element is camping, its vehicles should be dispersed, covered and camouflaged. Vehicle shelters will be dug if required. Security for the vehicles should be strengthened. Drivers shall be organized to make emergency repairs of vehicles and to add fuel and water to the vehicles. When camping in excessively cold areas and antifreeze is not available, the vehicles should be started periodically to keep the engines warm or the water in the radiators drained out to keep the radiators from freezing.

B. To submit a camping report.

After camping, the company commander (platoon leader) should quickly submit a camping report to higher headquarters. The contents of this report should include:

(1) Time and location of departure and arrival, number of personnel, schedule, etc.

(2) The present state of weapons, ammunition, equipment, materiel, provisions and vehicles.

(3) Camping setup, emergency assembly ground, as well as the number and locations of security guards and the main direction they are guarding.

(4) Ideological status of the various elements.

(5) Problems existing and the problems submitted to higher headquarters for solution.

The company commander (platoon leader) should take time out to give a brief review to the troops on the march of that day.

C. Rest organization and living management.

The cadres should go among the squad and platoon members to better understand their problems and to give them assistance, such as showing them how to warm their feet in hot water, to pierce the blisters on their feet, to arrange their equipment, to fix their shoes and socks, to dry up their wet clothing, to dig straddle trenches, and to find time to rest. In wintertime, precautions should be taken to avoid accidents caused by fire and gas poisoning. Body areas affected by frostbite should be washed and treated with application of snow and cold water; never use fire or hot water to warm the affected places. When camping in excessively cold areas, two men should share one bed. They should cover themselves with a cotton coverlet and overcoat, wear hats with the ear flap down, cotton trousers, and socks and hold each other's feet to keep warm. If the camping site is in tropical bush land, bamboo and wood will be used to make a bed above the ground. Mosquito nets will be hung up. The grass and weeds in front of the gate of the camping site and around the tent should be extirpated. Ashes of burnt grass or wood will be spread on the ground to guard against moisture and poisonous insects. Be careful about food sanitation. If drinking water is taken from a river, the place where the drinking water is drawn and the place for bathing should be kept separate. Food should be planned and prepared so as to maintain the men's health.

D. Investigate the local social situation, support the local government and love the local people.

After camping, the company (platoon) should make a timely contact with local militia, ask the local government about the local social situation, and seriously implement the "three main rules of discipline and the eight points for attention" and step up the activities of "support the local government and love the people." Other actions required include propaganda to the people, blockade of information, precautions against spies, safeguarding of security, assisting the training of militia and helping the people with their work. Before leaving the camping site, examine the troops' discipline, return all articles borrowed from the people, and fill in all latrines. Make sure everything is done in a way that meets sanitation standards. Lastly, fill all the water cisterns with water.

2. Disposition of situation.

After camping has been set up, air defense discipline should be strictly observed. Camouflage should be properly accomplished. The activities of the men outside the camping site should be controlled as should the use of lights at night. In case of an enemy air raid, the air observation guards should immediately send out a warning. The various elements should quickly go to their dispersal areas and take cover. The anti-aircraft weapons on duty will render the fiercest fire power against low-flying enemy aircraft.

In case of a sudden attack by enemy tank or infantry elements, the commander should be "brave, firm and unmoved," and quickly direct the various elements to take their positions in field works and key points, and to fight stubbornly, and with the assistance of the militia, resolutely defeat and annihilate the enemy.

If enemy airborne troops are found to have landed in the vicinity of our camping area, report to higher headquarters immediately, and with the assistance of the militia, quickly rush to the scene and occupy key points. Before the enemy troops are able to secure the landing area, fiercely attack and destroy them.

SENTRY COMPANY (PLATOON)

The sentry company (platoon) is the company (platoon) in charge of camp security for the main force. In executing this mission, the company (platoon) must take an overall view of the situation, maintain high alertness, formulate a deliberate security plan, make complete combat preparations, and take proper action to cope with various situations that may occur for the purpose of safeguarding the unit (element) in camping or bivouacking.

1. Dispatch and Mission of a Sentry Company (platoon).

A sentry company (platoon) is dispatched by the sentry battalion or by the encamping regiment (battalion). The distance from the sentry element to the main force in camp is based on the enemy situation, terrain conditions and mission, normally 4 to 6 kilometers. The width of the security zone is approximately three kilometers for a company and 1.5 kilometers for a platoon but may be reduced where dictated by the terrain and poor visibility.

The mission of the sentry company (platoon) is to spot the enemy in time and prevent a surprise enemy attack so as to insure that the encamping unit (element) can rest safely, enter combat in an orderly manner or withdraw in time. The sentry company (platoon) can be reinforced by mortars, recoilless rifles, heavy machineguns, additional rifles, light flamethrowers and communication equipment.

2. Deployment of A Sentry Company (Platoon).

The sentry company (platoon) should be deployed in the direction from which the enemy may possibly launch surprise attacks. Its security area is normally assigned by higher headquarters. The company (platoon) should, within its security area, first select favorable terrain points which are easy to defend, easy to conceal and facilitate withdrawal, and then deploy its troops and organize its fire power according to the principle of concentrating strength to defend key points (See Chart).

Fire power should be organized according to mission, terrain conditions and capacity of weapons. Fire power will be concentrated to control both the areas which are convenient for the enemy to approach and the flanks. Furthermore, the fire power should be flexible enough to support the combat actions of various sentry squads. Antitank weapons should also be deployed in the direction from which enemy tanks are most likely to attack.

Foxholes and fire positions for weapons are normally constructed within the security area. Barriers to obstruct enemy tanks and infantry troops will be set up in key sectors. Field works in the security area will be improved gradually when the period of the security mission is of long duration.

3. Good Preparation for Duty Execution.

When a company's (platoon's) mission is about to shift from march security to camp security, the commander should brief his platoon (squad) leaders on the mission while still marching. He should also instruct his men to enter the designated area in original march order and prepare a security plan. If the sentry company (platoon) is dispatched by an encamping unit (elements), the company (platoon) commander, upon receiving his mission, should brief his men on the mission, begin mobilization, make preparations for duty execution and submit a report to higher headquarters upon completion of preparations.

A. To enter security area.

The company (platoon) should rapidly and quietly enter the security zone at the time prescribed by higher headquarters under cover of the patrol or advance squad. Upon arrival, the company commander should dispatch observers, appoint duty weapons and assign forward and flank security guards. The rest of the men should take shelter to wait for orders and prepare for combat.

B. To conduct on-the-spot inspection and to specify mission.

When leading the platoon (squad) leaders to conduct an on-the-spot inspection, the company commander (platoon leader) should determine the azimuth and landmarks, brief his men on the enemy situation, delineate security sectors for various elements, point out the locations of friendly forces and forward observers, check out the activities of local

militia, investigate the terrain and road conditions in the security zone and study the security sectors and fire positions of various elements.

The company (platoon) should call a Party branch meeting to determine the combat plan, seek ideological unity and specify the functions of cadres based on the result of the on-the-spot inspection and study of security disposition. Then the commander assigns missions to various elements. The following items should be included in the assignment of missions:

- (1) Location of company's (platoon's) security position, main security direction and security zone.

- (2) Each platoon's (squad's) security position, mission, points of concentrated fire power, location of basic fire position and alternate fire position and fire boundary and supplementary fire boundary, security measures of flanks and the methods for supporting the sentry squads in combat.

- (3) Disposition of direct security and the scope of the security zone (direction).

- (4) Locations of field works and barriers to be constructed and their construction methods and time of completion.

- (5) Combat plan upon discovery of enemy troops and preventive measures against air, atomic and chemical attacks.

(6) Location of command post and liaison signals (markings).

C. Organization and Dispatch of Direct Security.

The company (platoon) commander should personally dispatch sentry elements for direct security. Sentry squads or sentry teams should be placed at locations in the front and flank areas such as key terrain points and roads along which the enemy may approach. Hidden sentry guards should be placed at concealed locations convenient for the enemy to approach, roving sentry guards should be placed inside (outside) the security line and observers should be placed at camp sites. In addition, reconnaissance squads should be assigned to watch the direction from which the enemy may approach. The following information should be included in the mission assignment to the sentry squads, sentry teams, hidden sentry guards and roving sentry guards: enemy situation, mission, security position, areas in which forward observers operate, returning routes and time, liaison methods, location of adjacent sentry posts and withdrawing routes and signals (markings).

After assigning security elements their missions, the company (platoon) commander should prepare a security disposition chart and submit it to higher headquarters.

4. Actions for Coping with Various Situations.

After completion of field works construction and combat preparations,

the men should take a rest except for observers, duty weapons and duty elements who will remain in their positions. Cadres should take turns checking guards on duty, should arrange a shift schedule for the guards and be ready to cope with any situation that may arise.

When the enemy conducts air attacks, antiaircraft weapons on duty should be instructed to fire at low-flying enemy aircraft while the other elements should take shelter and prepare for combat. Upon discovering any indication of impending enemy airborne operations in our security zone, the company (platoon) commander should promptly report the situation to higher headquarters and local armed elements and strengthen observation. When enemy airborne troops are landing in the vicinity of our security position, the company (platoon) commander should immediately report the matter to higher headquarters and try to destroy the enemy airborne troops in the air or as soon as they hit the ground, when they are unprepared for combat, in coordination with friendly forces.

When discovering small enemy groups or observation personnel entering our security area, the company (platoon) commander should immediately report the situation to higher headquarters. At the same time, according to the number of enemy infiltrators, small details or infantry squads may be assigned to attack the enemy's flank rear and to capture or annihilate them with fierce and sudden action.

When the enemy launches surprise attacks against our direct security

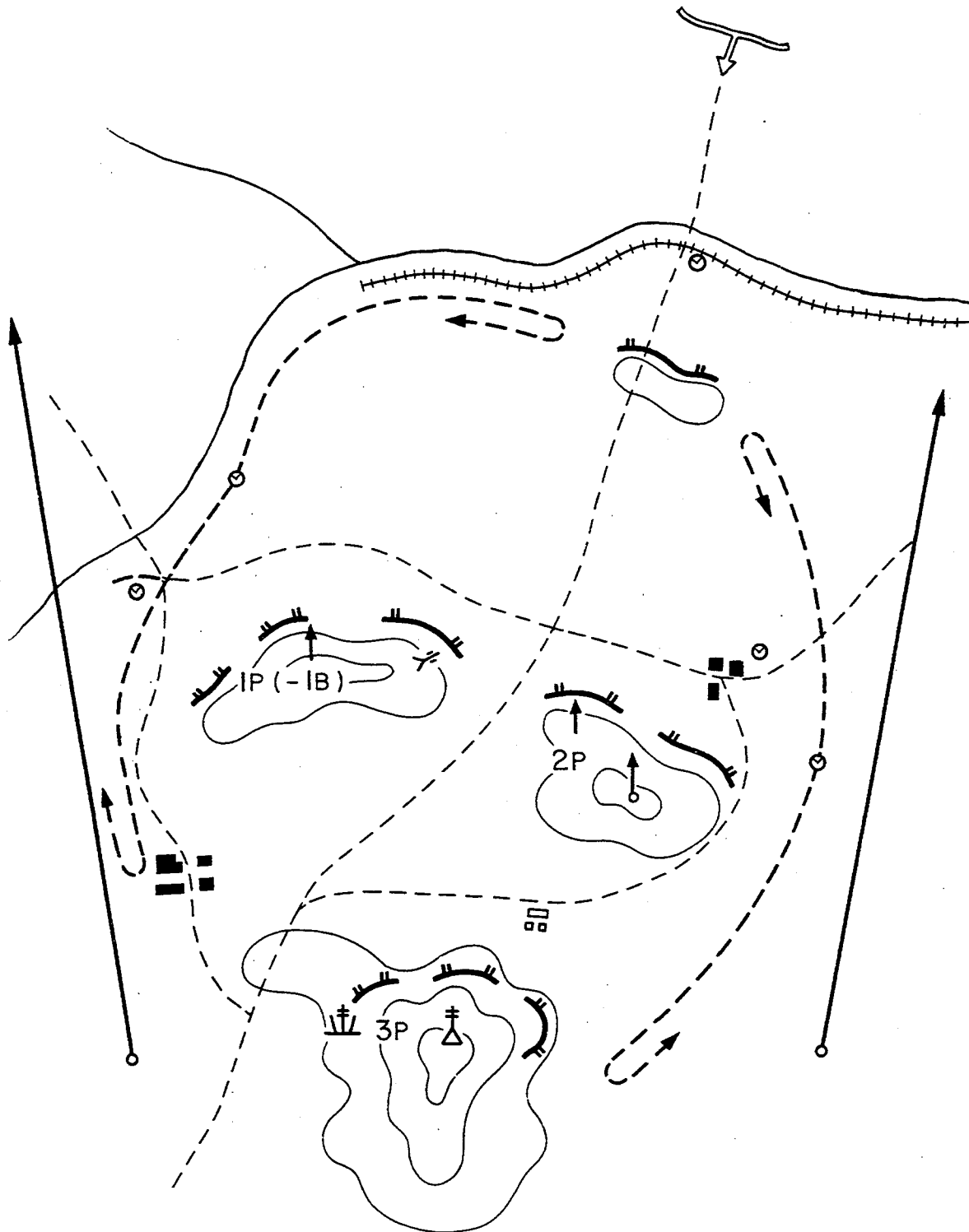
elements or guards, the company (platoon) commander should learn the enemy's intentions as soon as possible and report the situation to higher headquarters. At the same time, the various elements should immediately occupy their positions to support the combat of the direct security elements or guards. The direct security element may withdraw if the situation so demands.

When the enemy attacks the security position of the sentry company (platoon), the situation must be promptly reported to higher headquarters. At the same time the elements defending the position should put up stiff resistance, kill the enemy troops, deplete the enemy's strength and delay enemy action to give the main force time to enter into combat or move away safely.

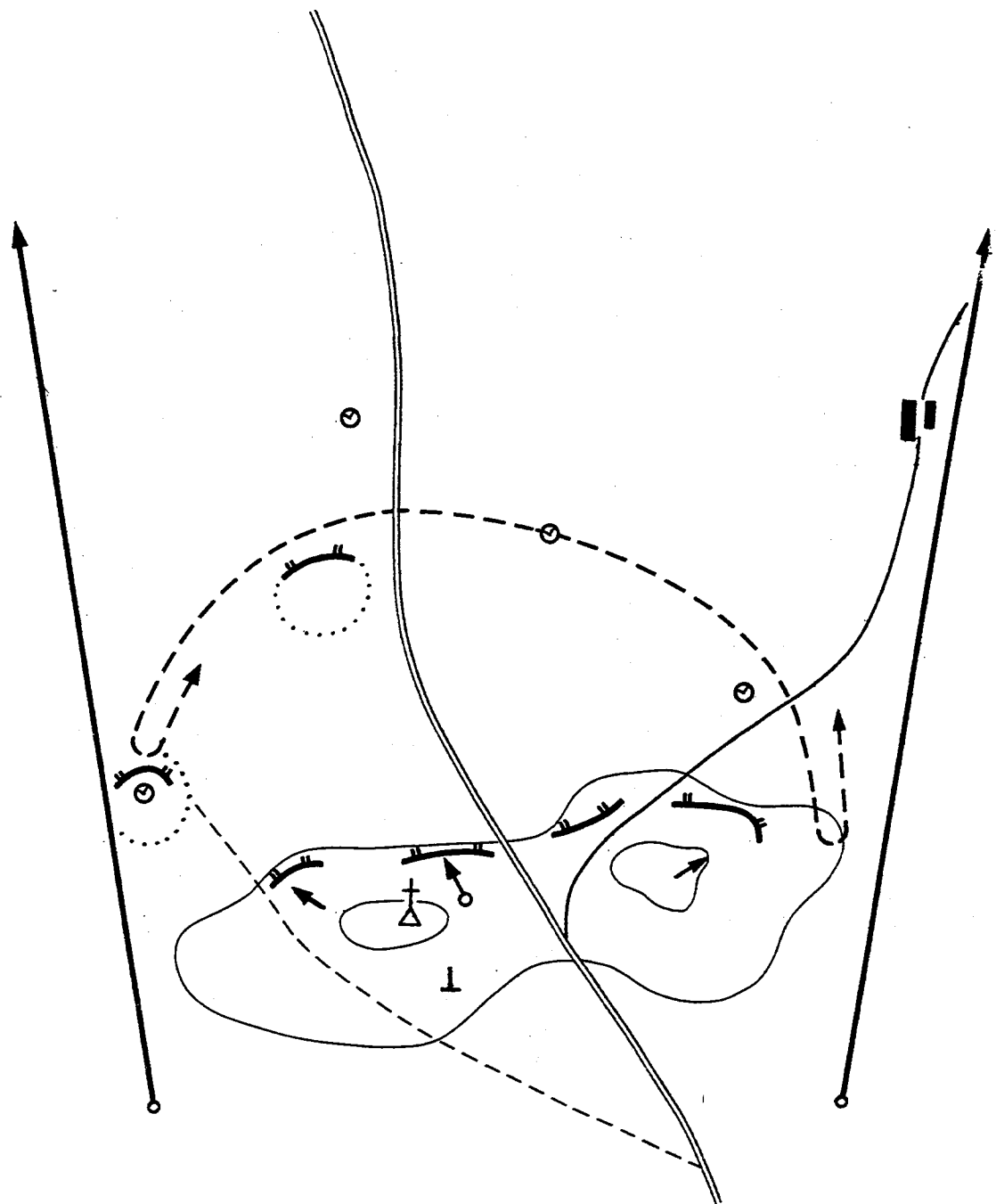
5. Actions for Withdrawal from Security Position.

When withdrawing from its security position according to instruction from higher headquarters or the prearranged plan, the company (platoon) must specify and pass the following information to the elements: time, sequence and routes of withdrawal, assembly area, methods of mutual support, signals (markings), and measures for flank security. Before withdrawing, the plan should be strictly kept secret by strengthening camouflage and maintaining regular activities. If there are local armed elements, a plan for withdrawing them should be jointly made. During withdrawal, the company (platoon) commander should oversee the withdrawal

of his forces with a calm and decisive attitude under the shield of cover elements or artillery fire. If withdrawing at night, the troops must maintain complete silence. Before withdrawing, the company (platoon) commander should assign someone to go with the element which withdraws last from the combat area. After that element withdraws to the designated area, that person should report back to the commander by whom he was assigned.



Sample of Deployment of a Sentry Company



Sample of Deployment of a Sentry Platoon

步兵分队 班以下战术教材

毛主席语录

全党都要注重战争，学习军事，准备打仗。

(内部试用)

要发扬我军近战、夜战的优良传统。

练兵方法，应开展官教兵、兵教官、兵教兵的群众练兵运动。

中国人民解放军总参谋部军训部

一九七三年三月

说 明

为了适应部队军事训练的需要，我们在各军区编写战术教材的基础上，汇编了步兵连以下战术教材，分连(排)和班以下课题两本装订，现印发试用。各部队在训练中，可根据本地区特点和需要补充。由于编写时间仓促，教材中难免有一些问题和缺点，望各部队在实践中，不断总结经验，提出修改意见。

总参谋部军训部

一九七三年三月

进攻战斗中的战士

战士在进攻战斗中，必须贯彻近战歼敌的思想，具有一往无前的精神，灵活地利用地形地物，迅速隐蔽地接近敌人，坚决勇猛地冲击，以抵近射击、手榴弹、爆破、白刃格斗消灭敌人。

一、利用地形地物

利用地形地物的目的在于“**隐蔽身体，发扬火力**”，只有充分地发扬火力，消灭敌人，才能有效地保存自己。因此，在利用地形地物时，应首先着眼于发扬火力。

(一) 什么是地形地物

地形，是地貌和地物的总称。地貌是地面高低起伏的状态，如山地、平原、凹地等。地物是地面上的固定物体，如居民地、道路、土堆、江河、树木等。

(二) 利用地形地物的要求

战士利用地形地物时，应做到：便于观察、射击、隐蔽身体；不妨碍班（组）长指挥、火器射击和邻兵动作；不要几个人拥挤在一起，以免增大伤亡；尽量避开独立、明显的物体和难以通行的地方。

(三) 利用地形地物的方法

利用地形地物时，应根据敌情和遮蔽物的高低取适当姿势，隐蔽迅速地接近，由下而上地占领，隐蔽地观察、出枪。对不利于射击的位置，应加以改造。在一地不要停留过久，视情况灵活地变换位置。

坟包、土堆：通常利用右侧作射击依托（图1）。视情况可利用顶端或左侧。

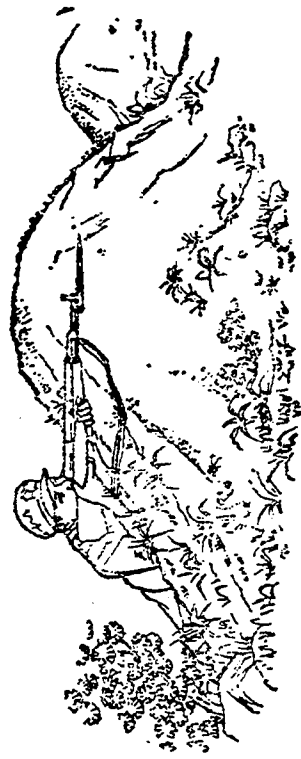


图1 卧姿利用坟包

田埂、堤坎：横向的利用背敌斜面，纵向的通常利用弯曲部或顶端一侧，依其高度取适当姿势（图2、3）。堤坎高于人体时，应挖踏脚孔或阶梯。



图2 卧姿利用田埂

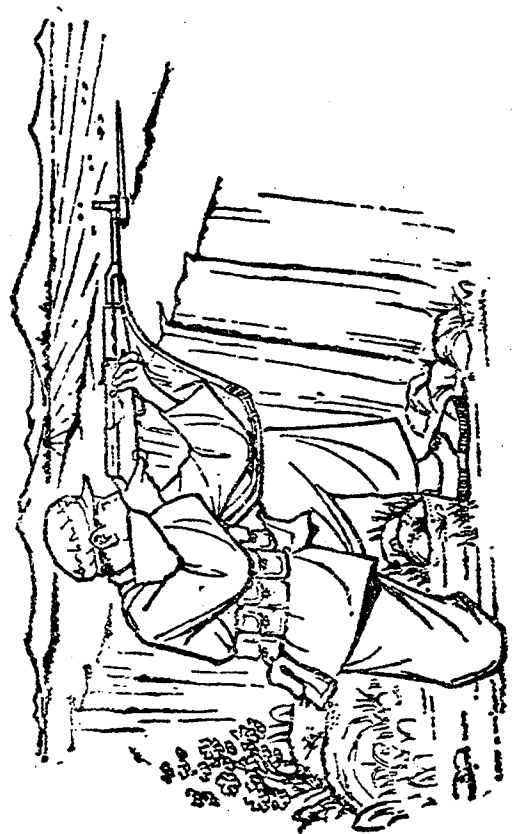


图3 跪姿利用堤坎

土坑、弹坑：按其大小、深度，以跳、滚、匍匐等方法进入，利用前切面，取适当姿势（图4）。



图4 利用土坑

树木：利用大树可取各种射击姿势，较小的树通常采取卧姿。如取立姿时，应尽量将身体左侧和左大臂或左小臂和左膝紧靠树木右侧，右脚稍向后蹬，进行射击（图5）。如用卧姿，应将左小臂紧靠树木右侧或以树的根部作依托（图6）。

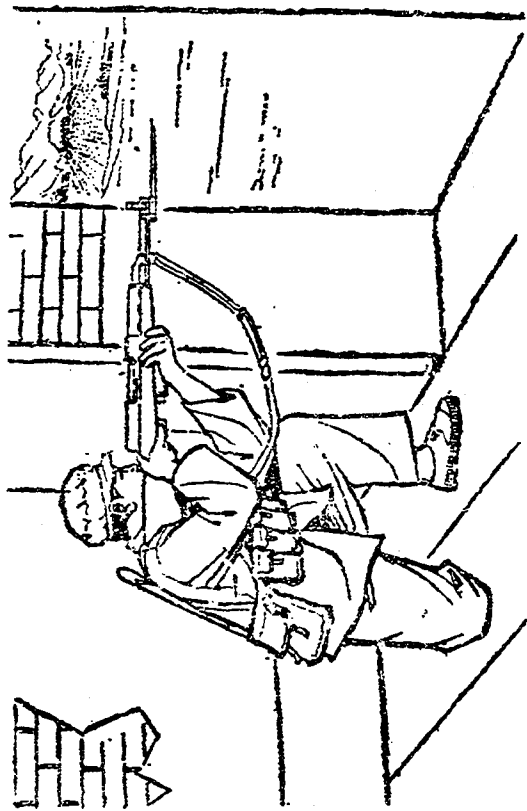


图 8 跪姿利用门窗



图 9 立姿利用墙角

(四) 利用地形地物防原子的动作
 当得到原子袭击警报或发现原子爆炸的闪光时，应立即利用附近的地形地物进行防护(图 10)。在开阔地时，则脚向爆点，就地卧倒，面向地面，眼闭口张，两手垫在胸前，两腿并拢紧贴地面，尽量不使皮肤暴露在外，待冲击波一过，迅速穿戴防护器材(图 11)。



图 10 利用坟包

应按班(组)长的口令卧倒卧下。

(二) 敌火下运动的姿势和方法

在敌火下运动时，应根据敌情、地形和任务，灵活地采取不同的运动姿势和方法。

直身前进：是在地形荫蔽、敌人对我观察不到时采用，通常以大步或快步持枪前进。

曲身前进：是在遮蔽物略低于人体时采用。要领：上身前倾，两腿弯曲，目视敌方，右手持枪，用大步或快步前进(图12)。



图12 曲身前进

匍匐前进：是在通过敌步、机枪火力封



图11 就地卧倒

二、敌火下运动

在敌火下运动时，应根据敌情，善于利用地形地物，迅速荫蔽地接近敌人。

(一) 前进的时机和要求

战士在敌火下运动时，应按班(组)长的口令，利用我火力掩护或敌火减弱、中断的瞬间，迅速荫蔽地前进。有时采取欺骗、迷惑敌人的方法突然前进。

运动前，应选好运动路线和暂停位置。运动中，应不间断地观察敌情、地形和班(组)长的指挥，保持前进方向。发现目标时，

锁的较短地段或利用较低的遮蔽物前进时采用。根据遮蔽物的高低分为低姿、高姿、侧身匍匐三种。

低姿匍匐：是在遮蔽物高约四十厘米时采用。前进时，屈回右腿，伸出左手，用右腿和左臂的力量使身体前移，在移动的同时，屈回左腿，伸出右手，用左腿和右臂的力量使身体继续前移，依次交替前进。携自动（半自动）步枪时，右手掌心向上，枪面向右，虎口卡住机柄，并抓住背带，枪身紧靠右臂内侧，或右手虎口向上，握枪的上背带环处，将枪置于右小臂上（图13）。携其它枪（筒）



图13 低姿匍匐

时，可各自采用方便的方法携带。

高姿匍匐：是在遮蔽物高约六十厘米时采用。要领：用两小臂和两膝支撑身体前进。携枪方法与低姿匍匐同（图14），有时可将枪托向右，两手托握步枪。

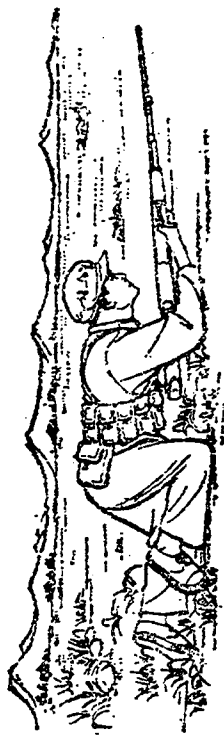


图14 高姿匍匐

侧身匍匐：身体转向右，左小臂着地，左大臂向前倾斜，左腿弯曲，右腿收回，右脚靠近臀部着地，右手握枪，用左臂的支撑力和右脚的蹬力使身体前移（图15）。遮蔽物较高时，可用左手和左小腿外侧着地，右手提枪，以左手的支撑力和右脚掌的蹬力使身体前移（图16）。

交叉或紧靠开掩，全身用力，四脚同时前进(图17)。



图17 滚进

滚进：是在敌火下迅速通过开阔地时通常采用的运动方法。跃进前，可左(右)移动(滚动)以迷惑敌人，并迅速收枪，同时屈左腿于右腿下，右手提枪，以左手、左膝、左脚的支撑力将身体支起，同时出右脚，迅速突然地前进。跃进时，右手持枪，目视敌方，曲身快跑；跃进距离、速度根据敌火、地形而定，地形越开阔，敌火越猛烈，跃进距离应越短，速度应越快。停止时，应迅速荫蔽或卧倒。卧倒时，左脚向前一步，按左膝、左手、左肘的顺序着地，或右脚向前一大步，左手撑地迅速卧倒，并做好射击或继续前进



图15 侧身匍匐



图16 侧身匍匐

滚进：是在卧姿时，为避开敌人观察射击而左右移动或通过棱线时采用。要领：关上保险，左手握枪表尺上方，右手握枪颈附近或两手握上护木，枪面向右，顺置于胸、腹前；两臂尽量向里合，将枪抱紧；两脚腕

的准备。

(三) 近迫作业

在开阔地敌火下停留时，应进行近迫作业。要领：卧倒后，把枪放在右边或上一侧臂处，机柄向下，侧身取下圆锹，先从一个由前向后挖掘，将土投到前方堆成胸墙。一旦挖好后，翻身侧卧于坑内，继续挖另一侧，直到能掩护全身为止。在土质松软情况下，可用圆锹挖，手推，脚蹬的方法构筑卧射单人掩体。作业时，姿势要低，动作要快，并不时观察敌情和班(组)长的指挥。

(四) 情况处置

当邻兵受阻时，应主动以火力或坚决勇猛地前进支援邻兵；落后于邻兵时，应迅速前进。

遇敌炮火封锁时，应快跑或利用地形地物跃进通过。

遇敌机轰炸扫射时，应利用地形地物隐蔽或加速前进，或按命令对空射击。

当得到化学袭击警报或遭到敌化学袭击

时，应立即穿戴防护器材，或利用就便器材进行防护。遇染毒地段时，应穿戴防护器材迅速通过，或根据标示绕过。

三、准备冲击与冲击

战士冲击时，必须具有压倒一切敌人的英雄气概，勇猛冲入敌阵，坚决消灭敌人。

(一) 冲击准备

占领冲击出发阵地后，应立即构筑(加修)工事，注意观察和伪装，看清冲击目标，前进路线、通路位置，记住信(记)号。听到“准备冲击”的口令，应迅速装满子弹，准备好榴弹和爆破器材，整理好服装、装具，做好跃起或跃出堑壕的准备，向班(组)长报告。

(二) 冲击

战士听到“冲击前进”的口令，应迅速跃起或跃出堑壕，迅猛前进。跃出堑壕时，右手持枪，左手撑(扒)壕沿，左脚踏入踏脚孔，右脚蹬壕底(壁)，以左手撑(扒)力和两脚蹬力，迅速跃出堑壕。冲击中，通常是持枪跑步前进，注意观察，发现目标以进行间射击消

灭之。通过通路时，应快跑通过。进到炮弹距离，自动或按班(组)长口令，准确地向敌堑壕内投弹，乘手榴弹爆炸瞬间，大喊“杀”声，勇猛冲入敌阵，以抵近射击、白刃格斗消灭敌人。并不停地向指定目标冲击前进。

遇到几个敌人对自己格斗时，应首先消灭最近的，尔后各个消灭。格斗中应主动地援助邻兵，协同邻兵以刺刀、抵近射击消灭敌人。

遇敌坦克发射点时，应利用地形地物和敌坦克观察、射击的死角，迅速荫蔽地接近，以手雷、爆破筒、炸药包将其炸毁。

遇敌运动坦克时，应利用有利地形和工事待机，或从翼侧迅速荫蔽地接近，趁敌坦克减速、转向、上下坡、越壕等有利时机，将其炸毁，并以火力消灭敌坦克乘员。

进攻战斗中的步兵班

进攻，是消灭敌人的主要手段。步兵班(组)在进攻战斗中，必须贯彻集中兵力和近战歼敌的思想，发扬勇敢战斗、不怕牺牲、不怕疲劳和连续作战的作风，迅速荫蔽地接近敌，突然勇猛地冲击，坚决歼灭敌人。班(组)长应不断地观察敌情、地形，勇敢机智地指挥战斗，以自己的模范行动带领全班(组)坚决完成任务。

班通常在排的编成内行动，可能得到班用机枪、火箭筒、轻喷火器的配属。

一、做好战斗准备

班长受领任务后，应根据**每战都应力求有准备**的原则，迅速向全班介绍敌情，传达上级的意图和本班的任务，明确班的运动路线、冲击出发阵地等。进行战斗动员，讲明战斗的重要意义，提出完成任务的要求，鼓

舞斗志，坚定必胜信心。发扬军事民主，讨论如何完成战斗任务。检查武器、弹药、装具、器材及伪装。在规定的时间内做好战斗准备，并向排长报告。

二、荫蔽接敌

1. 班(组)在接敌时，应善于利用地形地物和敌火中断、减弱或被我火力压制等有利时机，2. 灵活地运用各种战斗队形，采取欺骗、迷惑敌人的方法，3. 全班同时或各组互相掩护前进，4. 迅速荫蔽地占领冲击出发阵地。5. 前进中，应注意保持前进方向和与排(班)长的联络。

(一) 战斗队形

战斗队形的运用应根据敌情、地形和任务而定。

1. (一)路队形：通常在较荫蔽地形上运动、通过狭窄地段或通过通路时采用。班长口令：“距离(间隔) \times 步，成一(二)路跟我来”。组长口令：“距离 \times 步，跟我来”。班(组)长向目标前进，各战士即取规定距离跟

进(图1)。

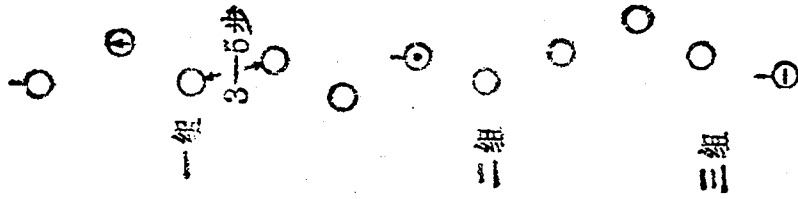


图1 班一路队形

2. 三角队形：通常在敌火下通过开阔地或冲击时采用。班长口令：“目标(方向)某处，成前(后)三角队形——散开——”。组长口令：“成前(后)三角队形——散开——”。

第一组(组长)向目标前进, 其余组(战士)在其两侧后(前)取适当距离成三角队形前进(图2、3)。

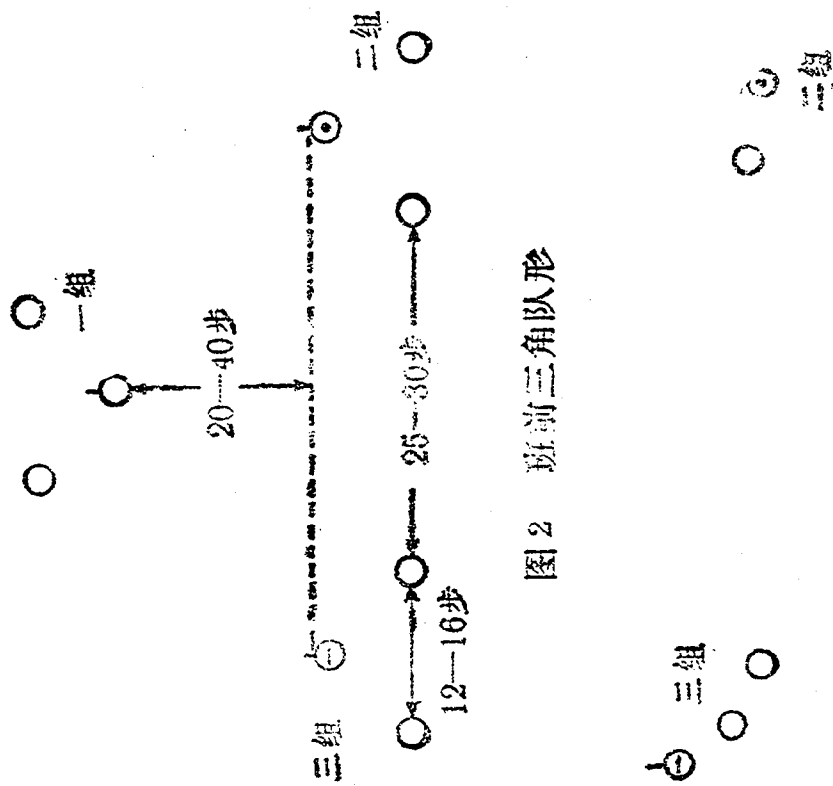


图2 班前三角队形

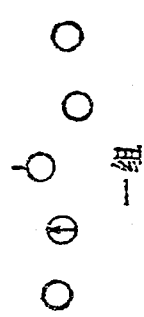


图3 班后三角队形

之梯形队形: 遇带任意侧有敌时队形采用。班长口令: “目标(方向)某处, 成左(右)梯形队形——散开——”。组长口令: “成左(右)梯形队形——散开——”。第一组(组长)向目标前进, 其余组(战士)在其左(右)后侧成梯形队形前进(图4)。

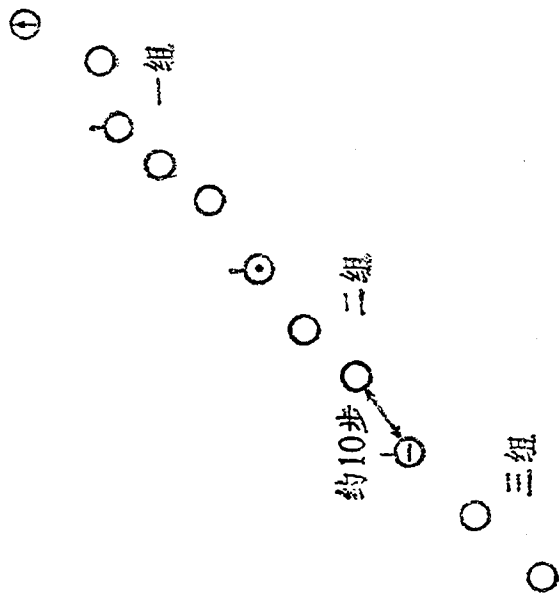


图4 班左梯形队形

一字队形: 通常在敌火下通过开阔地逼近敌人和冲击时采用。班长口令: “目标(方向)某处, 成一字队形——散开(或向左、右散开)——”。组长口令: “成一字队

形——散开——”。第一组(组长)向目标前进,其余组(战士)在其两翼或一翼散开前进(图5)。

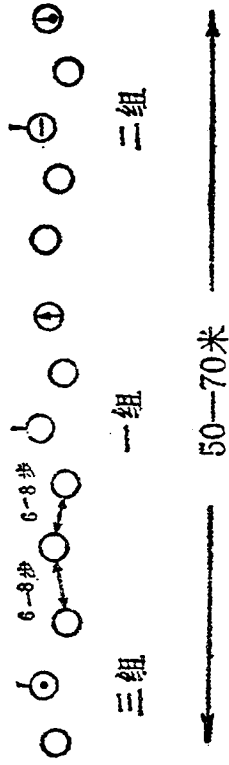


图5 班一字队形

班(组)长应在队形中便于观察、指挥的位置,配属武器应在队形中便于发扬火力的位置。运动中,根据敌情、地形,灵活地变换队形。有时班长只下达“成××队形——散开——”的口令,各组(战士)即以班长为准散开前进。停止时,班(组)长下达“卧倒”或“占领射击位置”的口令,战士应迅速利用地形地物做好射击准备。

(二)班的跃进

班(组)跃进时,应依地形、敌人火力威胁程度而采取不同的方法。

全班跃进:通常在距敌较远,敌火减弱或中断时采用。口令:“向某处——全班跃进——”。

分组跃进:通常在敌火威胁较大、需要互相掩护或受地形限制时采用。班长口令:“向某处——从左(右)分组跃进——”,或逐个指挥战斗小组跃进。组长口令:“向某处——全班跃进——”。

分组各个跃进:通常在通过敌火控制较严的开阔地时采用。班长口令:“向某处——分组各个跃进——”。组长逐个指挥战士跃进。

全班各个跃进:通常在通过敌火封锁严密的开阔地或隘路时采用。班长口令:“向某处——从左(右)各个跃进——”,或逐个指挥战士跃进。

各组(战士)听到口令后,应按规定的顺序跃进。跃进中,在原地或到达指定位置的小组(战士),应以火力掩护运动中的小组(战士)。

(三) 情况处置

接敌中，班(组)长应不断观察敌情、地形，灵活处置各种情况。各组(战士)要随时注意班(组)长的指挥。

遇敌机轰炸扫射时，应利用地形地物加大间隔距离迅速前进，根据上级指示组织对空射击。

遇敌炮火拦阻时，应加大间隔距离，乘敌火减弱、中断跑步通过，或利用弹坑和地形地物跃进通过。

遇受染地段时，班长应指挥全班穿戴防护器材或利用就便器材迅速通过。如有敌火控制，应组织火力掩护，跃进通过。视情况，可迅速绕过或搭乘坦克通过。通过后，按信号或口令脱去防护器材继续前进。

三、迅速完成冲击准备

占领冲击出发阵地后，班长应立即派出观察、警戒，查明情况，进一步给全班明确任务、组织构筑工事，迅速完成冲击准备。

(一) 明确任务

班明确任务要简明准确。应先判定方位、指明方位物，尔后明确：

1. 敌前沿；火力点、坦克发射点、工事位置和障碍设置；
 2. 班(组)冲击目标、冲击道路和发展方向；
 3. 配属火器的位置、任务和支援的方法；
 4. 支援火器、坦克和友邻的任务，班与其协同的方法；
 5. 障碍物中通路的位置和通过的方法；
 6. 信(记)号。
- 明确任务后，应检查战士对任务的理解和对信(记)号的熟悉情况。

(二) 开辟通路

班(组)受领在敌障碍物中开辟通路任务时，应根据上级指定开辟通路的位置和敌障碍物的性质、数量进行编组，规定各组(战士)的任务，明确荫蔽接近路线和连续爆破的

方法，准备好器材。然后按上级规定时间，指挥开辟通路小组(战士)在我火力掩护下，以坚决、勇猛、机智的动作，迅速接近指定地点进行爆破。若敌障碍物纵深较大或先头战士爆破不成功时，应实施连续爆破，并注意爆破和清除耐爆耐压的障碍物。对纵深较小或残存的铁丝网，可用破坏或就便器材进行克服(图6、7)。开辟好通路后，应按规划进行标示和指定火器控制。

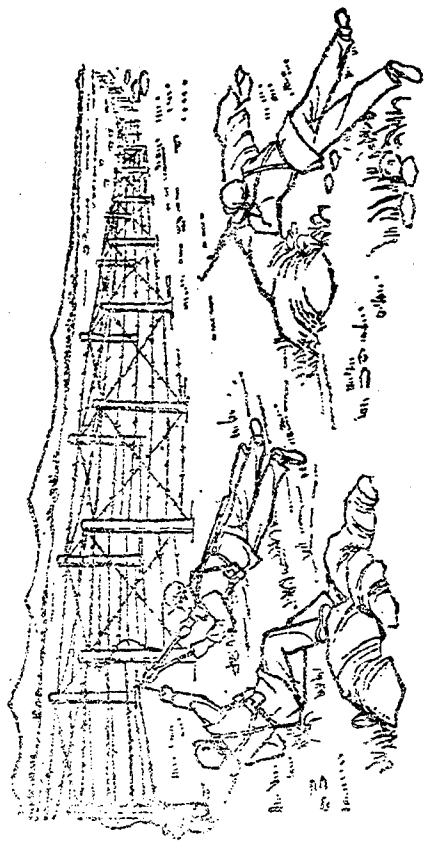


图6 小组用破坏剪破坏敌铁丝网

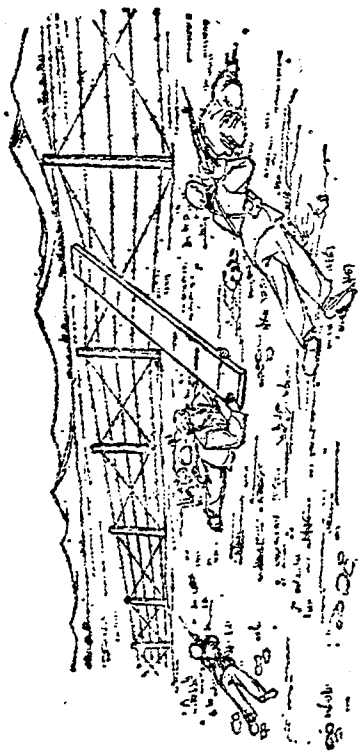


图7 小组用木板克服敌铁丝网

(三) 准备冲击

接到上级准备冲击的口令或信号时，班长应立即发出“准备冲击——”的口令，全班迅速做好冲击准备，并向排长报告和注意观察冲击信号。

四、勇猛冲击

冲击应具有压倒一切敌人的英雄气概，充分利用我火力突击效果，一举突入敌人阵地，发挥近战威力，坚决歼灭敌人。

当听到冲击口令或看到冲击信号时，班长(组)长立即下达“冲击——前进”的口令，并率领全班(组)勇猛冲击。遇敌残存或复活的

火力点时，应以火力压制或消灭，毫无犹豫地冲击前进。通过通路时，应成一(二)路队形，跑步通过，并迅速从行进间散开冲向指定目标。进到投弹距离时，依班长口令或自行向敌堑壕内准确投弹，乘手榴弹爆炸^{一瞬间}，大喊“杀”声，冲入敌人阵地，以抵近射击、手榴弹、刺刀消灭敌人，继续向指定目标勇猛冲击前进。

班用机枪通常与步兵一起冲击。火箭筒和喷火器通常在班战斗队形内前进，随时准备消灭敌坦克、装甲车和火力点。

如有坦克引导冲击时，班应紧随坦克前进，消灭敌反坦克手，并及时给坦克指示目标。坦克不能前进时，应超越坦克继续向敌冲击。

五、消灭纵深之敌

班突破敌前沿后，必须具有一往无前的精神，敢于独立战斗，充分发挥战斗小组的作用，在我火力支援下，利用敌人防御间隙，大胆插入敌人侧后，勇猛发展进攻，各

个歼灭敌人。

(一)消灭敌坦克发射点

遇敌坦克发射点时，应尽量从侧后接近，采取打、炸结合的方法将其消灭。班(组)长应迅速查明情况，选好荫蔽接近路线，以火力消灭其附近的敌人，掩护火箭筒手接近目标将其摧毁；或指挥战斗小组(战士)利用敌观察、射击死角，迅速迂回敌坦克侧后，用爆破筒、炸药包、手雷等将其炸毁；其余组(战士)应以火力掩护和做好连续爆破的准备。视情况，给附近的坦克、火炮指示目标将其消灭。成功后立即发起冲击。

(二)消灭敌坚固火力点

遇敌坚固火力点时，应以火力、爆破、突击相结合将其消灭。班(组)长应迅速查明其射孔、射向及与其它火力点的联系，选好爆破点及荫蔽接近路线，组织火力封锁敌射孔和压制其附近的敌人火力，指挥喷火器、火箭筒手将其摧毁；或指挥战斗小组迅速接近目标翼侧或迂回其侧后，进行连续爆破将

其炸毁(图8)。也可给附近的坦克、火炮指示目标将其消灭。成功后立即发起冲击。

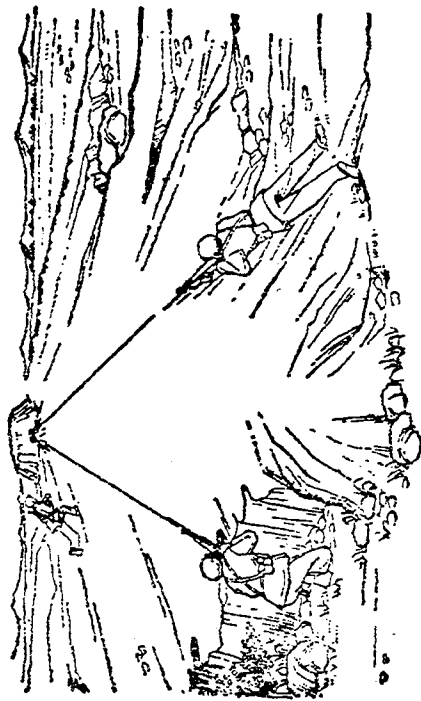


图8 小组打敌坚固火力点

(三) 歼灭壕内之敌*

班受领歼灭壕内之敌任务时,班长应迅速查明情况,及时给各组规定任务,采取壕内、壕外密切协同,逐段歼灭敌人。壕内小组应沿壕逐段搜索,以手榴弹、火力、刺刀结合喊话歼灭敌人。壕外小组应用火力掩护

* 歼灭壕内之敌,在训练时可作为消灭纵深之敌的第一个训练问题。

壕内小组行动,并切断敌人退路,必要时也可进入壕内战斗。班用机枪应在有利地形上掩护各组行动。

担任壕内战斗的小组,通常由组长带一名战士进入壕内,以一名战士在壕外掩护,有班的火力掩护时也可全组进入壕内。进入前应仔细观察和荫蔽接近,视情况向壕内投弹,并乘爆炸瞬间迅速跳入,首先消灭附近残敌,尔后迅速利用壕的拐角或掩体互相掩护,保持适当距离,逐段观察搜索前进,随时准备以手榴弹、火力、刺刀歼灭敌人。壕外战士应利用地形地物及时跃进和支援壕内战斗,并与班长保持目视联络。遇壕内障碍物时,应在火力掩护下迅速排除或炸毁,也可从壕外迅速绕过。遇壕内纵向火力点时,应在火力掩护下从壕外接近将其消灭。遇龟缩在盖沟或掩蔽部内的敌人时,应以火力封锁其出入口,迅速接近其翼侧、顶部进行爆破,或向出入口内投弹,并乘爆炸瞬间冲入消灭敌人;也可以火力掩护喷火器手喷火将其消灭。

(四) 打敌反冲击

遇敌坦克、步兵反冲击时，班长应及时报告上级，迅速指挥全班抢占有利地形，组织火力掩护手和战斗小组(战士)，在敌坦克可能经过的地段上占领有利位置，待敌坦克接近或停止、转向、上下坡、爬越障碍等有利时机，突然以火箭筒、爆破筒、炸药包、手雷等将其各个击毁(图9)；同时，班(组)以猛烈的火力，切断敌步兵与坦克的联系，消灭敌步兵，粉碎敌人反冲击。反冲击之敌溃退时，应立即发起冲击，乘胜扩张战果。



图9 小组打敌坦克

如敌人向友邻反冲击时，应积极发展进攻，主动以火力支援或向敌翼侧勇猛冲击，协同友邻歼灭敌人。

(五) 歼灭退守坑道之敌

班(组)发现敌人向坑道溃退时，应立即跟踪追击，力求将敌人歼灭在坑道口外，一举突入敌坑道将其歼灭。当敌依托坑道口工事顽抗时，应组织火力掩护喷火器手或战斗小组，迅速荫蔽地接近其翼侧或上方进行喷火或爆破，消灭敌人。如敌已退入坑道内，班长应迅速指挥战斗小组向里投掷手榴弹或炸药包，并乘烟雾迅速冲入，利用坑道拐弯处互相掩护，逐段搜索前进，以抵近射击、手榴弹和白刃格斗坚决消灭敌人。视情况，其余组可随后跟进或在坑道口严密警戒，随时准备进入战斗。如情况不允许进入坑道战斗时，可用火力封锁坑道口结合喊话迫使投降，或根据上级指示将坑道口炸塌堵塞。

(六) 巩固阵地

班受领巩固已占领阵地的任务时，应利

用有利地形和敌人工事进行荫蔽，迅速派出观察、警戒，防敌火力袭击，并立即调整组织，明确任务，抢救伤员，领发弹药，构筑、改造工事，做好抗击敌人反冲击的准备。

夜间进攻战斗中的步兵班

“近战、夜战是我们的光荣传统，过去我们就是用这种办法消灭敌人的。”今后的战争，我们还是要晚上和敌人打。夜间便于达成战斗的突然性，可以减少敌火对我的损害。但观察、射击、指挥、协同均较不便，易迷失方向。班(组)在夜间进攻战斗中，应发扬近战、孤胆、独立战斗和主动协同的精神，善于利用夜暗**采取秘密和神速的行动，出其不意地袭击敌人**，大胆实施穿插分割、包围迂回，各个歼灭敌人。

一、秘密迅速接敌

班(组)长受命后，应立即向全班(组)传达任务。明确便于夜间识别的方位物(方位角)，上级和友邻的任务，班(组)的进攻方向、接敌运动的路线和冲击出发阵地，指挥联络及识别信(记)号。进行简明有力的战斗动员，

规定夜间行动纪律，检查武器、弹药，表齐准备的情况。

(一) 接敌运动

夜间接敌中，班应根据敌情、地形、任务和能见度等情况，灵活地运用战斗队形，秘密迅速地接近敌人。通常采用一(二)路队形，战士之间的间隔距离可适当缩小。

班(组)长在接敌运动中，必须正确掌握运动方向。运动前，应熟悉运动地域内的地形地物的特征、运动路线和方位物。运动中，应利用方位物标定方向或按方位角逐段地检查对照前进，并使用传递口令、音响、标记、光亮等信(记)号，或以自己的行动诱导和指挥班(组)尽量靠近敌前沿，隐蔽地占领冲击出发阵地。

(二) 情况处置

遇敌照明时，如地形隐蔽，应继续前进；地形开阔，应立即卧倒，并利用照明观察敌情、地形、前进道路及友邻的行动，照明一过迅速前进。如敌不断照明，且地形不利，

应按上级命令，采取适当姿势迅速前进。

发现敌人侦察、警戒时，班(组)应立即报告，并根据情况迅速隐蔽地绕过，或秘密将其捕获、消灭，或根据命令用火消灭之。

遇敌射击时，班(组)长应沉着冷静，迅速判明情况。如系敌盲目射击，应继续隐蔽前进，如被敌人发现，应在火力掩护下，利用地形地物，采取适当队形，迅速接近敌人。

二、隐蔽完成冲击准备

班(组)占领冲击出发阵地后，应立即派出观察、警戒，查明情况，进一步给全班明确任务，隐蔽迅速地做好冲击准备。

(一) 明确任务

班长应带领小组长、火箭筒手、机枪手，秘密接近敌人前沿或侧后，利用敌人照明、月光、透空等条件进行抵近侦察。查明：敌前沿、坦克、火力点、障碍物、警戒的位置，便于我接近敌人的路线和开辟通路的位置。并进一步给班明确任务：

1. 敌前沿、坦克、火力点和障碍物的位置；

2. 班的冲击目标、路线和发展方向，各小组的任务和转入强攻时的行动；

3. 开辟通路的位置、方法和通过的顺序；

4. 信(记)号。

(二) 开辟通路

夜间通常采取秘密手段开辟通路，但必须做好强行开辟的准备。班长应根据情况进行编组、区分任务，明确开辟通路的位置、手段和接近路线，准备好器材，适时指挥小组开辟通路。担任开辟通路的小组，要秘密迅速地接近到开辟通路的位置，注意观察、潜听敌情，沉着迅速地克服敌障碍。在铁丝网上开辟通路时，应先排除音响、照明和爆炸性障碍物，尔后破坏铁丝网。如被敌发觉时，立即以火力掩护实施连续爆破，强行开辟。完成后，进行标示，并立即报告上级，同时全班(组)做好冲击准备。

三、突然勇猛冲击

夜间冲击，应充分发挥战斗的突然性，以奇袭与强攻相结合，出其不意地攻击敌人。一旦奇袭不成，立即转为强攻。

奇袭时，班(组)应迅速荫蔽地通过通路，大胆地逼近敌人，不喊“杀”声，突然勇猛地冲入敌阵，打敌措手不及，以手榴弹、刺刀、炸药包、爆破筒、抵近射击，击毁敌坦克；消灭敌步兵。

强攻时，班(组)应认真观察火力准备的效果，及时用曳光弹给支援火力指示目标，并在我火力掩护下，突然勇猛地冲向敌冲击。如有坦克配合时，应给坦克标示通路和指示目标，并随时消灭妨碍坦克前进的目标，紧随坦克，一举突入敌防御阵地，歼灭敌人。

四、大胆穿插，各个歼敌

突入敌阵地后，班(组)应乘敌混乱之际，连续勇猛冲击，大胆穿插分割，迅速扩张战果，各个歼灭敌人。如与排失掉联络时，除派人积极联系外，应主动靠近友邻分队，继

续战斗。

遇敌坦克发射点和火力点时，班(组)长应利用敌射击的火光和照明，迅速判明其位置、数量，以火力掩护火箭筒手或爆破手迅速迂回其侧后，摧毁敌坦克和火力点。

遇敌反击时，班(组)长应迅速查明情况，果断地指挥班(组)迅速迂回到敌侧后，突然开火，勇猛冲击，歼灭敌人。如情况不允许时，班(组)长应指挥班(组)立即抢占有利地形，待敌接近时，以猛烈的火力切断敌步兵与坦克的联系，各个歼灭敌人。

班受领穿插任务时，班长应在敌人的间隙和翼侧，选择便于穿插的路线，利用敌混乱或照明、射击间断等有利时机，率领全班秘密迅速地向着指定目标穿插前进。途中遇敌人障碍时，应秘密克服通过或绕过。遭敌阻击时，应视情况，从翼侧插过或以火力掩护迅速通过。接近指定目标后，以坚决突然的行动，消灭敌人，完成指定的任务。战斗中应主动与友邻联络，防止发生误会。

进攻战斗中的火力班

火力班在进攻战斗中，“要发扬我军近战、夜战的优良传统”，勇敢战斗，积极主动地与步兵分队密切配合，以集中、准确、突然、猛烈的火力消灭敌人。

机、枪、班

班用机枪通常以单枪配属给步兵班或由排长集中使用；重机枪、连用机枪通常以排(班)配属给步兵连(排)。其任务：以火力消灭敌人暴露的有生力量，压制敌人火器，射击低飞敌机和空降兵，支援步兵战斗。

一、做好战斗准备

班受领任务后，应按上级指示荫蔽、迅速地占领发射阵地，组织观察，进行伪装，按时完成战斗准备。

规定任务。班长应首先判定方位、指明

方位物，尔后给全班明确：

1. 敌人的兵力部署，工事和火力点的位置；
2. 步兵分队的任务；
3. 班的任务，冲击出发阵地的位置，支援步兵战斗的方法，运动路线和转移发射阵地的时机和方法；
4. 完成战斗准备的时间；
5. 信(记)号。

规定任务后，应进行战斗动员，发扬军事民主，研究打法，检查武器、弹药和器材，完成战斗准备后报告上级。

班用机枪单枪配属给步兵班时，班长应简要传达上级指示并提出要求，尔后机枪手到步兵班受领任务。

二、接敌运动

在接敌运动时，班通常在步兵分队战斗队形的间隙或翼侧占领发射阵地，以火力消灭或压制妨碍步兵前进的目标，掩护步兵分队向冲击出发阵地运动。班在一地射击的时

间不宜过长，根据上级指示或按步兵进展情况，适时与步兵分队交替掩护向前转移发射阵地。为使步兵分队得到不间断的火力掩护，各枪应交替向前转移。当敌火中断、地形隐蔽或步兵分队发展顺利的情况下，也可全班同时向前转移。转移前，应选好运动路线和发射阵地或暂停位置。运动中，要善于利用地形地物，采取全班跃进、分组跃进或匍匐前进；要不断观察敌情和步兵分队的行动以及指挥员的信号。

重机枪班在山地和丘陵地运动时，可在步兵分队之后占领发射阵地，实施超越射击掩护步兵前进，并逐次向前转移发射阵地。

进入冲击出发阵地时，班应迅速荫蔽地占领发射阵地，组织观察，准备火力，构筑工事，进行伪装。班长应进一步给全班明确任务并迅速做好冲击准备。

三、支援步兵冲击

在我火力准备时，班应按上级规定，以火力消灭指定的目标，并掩护步兵开辟通路。

冲击时，重机枪通常在原地以猛烈准确的火力压制新出现和复活的敌火力点，支援步兵分队冲击。当步兵分队通过敌障碍物后或接近敌前沿时，视情况迅速向前转移跟上步兵战斗队形。班用机枪通常随步兵一起冲击，以行进间射击或占领临时发射阵地压制敌火力点，支援步兵和坦克冲击。连用机枪应按上级指示在原地掩护或随步兵冲击。

当步兵分队冲击受挫时，应以集中、准确、猛烈的火力压制敌人，支援步兵再次冲击。

四、支援步兵消灭纵深之敌

突破敌人前沿后，班应紧随步兵前进，适时占领发射阵地，以火力压制对我危害最大的目标，及时支援步兵和坦克向纵深发展进攻，各个歼灭敌人。

遇敌火力点时，班应迅速占领有利地形，以准确的火力封锁其射孔或压制敌人侧方火力点，掩护火箭筒、喷火器和爆破手将其摧毁。

遇敌反冲击时，班应迅速抢占有利地形，以突然、猛烈、准确的火力消灭敌人步兵，切断敌步兵与坦克的联系。重机枪可实施正面和纵深散布射。当敌人溃退时，应以火力或随步兵追歼敌人。

遇敌空袭时，班应按上级指示，射击低飞和俯冲的敌机。遇敌空降时，应乘敌空降、着陆混乱之际，以猛烈的火力，消灭敌人。敌乘直升飞机逃跑时，应以集中火力击毁敌机，消灭敌人。

巩固阵地时，班应利用地形，构筑发射阵地，组织观察，明确任务，补充弹药，做好战斗准备，将情况报告上级。并注意荫蔽，防敌炮兵、航空兵的火力袭击。

火 箭 筒 班

进攻战斗中，火箭筒班通常按配备属给步兵班，也可集中使用或编入反坦克队(组)。其任务：击毁敌人坦克、装甲车辆和火力点。

一、做好战斗准备

班受领任务后，应按上级指示荫蔽迅速地进入阵地。班长应首先判定方位、指明方位物，尔后传达任务，明确冲击出发阵地的位置、运动路线，进行战斗动员，发扬军事民主，研究打敌坦克的方法。检查火箭筒、火箭弹的技术状况和装具、器材，做好战斗准备并报告上级。

按具配属给步兵班时，班长应简要传达上级指示并提出要求，尔后火箭筒手到步兵班受领任务。

二、接敌运动

接敌运动时，班通常在步兵分队战斗队形内或翼侧占领发射阵地。利用我火力掩护或敌火减弱、中断等有利时机，采取分组跃进或全班同时跃进，也可根据敌火和地形情况，取适当姿势荫蔽地接近敌人。前进中，应不断观察敌情、地形，随时准备消灭敌坦克和装甲车。

进入冲击出发阵地时，应在受敌坦克威

胁方向上，荫蔽迅速地占领发射阵地，组织观察，准备火力，构筑工事，进行伪装。尔后进一步给全班明确任务：

1. 敌人坦克、火力点的位置和敌坦克可能反冲击的方向；
2. 步兵分队的任务；
3. 班应消灭的目标，冲击道路，完成任务的方法；
4. 信(记)号。

明确任务后，迅速做好冲击准备。

三、摧毁敌坦克和火力点

在我火力准备时，如距目标较远，班可按上级指示，在火力掩护下，荫蔽迅速地出到有利地形上占领发射阵地，以突然、准确的火力摧毁敌前沿火力点和坦克。

冲击时，班应紧随步兵勇猛前进，不断观察敌情，随时准备消灭妨碍我前进的敌坦克和火力点。

遇敌坦克、地堡群时，班应根据敌人配置情况、地形条件，选择比较突出和便于接

近的坦克(地堡),在我火力掩护下,与步兵分队密切协同,利用地形荫蔽迅速逼近敌翼侧或后方,以准确的火力将其各个击毁。

遇敌坦克反冲击时,班应抢占有利地形,迅速做好射击准备,待敌坦克接近时,以突然、准确的火力,将其击毁,并注意及时转移阵地。遇敌集群坦克时,应贯彻**集中兵力各个歼敌的原则**,集中火力首先击毁对我危害最大的和前出的敌坦克,尔后,击毁其余坦克。当敌人溃退时,应随同步兵分队追歼逃敌。

六〇炮班

进攻战斗中,六〇炮班通常由连直接掌握使用,有时也可配属给步兵排。其任务:消灭与压制敌人暴露的或遮蔽物后的有生力量和火器,支援步兵战斗。

一、做好战斗准备

班受领任务后,应按上级指示,在步兵分队战斗队形内或稍后,迅速地占领遮蔽或

半遮蔽的发射阵地,组织观察,准备火力,构筑工事,进行伪装,按时做好战斗准备。

规定任务。班长应首先判定方位、指明方位物,尔后给班明确;

1. 敌人的兵力部署,工事和火力点的位置;

2. 步兵分队的任务;

3. 本班的任务,基本发射阵地和预备发射阵地的位置,消灭和压制的目标,各战斗阶段支援步兵的方法;

4. 完成战斗准备的时间;

5. 开始射击、停止射击和转移火力的信号。

规定任务后,应进行战斗动员,发扬军事民主,研究打法,组织检查火炮、炮弹的技术状况,整理装具,完成战斗准备后报告上级。

二、接敌运动

接敌运动时,班应以火力压制和消灭妨

碍步兵前进的敌暴露的和遮蔽物后的有生力量和火器，掩护步兵分队向冲击出发阵地运动。根据步兵进展和敌火的情况，以全班或单炮逐次向前转移阵地。转移阵地时，应不间断地观察战场，随时准备以火力支援步兵战斗。

步兵分队前进受阻时，班应迅速以集中射击压制对我步兵分队危害最大的目标，掩护步兵分队迅速前进。

进入冲击出发阵地时，班应按上级指示占领发射阵地，组织观察，做好射击准备，班长进一步给全班明确任务。

三、支援步兵冲击

在我火力准备时，班应按上级规定以火力消灭指定的目标，并掩护步兵开辟通路。

步兵分队发起冲击时，班通常在原地以集中射击压制敌新出现的、复活的火力点和有生力量，支援步兵冲击。当步兵分队接近敌前沿时，应向敌纵深转移火力或按指示迅速向前转移发射阵地。

当步兵分队冲击受挫时，班应迅速以集中、猛烈的火力压制敌人，掩护步兵再次发起冲击。

四 支援步兵消灭纵深之敌

突破敌人前沿后，班应紧紧随步兵前进，适时占领发射阵地，及时以准确火力支援步兵和坦克向敌防御纵深发展进攻，各个歼灭敌人。

步兵分队攻歼支撑点之敌时，班应利用地形占领发射阵地，以集中火力压制敌人，掩护步兵分队前进，并适时转移火力，支援步兵消灭敌人。当步兵分队向敌侧后机动时，应以集中射击压制妨碍步兵前进的敌人侧射火力。

遇敌反冲击时，班应迅速占领发射阵地，以猛烈火力拦阻敌步兵，切断敌步兵与坦克的联系。当敌人继续前进时，应逐次改变射角或装药，采取急促射的方法，以火力配合步兵分队消灭反冲击之敌。当敌人溃逃时，以猛烈火力拦阻其先头或以集中火力向密集

队形射击，消灭敌步兵。

巩固阵地时，班应利用地形或敌人工事，迅速修筑发射阵地，组织观察，补充弹药，做好战斗准备，将情况报告上级。并注意疏散荫蔽，防敌炮兵、航空兵火力袭击。

防御战斗中的战士

战士在防御战斗中，必须“勇敢、坚定、沉着”，贯彻近战歼敌的思想，发扬孤胆作战的精神。利用地形，依托工事，灵活机动地以火力、手榴弹、爆破器材、白刃格斗消灭敌坦克和步兵，坚守阵地。

一、做好防御准备

战士受领任务后，应了解敌情、地形，记住班(组)和自己的任务及各种信(记)号，并迅速做好防御准备。

(一)选择射击位置

战士应根据“荫蔽身体，发扬火力”的原则，在班(组)长指定的地段内选择射击位置。其条件是：视界、射界良好，便于发扬火力、荫蔽机动、构筑工事和伪装。应尽量避开独立明显、易燃和容易产生跳弹等物体。选择时，应卧倒观察。出枪试瞄，如不适宜，

可适当移动。

(二) 构筑工事和伪装

战士在构筑工事时，通常按扫清视界、再射界、经始、构筑单人掩体、连接堑壕、再挖猫耳洞、弹药崖孔的顺序进行。与敌直接接触时，应按接近迫作业的方法，先挖卧射单人掩体，再逐次加深成跪、立射掩体。作业时，要不断观察敌情，随时准备战斗。对工事要严密伪装，尽量与现地景色相似，工事构筑完毕，应向班(组)长报告。

(三) 做好射击和打坦克准备

工事构筑完毕后，战士应测量射击地境内各方位物和重要地物的距离，准备好爆破筒、手雷、炸药包等反坦克器材。黄昏前，战士还应根据班(组)长指示，对敌可能接近的地点、道路，利用木桩、树叉、挖凹槽等方法做好标定射击设备。

二、担任观察员时的动作

(一) 观察员的任务及要求

观察员的任务是：观察敌人的配置和活

动情况；上级发出的信(记)号；本分队和友邻分队的行动等。观察员应熟记方位物、观察地境和特别注意观察的方向，观察地境内各种地形地物的景况和特征，各种信(记)号，指挥员的位置和报告方法。并提高警惕，严守职责，认真完成观察任务。

(二) 观察位置的选择

观察位置应视界开阔，荫蔽良好，便于进出和报告情况。白天应利用较高的位置，但应避开独立明显的物体。夜间应选择低、暗、静处，以便透空观察，耳目并用，并应尽量靠近指挥员。位置选好，迅速荫蔽地进入，做好伪装。

(三) 观察要领及报告方法

观察时要认真仔细，发现情况，及时准确地报告上级。观察要领：可将观察地境分成若干段，由右至左、由近到远反复观察。对敌人可能出现的方向和复杂地形，特别是可疑征候，应仔细观察。

发现情况用口头或规定的信(记)号报

告。口头报告时，应以目视测定的方位、距离、名称和物体为准，指明目标的位置、距离、名称和活动情况。用指幅指示目标时，将一只手臂伸直，手指向上，测定目标在方位物或明显地物左(右)边几个指幅。报告应简明准确。例如：“班长同志：一方位物，左(右)三指幅，远(近)100米，敌机枪”。“右前方独立树，左一指幅，单个敌人”。如遭敌人袭击来不及口头报告时，应按规发出信号或鸣枪。如得到原子或化学袭击警报时，立即发出相应的信号。

三、防敌火力袭击

当敌炮兵火力袭击时，应按班(组)长的口令(信号)迅速关保险、收枪、折回刺刀，右手持枪于胸前或贴于右胯，左手按住装具，进入掩蔽部(坑道)或猫耳洞荫蔽，并做好战斗准备。当接到进入阵地的口令(信号)或敌炮火延伸时，迅速占领射击位置，观察敌情，抢修工事，打开刺刀、出枪、开保险，准备好手榴弹和爆破器材。

当敌机侦察时，战士应立即荫蔽，将安全物体遮蔽好。敌机轰炸、扫射时，应利用工事荫蔽。对低飞的敌机，应按班(组)长的命令，依托工事，进行射击。

当得到敌原子或化学袭击警报时，战士应根据指示迅速进入工事荫蔽，视情况穿戴防护器材，做好战斗准备。正在执行任务的战士，受到化学袭击时应迅速穿戴防护器材；发现原子爆炸闪光，立即利用堑壕或就近有利地形卧倒，待冲击波一过，迅速穿戴防护器材，继续执行任务。得到解除警报后，迅速进入阵地，利用战斗间隙进行局部消毒或消除沾染，根据命令脱掉防护器材。

四、抗击敌步兵、坦克的冲击

敌步兵、坦克向我冲击时，要有压倒敌人的英雄气概，以勇敢机智的动作，准确的火力，近战歼敌。

对冲击的敌坦克，战士应利用地形、工事，荫蔽待机，勇敢沉着，放近打。当敌坦克接近时，以手雷对准要害部位投掷，也可在敌

坦克必经的道路上布设防坦克雷、爆破筒、炸药包，或趁敌坦克停顿、上下坡、转向、减速等有利时机，从翼侧迅速接近，把爆破器材放在敌坦克履带后端、发动机等要害部位，将其炸毁。尔后，以火力消灭敌坦克乘员。

对冲击的敌步兵，应以突然准确的火力将其消灭。当敌进到我投弹距离时，应向敌投弹，如敌队形密集可用爆破筒、炸药包，大量杀伤敌人。敌人溃退时，应以火力追击。

战斗中，应根据情况灵活变换位置，以各种手段消灭敌人，主动支援邻兵战斗。击退敌人冲击后，要注意观察，防敌火力袭击，抢修工事，补充弹药，擦拭武器，准备抗击敌人再次冲击。

五、消灭突人之敌

当敌坦克、步兵突入我阵地时，战士应英勇顽强、孤胆作战，“不论在任何艰难困苦的场所，只要还有一个人，这个人就要继续战斗下去”，坚决消灭突入之敌。

当敌坦克越壕时，战士应从翼侧投掷手雷，或向敌坦克要害部位挂放爆破器材，将其炸毁。如敌坦克越过堑壕时，应利用工事或迅速跃出堑壕用爆破器材炸毁敌坦克。

当敌步兵突入时，应沿壕迅速机动，以抵近射击、手榴弹、白刃格斗将其消灭。敌人沿壕扩张时，应以移动障碍物堵塞堑壕、交通壕，阻敌扩张，利用壕的拐弯处和纵向射击设备消灭敌人。

防御战斗中的步兵班

“防御，是直接为了保存自己的，但同时也是辅助进攻或准备转入进攻的一种手段。”班(组)在防御时，必须贯彻积极防御和近战歼敌的思想，发扬勇敢战斗、不怕牺牲、独立作战的作风，善于利用地形，依托工事，发扬火力，以积极顽强的战斗行动，抗击敌人坦克、步兵的连续冲击，坚决守住阵地。班(组)长应机智灵活地指挥战斗，并以自己的模范行动带领全班(组)坚决完成任务。

班通常是在排的编成内防守排支撑点内的一段阵地，或独立坚守一个要点。有时，可能担任预备队。其防御正面，应根据敌情、地形、任务而定。班可能得到班用机枪、火箭筒、喷火器的配属。

一、做好防御准备

班(组)长受领任务后，应按上级命令

(信号)，隐蔽迅速地进入阵地，在规定时间内，积极完成防御准备。

(一)派出观察员，指定值班火器

班(组)进入阵地后，班长应立即派出观察员，指定值班火器，并明确：观察员和值班火器的位置、方位物，敌人可能出现的方向，观察(射击)地境，特别注意的方向和地段，发现情况报告的方法，信(记)号和自己的位置。

(二)规定任务，进行动员

班长在规定的任务前，应向全班传达任务，视情况带领骨干或全班详细侦察地形，分析敌情，判明敌步兵、坦克可能接近的道路和冲击地段。发扬军事民主，研究兵力、火器配置、障碍设置及各种情况下的战斗行动。

规定任务时，应首先明确方位物，尔后指出：

1. 敌人的位置，可能进攻的方向和冲击地段；

2. 排、班的防御阵地和特别固守的地段，射击地境，集中射击地段，防敌坦克的措施；

3. 友邻位置、任务及上级配置在班阵地内的火器位置、任务，与其协同的方法；

4. 各组(战士)的位置与任务；

5. 配属火器的基本发射阵地和预备发射阵地，射击地境和补加射击地境及任务；

6. 完成防御准备的时间；

7. 信(记)号。

班长规定任务后，应向全班进行战斗动员，提出完成任务的要求，树立英勇杀敌，坚守阵地的必胜信心。

(三)构筑工事，设置障碍

班(组)应善于利用地形构筑工事。工事应便于发扬火力，力求坚固、低下、疏散、隐蔽，便于分队机动，并严密伪装。

构筑工事时，班(组)长应给战士规定作业任务和伪装措施，明确设置障碍物和扫清视界、射界的地段。构筑工事必须集中力量

迅速完成。作业顺序应先主后次。通常先扫清视界、射界，构筑散兵坑和火器发射阵地，再连接堑壕、构筑遮蔽部和交通壕，并重点设置障碍物。在与敌直接接触情况下构筑工事时，应组织火力掩护，先完成火器发射阵地及单人掩体，尔后逐次加强。

在前沿前和纵深内便于敌坦克行动的地段上，应构筑打坦克掩体，利用就便器材设置防坦克、防步兵障碍物，挖掘防坦克壕、断(崖)壁，并做到火力与障碍物相结合。

作业中，班长要不断地进行检查指导，并组织战士测量各方位物及重要地物的距离，以便准确射击。工事构筑完毕后，进行严密伪装，尽量做到与现地自然景色相一致。

完成防御准备后，向排长报告。

二、防敌火力袭击

当敌航空兵、炮兵火力袭击时，除观察员、值班火器外，其余人员应迅速进入掩蔽部或坑道荫蔽，并做好战斗准备。对低飞的

敌机，应按规定组织对空射击。接到进入阵地的信号或敌炮火延伸时，应迅速指挥班（组）进入阵地，做好抗击敌人坦克、步兵冲击的准备。

当得到原子或化学袭击警报时，除观察员外，其余人员迅速进入掩蔽部或坑道荫蔽，视情况穿戴防护器材，做好战斗准备。观察员发现原子爆炸闪光时，应就地荫蔽，待冲击波过后，立即穿戴防护器材，继续执行任务。得到解除警报时，班（组）长应指挥班（组）迅速进入阵地，做好抗击敌人冲击的准备。视情况，进行自救互救，抢修工事，组织人员灭火，进行消毒或消除沾染。

三、抗击敌坦克、步兵冲击

敌人向我冲击时，班（组）应“勇敢、坚定、沉着”，近战歼敌。

当敌坦克、步兵向我冲击时，班（组）长应及时判断其冲击的方向，适时指挥火箭筒手，迅速机动到有利位置，利用工事、地形待机，当敌坦克、装甲车进至有效射击距离

内，突然开火，将其击毁。指挥战斗小组，依托工事，利用地形，乘敌坦克、装甲车停顿、减速、越壕、上下坡及转向等有利时机，以突然勇猛的动作从翼侧接近敌坦克、装甲车，用爆破器材将其炸毁。班应以猛烈的火力，杀伤敌坦克后的步兵。当敌步兵通过障碍物时，应集中火力封锁通路。当敌步兵进至我前沿时，以猛烈火力、手榴弹、白刃格斗将其消灭。

当冲击之敌遭到我严重打击队形混乱，后续梯队受阻时，班长应按上级命令，指挥小组从翼侧实施短距离阵前出击。出击前，班长应给小组明确出击目标、道路、返回路线，并组织火力掩护。小组出击时，要猛打快收。敌人溃退时，应以火力追歼。

击退敌人冲击后，班（组）长应加强观察，调整部署，迅速抢救伤员，组织抢修工事，补充弹药，进行动员，严防敌火力袭击，准备抗击敌人再次冲击，并向排长报告。

四、消灭突人之敌

敌人突入我阵地时，班(组)应有同自己的敌人血战到底的气概，顽强战斗，消灭敌人，坚决守住阵地。

当敌人突入我阵地时，班(组)应组织火力封锁突破口，阻止敌后续部队进入，并利用工事和障碍实施机动，以打、炸相结合，击毁敌坦克，并以火力、手榴弹、白刃格斗消灭敌步兵。如敌沿堑壕、交通壕扩张时，应以移动障碍物堵塞堑壕、交通壕，阻敌扩张，并利用壕的拐弯处和纵向射击设备，歼灭敌人。

当班(组)被敌包围时，必须发扬“不论在任何艰难困苦的场所，只要还有一个人，这个人就要继续战斗下去”的精神，依托工事，独立战斗，积极打击敌人，坚决守住阵地。当上级实施反击时，班(组)应主动以火力或以突然勇猛的战斗行动，向敌侧后冲击，配合主力歼灭突入之敌，恢复阵地。

当敌人突入友邻阵地时，班(组)应积极地以火力支援友邻战斗，并加强翼侧和接合

部的保障。友邻实施反击时，应以积极的战斗行动，主动配合友邻消灭敌人。

五、坚守坑道口战斗

班(组)根据命令转入坑道战斗时，应先将伤员送进坑道，尔后将配属火器撤至坑道口附近工事或有利地形，掩护各组交替进入，防止敌人尾追。进入坑道后，班长应立即组织火器或小组坚守坑道口，制止敌人接近。对进入坑道人员进行战斗编组，区分任务，深入动员，树立必胜信心，采取一切积极措施，与敌人的封锁、破坏作斗争。同时注意节省粮、弹和饮水，以利长期坚守。并设法与上级、友邻保持联络。

当敌向我坑道口接近、喷火时，班(组)应以火力将其歼灭。坑道口被破坏时，应立即组织抢修。敌向坑道内施放毒剂时，应利用防毒设备或就便器材防护，及时抢救中毒人员。

坚守坑道口战斗，应利用夜暗和能见度不良等有利条件，积极组织小组实施出击，

杀伤、消耗、疲惫敌人。当上级向表面阵地之敌反冲击时，班(组)应主动配合，坚决勇敢的出击，消灭敌人，恢复表面阵地。

六、由昼间转入夜间防御时的行动

夜间观察、射击、指挥、联络困难，协同不便，易遭敌人突然袭击。因此，班在夜间防御时，必须严密组织战斗，加强观察、警戒，防敌突然袭击，发扬我军近战、夜战的光荣传统，歼灭敌人，坚守阵地。

(一) 补充规定任务

班(组)由昼间转入夜间防御时，力求在黄昏前做好一切防御准备。班长给班补充规定任务时，应明确：

1. 夜间能看清的方位物(测量距离和标定)；
2. 各小组、火器调整后的位置和任务；
3. 我前沿警戒的位置、活动范围，支援和联络的方法；
4. 班在敌人向我接近侦察、破坏障碍

例、脚板、灯山下平仄八六八七地四四四四四
案；

5. 信(记)号和口令。

(二) 做好夜间射击、照明设备

班(组)长应根据地形，对敌人可能接近的方向和地点，组织各组(战士)做好标定射击设备，并进行严格的检查，以便夜间准确地杀伤敌人。

班应在阵地翼侧、间隙地或便于敌人接近的地段，设置照明和音响器材，以便及时发现敌人。

(三) 加强观察和警戒

班长在组织观察和警戒时，应明确：观察员、警戒的位置和任务，特别注意观察、警戒的方向和地段，发现情况报告的方法。同时，还应指示阵地两翼的战士注意对翼侧的观察，并保持与友邻的联络，防止敌人利用夜暗进行偷袭。

入夜后，组织人员轮流休息，严格管制灯火，保持静肃，提高警惕，时刻准备战斗。

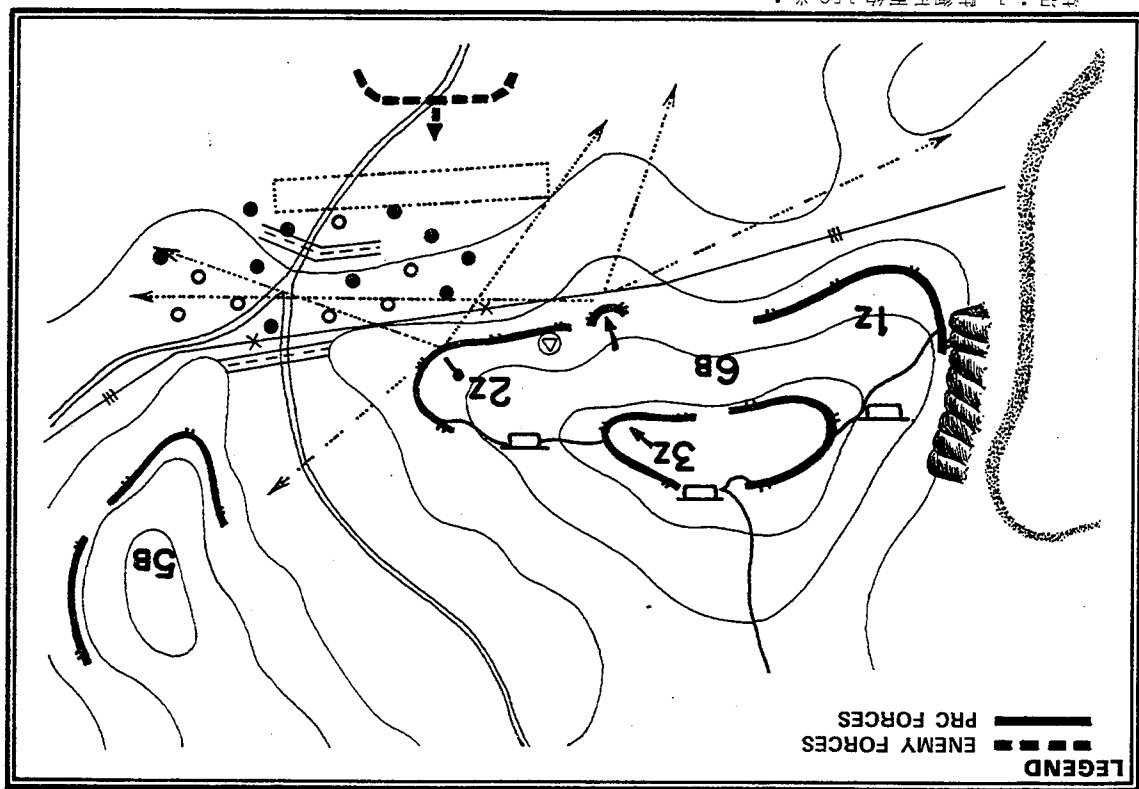
(四) 消灭侦察、偷袭之敌

当发现小股敌人渗透侦察或破坏障碍物时，班长应迅速报告排长，按命令或主动派出战斗小组，荫蔽迅速地进至有利地形或障碍物附近，待敌接近后，以突然的动作，将其消灭或捕捉。也可指挥机枪占领预备发射阵地，将敌消灭。如障碍物被破坏时，应以火力封锁或按命令进行修复。

当敌人偷袭时，班长应指挥全班迅速占领阵地，利用照明和夜间射击设备，以突然、猛烈的火力和手榴弹杀伤敌人，或乘敌混乱之际，以小组实施阵前出击，将敌消灭在阵地前。

当敌人突入我阵地时，班应发扬独立坚守、孤胆作战的精神，充分利用工事和移动障碍物，以抵近射击、手榴弹、白刃格斗消灭敌人。击退敌人后，班应注意搜索，防敌潜伏。

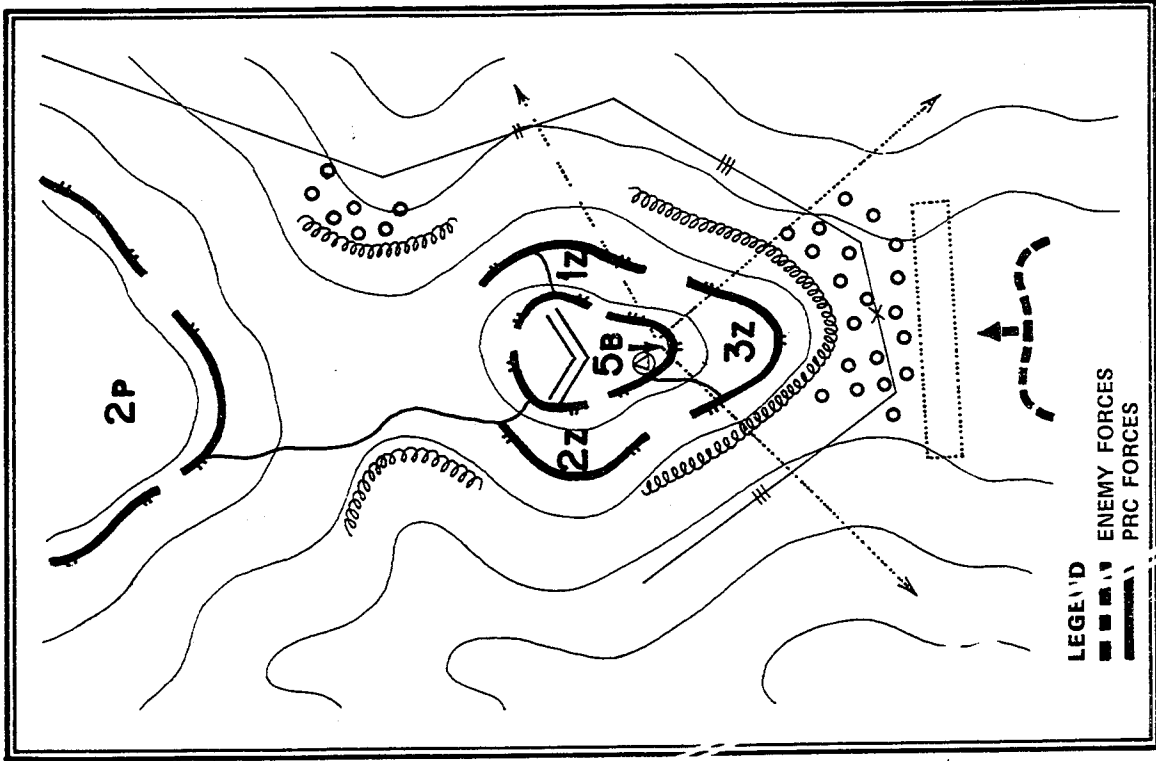
拂晓前，班长应将前出的人员和火器撤回原阵地，并注意加修工事和伪装。



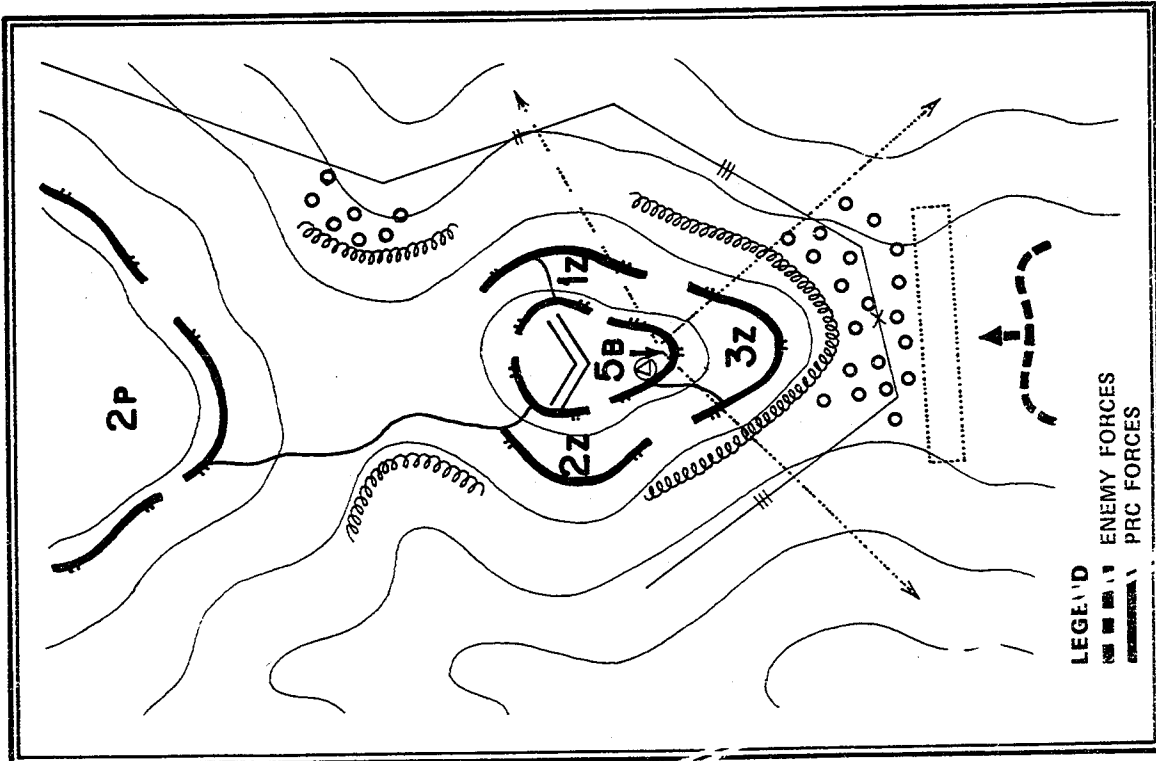
步兵班野战阵地图之一

图注：1. 障碍物面积约150米；
2. 当障碍物被摧毁时，用○代替。

步兵班防御要图之二



步兵班防御要图之二



织战斗，积极做好防御准备。

(一)规定任务，进行动员

班长规定任务前应组织观察，向全班传达任务，发扬军事民主，研究打法。规定任务时，应首先明确方位物，尔后指出：

1. 敌人位置、可能的进攻方向；
2. 步兵分队的任务；
3. 各机枪的基本发射阵地、预备发射阵地、对空射击阵地，射击地段、补加射击地段和集中射击地段，与步兵协同的方法和反坦克措施；
4. 完成防御准备的时间；
5. 信(记)号。

规定任务后，应进行战斗动员，提出完成任务的要求，发扬勇敢战斗的精神，树立坚守阵地的必胜信心。

班、连用机枪，以单枪配属给步兵班时，应到步兵班受领任务。

(二)选择发射阵地

机枪班的发射阵地，通常选在步兵分队

的翼侧或战斗队形内，也可在阵地前或稍后，便于发扬火力、指挥联络、荫蔽机动和能侧射、斜射的地点。除基本发射阵地外，还应选择2—3个预备发射阵地。担任暗火力点的机枪，应选在能制止敌人接近，不易被敌发觉的地点，并构筑坚固的掩盖工事，严密伪装。

(三)构筑工事与伪装

机枪班占领阵地后，班长应给战士区分作业任务，带领全班迅速构筑工事。作业顺序通常是：扫清视界、射界，构筑基本发射阵地、预备发射阵地和对空射击阵地，再挖连接壕、猫耳洞、掩蔽部。并进行严密伪装，力求与现地相似。班长要检查工事伪装是否符合要求。

(四)做好射击准备

测量射击地段内各方位物和重要地段(目标)的距离，准备好弹药和反坦克器材。天黑前做好夜间射击设备，班长应给战士明确标定射击的方向(地点)和方法。完成防御准备后，向上级报告。

二、防敌火力袭击

当敌炮兵、航空兵火力袭击时，班应立即进入掩蔽部(坑道)或利用地形荫蔽，并做好战斗准备。担任值班机枪时，应就地荫蔽。注意观察，根据命令或抓住有利时机射击低飞敌机。接到进入阵地的命令(信号)或敌炮火延伸时，迅速占领发射阵地，抢修工事，准备战斗。

当得到原子或化学袭击警报时，应迅速进入掩蔽部(坑道)荫蔽，视情况穿戴防护器材，做好战斗准备。得到解除警报时，迅速进入阵地，准备抗击敌人冲击。如受原子或化学伤害时，应进行自救互救、消毒或消除沾染，根据上级指示脱掉防护器材。

三、消灭冲击和突入阵地之敌

敌向我侦察或接近时，应在临时或预备发射阵地上，以突然、准确的火力杀伤敌人，制止敌侦察和接近。敌占领冲击出发阵地时，应以准确的火力消灭敌暴露的有生力量和制止敌在我障碍物中开辟通路。

敌步兵、坦克向我阵地时，应以猛烈、

准确的火力集中射击敌人密集步兵。敌接近障碍物时，应集中火力封锁通路，消灭敌步兵，切断敌步兵与坦克的联系，掩护步兵打敌坦克。担任暗火力点的机枪，应待敌进至几十米，以突然猛烈的火力消灭敌人。

敌溃退时，应以火力追击，或支援步兵阵前出击。击退敌冲击后，应抓紧时间抢修工事，补充弹药，准备抗击敌人再次冲击。

敌步兵、坦克突入我阵地时，要“勇敢、坚定、沉着”，以猛烈的火力阻敌扩张，并封锁突破口，制止敌人后续部队进入。如发射阵地不能发扬火力时，应适时转移。

敌对我实施包围时，应先消灭向我翼侧迂回之敌，阻敌包围。被敌包围时，应消灭对我威胁最大的敌人，坚决粉碎敌包围。敌坦克接近到我发射阵地附近时，应以反坦克器材，将其炸毁。在战斗中，如机枪不能射击时，应以手榴弹及其它武器消灭敌人，顽

强战斗，坚守阵地。

我步兵反冲击时，机枪应以准确、猛烈的火力支援或随同步兵反冲击，消灭突入之敌，恢复阵地。

转入坑道战斗时，应与步兵分队交替掩护转入坑道。担任坚守坑道口任务时，应坚决以火力消灭接近和破坏坑道口的敌人或支援步兵出击歼敌。

火 箭 筒 班

火箭筒班通常配属给步兵排，或按具配属给步兵班，有时由连集中使用在主要防坦克地段上，以火力击毁敌坦克和装甲车辆。

一、做好防御准备

班受领任务后，应抓紧时间，周密组织战斗，积极做好防御准备。

(一) 规定任务，进行动员

班长规定任务前应向全班传达任务，发扬军事民主，研究敌坦克可能进攻的方向，必经道路，确定打法。规定任务时，应首先

明确方位物，尔后指出：

1. 敌人位置、坦克可能的进攻方向；
2. 步兵分队的任务和防坦克障碍物的位置；
3. 各火箭筒的基本发射阵地、预备发射阵地的位置和任务；
4. 完成防御准备的时间；
5. 信(记)号。

规定任务后，应进行战斗动员，提出具体要求，发扬勇敢战斗的精神，树立坚守阵地的必胜信心。

如按具配属给步兵班时，班长应给各火箭筒手明确配属的单位，并提出具体要求，尔后各火箭筒手到步兵班受领具体任务。

(二) 选择发射阵地

火箭筒发射阵地，一般应选在防御阵地前沿受敌坦克威胁的方向上，也可选在前线前敌坦克可能接近的道路附近，便于发扬火力、荫蔽机动的地点。除基本发射阵地外，还应选择2—3个预备发射阵地。

(三) 构筑工事与伪装

班占领阵地后，应迅速构筑工事。作业顺序通常是：扫清视界、射界、构筑基本发射阵地、预备发射阵地、猫耳洞。并进行严密伪装，力求与现地相似。

(四) 做好射击准备

测量各地段的距离，准备好火箭弹和反坦克器材，清除发射阵地后的易燃物。完成防御准备后，向上级报告。

二、防敌火力袭击

当敌炮兵、航空兵火力袭击时，应迅速进入掩蔽部(坑道)或利用地形荫蔽，并做好战斗准备。接到进入阵地的命令(信号)或敌炮火延伸时，应迅速进入阵地，抢修工事，准备战斗。

当得到原子或化学袭击警报时，应迅速进入掩蔽部(坑道)荫蔽，视情况穿戴防护器材，做好战斗准备。得到解除警报时，迅速进入阵地，准备抗击敌人冲击，如受敌原子或化学伤害时，应进行自救互救、消毒或

三、抗击敌坦克、装甲车的冲击

当敌坦克、装甲车向我接近时，应迅速机动到敌坦克、装甲车必经的道路附近，作好射击准备。待敌坦克、装甲车进到有效射击距离内，利用其停顿、上下坡、转向、超越障碍等有利时机，以突然、准确的火力，将其击毁。遇敌多辆坦克时，应先击毁前出的、对我威胁最大的坦克，尔后击毁其它坦克。

当敌坦克、装甲车突入我阵地时，要“勇敢、坚定、沉着”，迅速荫蔽地机动到敌坦克侧后，将其击毁。如阵地暴露，应迅速转移位置再行射击。敌坦克突入友邻阵地时，应根据命令或主动支援友邻战斗。

六〇炮班

六〇炮班通常由连直接掌握使用，有时配属给步兵排。任务：以火力消灭和压制暴露的或遮蔽物后的敌有生力量和火器。

一、做好防御准备

班受领任务后，应抓紧时间，周密组织战斗，积极做好防御准备。

(一) 规定任务，进行动员

班长规定任务前应派出观察，向全班传达任务，侦察地形，判断敌可能的进攻方向，接近地段，发扬军事民主，研究打法。规定任务时，应首先明确方位物，尔后指出：

1. 敌人的位置、可能的进攻方向；
2. 连(排)任务，防御阵地和坚守的要点；
3. 班的基本发射阵地、预备发射阵地、准备火力的地段和反坦克措施；
4. 完成射击准备的时间；
5. 信(记)号。

规定任务后，应进行战斗动员，提出具体要求，发扬勇敢战斗的精神，树立坚守阵地的必胜信心。

(二) 选择发射阵地

班的发射阵地，通常由连(排)长指定，

有时由班选择。一般应选在步兵连(排)防御地域内，便于观察射击、指挥联络和荫蔽机动的地点，通常占领遮蔽发射阵地。除基本发射阵地外，还应选择1—2个预备发射阵地。

(三) 构筑工事与伪装

班占领阵地后，班长应明确基准射向，给战士区分作业任务，带领全班迅速构筑工事。作业顺序通常是：先构筑基本发射阵地、预备发射阵地，再挖犄角洞和通向阵地的交通壕。并进行严密伪装，力求与现地相似。班长应检查工事伪装是否符合要求。

(四) 做好射击准备

班进入阵地后，应迅速赋予火炮射向，测量各方位物和射击地段的距离，准备好射击诸元、弹药和反坦克器材，并做好夜间射击设备。完成防御准备后，向连(排)长报告。

二、防敌火力袭击

当敌炮兵、航空兵火力袭击时，班应迅速进入掩护部(坑道)或利用地形荫蔽，做好战斗准备。接到进入阵地的命令(信号)或敌

炮火延伸时，班长应指挥全班迅速占领发射阵地，抢修工事，准备射击。

当得到原子或化学袭击警报时，应迅速进入掩蔽部(坑道)荫蔽，视情况穿戴防护器材，做好战斗准备。得到解除警报时，迅速进入阵地，准备抗击敌人冲击，如受敌原子或化学伤害时，应进行自救互救、消毒或消除沾染，根据上级指示脱掉防护器材。

三、消灭进攻之敌

小股敌人对我阵地实施侦察时，应占领预备发射阵地，以突然、准确的火力将其消灭。敌步兵向冲击出发阵地接近时，应在预备发射阵地上以火力拦阻敌接近。敌占领冲击出发阵地时，应以火力予以杀伤，破坏其冲击准备。

敌向我冲击时，应集中火力消灭敌步兵，切断敌步兵与坦克的联系。随着敌人的接近，逐次改变射角或装药，以集中火力消灭最密集的、对我威胁最大的敌人。对敌散兵群，必要时各炮可分别射击。班应注意以火力控

制便于敌接近的阴暗地形。敌接近不利时，应集中火力封锁通路。

敌突入我阵地时，要“勇敢、坚定、沉着”，以火力压制和消灭突入之敌，阻敌扩张。当我步兵反冲击时，应以猛烈、准确的火力杀伤突入之敌，支援步兵反冲击。当敌坦克接近我发射阵地附近时，应以反坦克器材，将其炸毁。

敌对我实施包围时，应集中火力消灭或拦阻向我翼侧迂回的敌人，阻敌包围。被敌包围时，应以火力消灭对我威胁最大的敌人，粉碎敌包围，支援步兵扼守阵地。当发射阵地暴露或不便支援步兵战斗时，应适时转移。如火炮不能射击时，应以步兵武器、手榴弹、爆破器材等与敌顽强战斗，消灭敌人，坚守阵地。

步 哨

步哨，是由1—2名战士担任的直接警戒。在执勤时，必须提高警惕，坚守岗位，注意隐蔽，严密警戒，发现情况，立即报告。

一、派遣与任务

步哨由宿营、宿营警戒和防御的分队派出。派出距离，应根据敌情、地形、任务而定，一般为200—400米，夜间在100米内。任务是：及时发现敌人，防止其侦察人员的渗透活动。

二、哨位选择

步哨位置由派出的指挥员指定。应选在敌人可能接近的地形和道路附近，便于观察、射击、联络和隐蔽的地点，并尽量避开独立明显的物体。由昼间转入夜间警戒时，根据情况可更换哨位。哨位应选在低处，便于透空观察与潜听的地点。

三、作好执勤准备

步哨受领任务后，应整理装具，检查武器、弹药、器材，并进行伪装。步哨通常在班长带领下向哨位前进。接近哨位时，应向四周观察，无可疑征候再进入哨位。占领哨位后，班长应给步哨规定具体任务。步哨应确实了解敌情、观察地境、特别注意警戒的方向和发现敌人时的行动，邻哨的位置，我方侦察人员返回时间及路线，联络信(记)号及口令。如步哨由二人组成时，应由一人担任哨长，并区分观察地境，对主要方向要重迭观察。

构筑哨位时，应尽量利用地形加以改造，如无隐蔽地形可利用时，应先挖卧射散兵坑，视情况逐渐加深，并进行伪装。作业中应不间断观察。

四、观察要领及注意事项

步哨对警戒地带内的各种地形地物，应熟记其形状及位置，以便及时发现情况。观察时，应由右至左、由近至远反复进行。对可疑征候，复杂地形地物，特别是敌人可能

夜到撤出即可又或旧了时，双以火暗级心还撤
回。

六、换班

步哨换班由班长掌握，通常2小时一次，在酷暑或严寒条件下可适当缩短执勤时间。交班时，应将观察地境、特别注意的方向，发现的可疑征候，我侦察人员返回的时间、路线、联络信号、口令及发现情况时报告的方法，交代给接班的步哨。换班中，不能中断观察，不要暴露位置，如发生情况，立即停止换班，待处置后再行交接。交班后，应向上级报告执勤情况。

出现的方向，应仔细地观察。夜间应以观察、潜听相结合，耳目并用。

步哨在执勤中，应提高警惕，不准睡觉，武器弹药不能离身，时刻准备战斗；注意荫蔽，不准吸烟和高声说话，以免敌人发现；保持与上级联络，发现情况立即报告。

五、情况处置

对出入警戒线人员的处置。对去敌方人员，应按上级规定处置。对来自敌方人员，步哨应迅速作好战斗准备，同时用信号报告上级，当对方进至适当距离令其停止，询问“口令”，进行盘查。问答口令时，声音不可过大，能互相听见为宜。如系我侦察人员返回时，即可放行。如系可疑人员，应令其面向敌方举起双手，并注意其后方有无敌人，同时由翼侧出去一人检查，查明情况后，按上级规定处置或报告班哨处理。

发现敌人时，应一面监视，一面报告上级，并做好战斗准备。当敌人向我突然袭击时，应立即鸣枪报告，并以火力消灭敌人，

潜伏哨

潜伏哨，是秘密监视敌人的哨兵。在执勤时，必须提高警惕，坚守哨位，发扬吃苦耐劳的精神，严守纪律，保持秘密静肃，不断地观察、潜听，积极完成任务。

一、派遣与任务

潜伏哨由连(排)哨或宿营、防御分队派出。通常由2—3人组成，并指定一人为哨长。任务是：及时发现敌人行动，迅速报告上级，必要时捕捉俘虏。

二、哨位选择

潜伏哨位通常由派出的指挥员指定，应配置在敌易向我接近的地形、道路附近，便于观察、潜听、伪装、能隐蔽发出信号的地点，避开独立、明显的物体及声音嘈杂区。派出的距离通常为300米左右

三、做好执勤准备

潜伏哨受领任务后，应确实了解：敌人的位置及可能出现的方向；本组的任务，潜伏地点，往返路线及执勤时间；友邻的位置，在警戒地带内侦察分队、游动哨、民兵的活动范围；联络信(记)号、口令。

出发前应认真检查武器、弹药、装具，领取通信联络器材，携带给养和饮水，必要时携带急救、防冻、防暑及防毒(蚊)虫的药品。做好出发准备后，向上级报告。

潜伏哨应按规定的时问出发，利用地形秘密迅速地进入哨位。进入哨位后，首先要观察、潜听周围的情况，尔后哨长区分每个战士的位置、观察地境，特别注意观察的方向，轮流构筑工事的顺序，并进行严密伪装。

四、遂行任务的方法

观察、潜听时，应熟悉警戒地域内地形、地物的特征和位置，随时注意其变化，对每一细小的征候，都应详加判断。观察时，应由右至左、由近到远反复观察。潜听时，姿势要低，耳与地面接触，必要时可在地下

挖一小坑，或将罐头盒等埋于地下，以助潜听。

在执勤中，通常不询问来往人员，以免暴露。但对已发现我潜伏哨位的可疑人员，应在荫蔽处低声询问其来由，并派战士送交上级处理。

发现单个或小群敌人时，应一面报告，一面监视其行动，根据上级的命令将其捕捉或歼灭。发现敌优势兵力向我袭击时，应立即鸣枪报告，根据情况以火力阻击，并按规定的路线迅速撤回。

潜伏哨通常不换班。完成任务后，按规定的时间、路线荫蔽撤回，并将执勤中发现的情况报告上级。

游 动 哨

游动哨，是在部(分)队警戒线外或驻地(阵地)内指定的地区进行巡逻的哨兵。在执勤时，必须提高警惕，随时做好战斗准备，行动要保持秘密静肃，运动路线及活动时间不要形成规律，防敌伏击。

一、派遣与任务

游动哨由连(排)哨或宿营、防御分队派出。通常由2—3人组成，并指定一人为哨长。任务是：防止敌人渗入、袭击和破坏活动，检查警戒人员的警惕性和配置地域内的伪装、管制灯火情况，并同友邻警戒进行联络。游动范围，一般是在班哨、步哨、潜伏哨等警戒的间隙和便于敌偷渡、登陆的地段，以及在宿营、防御地域内按上级规定的路线进行巡察。

二、做好执勤准备

游动哨受领任务后，应确实了解：敌人的位置及其活动情况，和可能出现的方向；游动范围内的地形特点，及便于敌人接近的地点；有关社会情况；游动的范围、路线、任务及与友邻游动哨会哨的地点；我军警戒和民兵警戒的位置及与其联络的方法；识别、联络信(记)号和口令。

明确任务后，应研究在执勤中可能遇到的情况和处置方法，特别是防敌伏击、袭击的行動措施。检查武器、弹药，整理装具，进行伪装。做好准备后，向上级报告。

三、遂行任务的方法

游动哨应以观察、潜听和搜索等方法进行巡察。遇到情况时，应详加判断，迅速查明并及时和恰当的处置。

遇到可疑的征候或通过复杂地形时，要认真、细致地进行观察与潜听。必要时可占领有利地形，做好射击准备，指派一人或哨长亲自进行抵近观察、搜索，查明情况后，再继续前进。若遇可疑的踪迹、物品

时，除对其周围进行搜索外，应保护现场，立即报告，待命处理。

接近我警戒时，应服从其询问，准确地回答口令或联络信(记)号，并将返回路线、时间和联络信(记)号告知对方，互相通报在执勤中所发现的情况。

发现来往人员时，应先荫蔽，待其接近后低声问答口令，当对方回答的正确，确系我方人员即可放行。对从敌方来或向敌方去的人员的盘问与处理，应按上级规定执行。

发现单个敌人时，应采取秘密迅速的行动将其捕捉；不能捕捉时，将其击毙。发现多数敌人或遭敌袭击时，应迅速占领有利地形抗击，同时报告上级，尔后根据命令行动。

发现接近我海(江)岸的可疑船只时，应先荫蔽监视并报告上级，待其人员上岸后，判断其行动或进行盘查，如系敌人，应根据情况将其捕捉，或秘密迅速地运动到敌侧后，击毁敌船，断其退路，配合上级分队歼灭该敌。

发现有企图离岸的可疑船只时，应进行盘查，经盘查仍然不明真相时，可将其扣留并报告上级处理。

四、换班

游动哨应按规定的时问、地点和顺序换班。交班时，应将执勤中所发现的情况和我方出入警戒线人员的情况，详细告知接班的游动哨。交班后，将执勤情况报告上级。

班 哨

班哨，是由步兵班担任的宿营警戒。执勤时，必须提高警惕，严密警戒，保障被警戒部(分)队的安全。

一、派遣与任务

班哨由宿营警戒分队或宿营部队派出。派出距离，根据敌情、地形、任务而定。连(排)哨派出时，通常为600—800米；营哨或宿营部队派出时，通常为1—2公里。夜间或能见度受限制时，距离可适当缩短。其任务：及时发现敌人，防止敌人突然袭击和制止敌人的渗入侦察，保障被警戒的部(分)队安全休息和顺利展开战斗或适时转移。

班哨，可能得到班用机枪、火箭筒及通讯器材的加强。

二、哨位选择

班哨的位置，通常由上级指定。应选在

敌人可能接近的地形及道路附近，便于观察、射击、联络和隐蔽的地点。

三、做好执勤准备

(一) 进入哨位

班长受领任务后，应向全班介绍敌情、传达任务，进行动员。督促全班整理装具、检查武器、弹药、器材，进行伪装。做好准备后，向派出自己的指挥员报告，并率领全班隐蔽迅速地进入哨位。向哨位前进时，应派出搜索组进行搜索，无可疑征候，即迅速占领警戒位置。

(二) 规定任务

班到达指定位置后，班长应首先派出观察员，指定值班火器，亲自侦察地形，确定各组(火器)阵地和步哨位置，尔后给班规定任务。规定任务时，应指示方位物，并明确：

1. 敌人的位置和可能出现的方向；

2. 本班的任务；

3. 友邻位置和任务，前方我侦察分队和民兵活动的地区、返回路线、时间及联络

方法；

4. 各组(火器)的位置、任务，步哨换班的顺序和时间；

5. 发现敌人时的行动；

6. 构筑工事和伪装的方法及完成时间；

7. 信(记)号和口令。

规定任务后，班长应亲自带领步哨到现地明确哨位、警戒地区，特别注意的方向，发现情况报告的方法。

(三) 构筑工事

除担任警戒人员外，由副班长组织全班迅速隐蔽地构筑必要的工事。应先构筑散兵坑、火器发射阵地，再构筑堑壕等，并严密地进行伪装。

做好执勤准备后，除留观察员和值班火器外，班长应组织其余人员休息，但应提高警惕，武器弹药不能离身；与步哨保持经常联络，按时组织换班和检查其执勤情况；如班在夜间进入哨位时，拂晓应检查配置是否恰当，伪装是否确实，发现问题及时纠正。

木切敌人，至可开地，但取刑近。仅有吓吓，不得擅自撤离阵地。

班哨得到上级撤回命令或信号后，按预定方案行动，注意荫蔽企图。撤出时，首先后送伤员，然后交替掩护，迅速撤回，并将情况报告派出自己的指挥员。

四、情况处置

对出入警戒线的人员，应进行盘查询问，查明来由，弄清身分，对可疑人员送上级处理。

当步哨召唤时，根据情况需要，班长自己或带1—2名战士迅速荫蔽地前往处理。

当发现单个、小群敌人接近时，应迅速将情况报告上级，同时令全班荫蔽观察，监视敌人行动，并做好战斗准备，待敌靠近后，以突然勇猛的动作将其捕捉。敌逃跑时，以火力将其消灭。对俘虏可进行必要的审讯，尔后迅速送交上级处理。

当敌机侦察时，应注意荫蔽，加强观察，如在阵地附近发现敌人空降征候时，应将情况迅速报告上级，加强观察，做好战斗准备。

当敌步兵、坦克袭击时，班应“勇敢、坚定、沉着”，迅速占领阵地，立即查明敌人兵力，报告上级，撤回步哨。待敌进至我火力有效射程内，以突然、猛烈、准确的火力

步兵班侦察

侦察是获取敌情、地形情报，保障作战指挥的重要手段。步兵班担任侦察时，必须勇敢沉着，胆大心细，机智灵活，积极主动，依靠人民群众、民兵、游击队的帮助，准时完成任务。

一、派遣与任务

步兵班担任侦察时，通常由团、营或担任侦察的步兵连派出。可能得到火箭筒、班用机枪及通信器材的加强。其任务是以观察、搜索、窃听、俘虏、询问居民和搜集敌军文件等手段，获取上级所需要的敌情和地形情报。

二、做好侦察准备

班长受领任务后，应向全班传达任务，进行战斗动员，开展军事民主，研究完成任务的方法。尔后给全班规定任务，其内容：

1. 敌人的位置和行动特点；
2. 本班任务及完成任务的方法；
3. 侦察组的编成及任务；
4. 侦察区域内友邻和民兵活动情况；
5. 行进和返回路线及时间；
6. 通信联络的方法。

规定任务后，领取必要的器材，检查武器、弹药、装具，收交保密笔记本等，并进行伪装。夜间行动时，应在图上标定方位角，必要时，可请向导带路。做好准备后，向上级报告。

三、对地形地物的侦察

侦察班在运动时，应向前方派出侦察组，不断观察敌情、地形，荫蔽迅速前进。侦察组与本班的距离以保持目视联络为宜，夜间应小于白天。对复杂地形侦察时，可增派侦察组，并指示其行进方向和观察点，随时准备以火力掩护侦察组行动。侦察组在侦察时，应利用地形地物，由一观察点向另一观察点逐次观察、搜索前进，防敌伏击。并经

常与上级保持联络。

(一)对高地、隘路的侦察

班进至高地前，应先占领有利地形进行观察，尔后掩护侦察组接近高地。侦察组应尽量利用高地一侧荫蔽侦察前进，一般不沿棱线运动，必须通过时，应先派一人荫蔽地接近观察，然后迅速通过。对高地侧背和顶端，特别是对便于敌人荫蔽配置的地点，应仔细侦察。如地形复杂时，班可增派侦察组侦察，并注意密切协同。

班通过隘路前，应先对隘路入口处及两侧地形进行观察、搜索，再迅速通过。如隘路短，班可在入口处准备火力掩护侦察组迅速搜索通过，侦察组通过后，占领有利地形掩护班通过。如隘路较长时，班应随侦察组之后沿隘路一侧或两侧有利地形，逐段掩护侦察组搜索前进。出隘路时，先对外部观察，如无敌情时再前进。

(二)对森林、高苗地的侦察

班进入森林、高苗地之前，应先占领附

近有利地形，做好战斗准备，细致地观察其边缘，尔后指挥侦察组荫蔽地接近边缘，观察和静听林(高苗地)内有无可疑征候，然后判定方位，选好行进路线，在班的掩护下进入侦察。班可在侦察组后跟进或沿道路的一侧或两侧逐段掩护侦察组搜索前进。

在林中运动时，应利用树木交替掩护前进，注意观察地面和树上的情况。夜间应倾听四周的音响，如听到树枝(草叶)有异常响动、林鸟惊飞、虫鸣突然停止时，应仔细观察和潜听。在高苗地运动时，通常沿垄沟前进，如需横越垄沟，应轻轻拨开高苗，利用空隙前进。出林(高苗地)前，应先向外观察，然后迅速离开。

(三)对居民地的侦察

班进到村庄附近时，应先迅速荫蔽地占领有利地形，观察和静听村内外情况，特别注意村庄入口和较高建筑物等处有无可疑征候，尔后掩护侦察组荫蔽迅速地接近村庄边缘侦察，并尽可能首先询问当地居民，了

解村内情况。进村后，沿街道两侧或利用墙角、树木、交替掩护，搜索前进。横过街道时，应对两侧和正面房屋仔细观察后迅速通过。对房屋侦察时，应先观察其周围、房顶及烟囱等处，再接近院墙，利用门窗两侧观察其内部，如需进入时，应组织火力掩护，尔后以1—2人进入搜索。对敌人住过的村庄应细致搜索，向居民了解敌人的行动去向，搜集敌人遗留下来的文件、字纸和物资器材，以判断敌情。

夜间侦察村庄时，应注意保持肃静，沿围墙、墙角的阴暗处，边潜听边前进。如发现人喊狗叫或火光照射等异常情况时，应仔细查明。

(四)对河流、桥梁的侦察

班接近河流、桥梁前，应先占领有利地形，仔细观察我岸和对岸有无敌情，尔后掩护侦察组隐蔽地接近河岸和桥头进行侦察。

侦察组对桥梁侦察时，应先查清有无障碍物，并交替掩护对桥上桥下进行侦察，查

明桥的性质、长度、宽度和载重量。尔后迅速过桥占领有利地形，发出信号，掩护班通过。

侦察组对河流侦察时，应先查明河宽、水深、流速、河底性质，选择徒涉场和泅渡点。然后在班的掩护下，徒涉或利用就便器材泅渡，过河后占领有利地形，发出信号，掩护全班过河。

四、情况处置

侦察班遇到情况时，必须“勇敢、坚定、沉着”，周密地进行分析判断，灵活机动的处置。

发现单个敌人时，侦察组应向班长发出信号，并利用地形荫蔽，做好战斗准备，待敌接近时，将其捕捉。

发现小群敌人时，班应查明情况尽量绕过，如无法避开时，可在敌人必经道路附近占领有利地形，做好伏击准备，待敌进入伏击圈时，以突然勇猛的动作，将其捕捉，对企图逃跑的敌人，应以刺刀消灭，在必要时，

以火力消灭敌人。捕歼敌人后，应迅速离开。

发现优势敌人时，班应避免与其战斗，利用地形，荫蔽地迂回到敌翼侧，观察和判明敌人兵力、兵器、行动方向及企图，及时报告上级。如被敌发现时，应迅速荫蔽地转移。

遭敌伏击时，班应抢占有利地形，以猛烈的火力杀伤敌人，趁敌混乱之际，迅速摆脱敌人。

遇敌障碍物时，班应占领有利地形，组织火力掩护侦察组迅速查明障碍物的性质、数量、纵深，有无敌人防守，并寻找迂回路绕过或克服通过。

侦察班在任何情况下，不得遗弃伤员、烈士和武器器材。完成侦察任务后，应按预定路线迅速返回。途中应派侦察组，并指定后方、侧方观察警戒，防敌跟踪和袭击。返回后，立即向派出的指挥员报告侦察所得的情况报。

尖兵班

尖兵班，是步兵班担任的行军警戒，是防止敌人突然袭击的重要措施。在执行任务时，要提高警惕，严密搜索，确保分队行动安全。

一、派遣与任务

尖兵班通常由担任行军警戒的步兵连(排)派出。派出距离，应根据任务、敌情、地形和天候条件而定。通常昼间为500—700米，夜间为200—300米，乘车和背敌行军时可适当加大距离。根据情况可得到班用机枪、火箭筒和工兵、化学侦察组的加强。行军时，步兵班可担任前方、侧方、后方尖兵或侧方停止警戒。其任务：

前方尖兵班。保障被警戒分队免遭地面敌人的突然袭击，防止敌人侦察；与敌遭遇时，迅速抢占有利地形，掩护分队展开和进

入战斗；查明道路和沿途地形状况，标示行进路线。

侧方尖兵班和侧方停止警戒。及时发现敌人，保障主力不受侧方敌人的袭击。担任侧方停止警戒时，应根据上级指示，占领有利地形，掩护主力安全通过。

后方尖兵班。根据上级命令破坏道路、桥梁和消除路标，阻敌尾追，保障分队安全行动。

二、做好行军准备

班长受领任务后，应在规定的时间内，迅速完成行军准备。如情况紧迫时，可边走边组织，情况允许时，可召集骨干或全班研究敌情、行军路线、行动方案等。尔后给班规定任务，其内容：

1. 敌人的位置，行动企图；
2. 上级和本班的任务，出发时间、行进路线、到达的时间和地点；
3. 友邻的任务，前方侦察人员和地方、武装的活动地区，与其联络的方法；

4. 搜索组的组成、任务，行进中搜索与联络方法；

5. 加强火器及工兵、化学侦察组的任务和行进顺序；

6. 与敌遭遇时的行动；

7. 信(记)号。

规定任务后，应检查全班人员对任务了解及对信(记)号熟悉的程度，武器、弹药和器材是否携带齐全，着装、伪装是否确实，并将准备情况报告上级。

三、行军中尖兵班的动作

前方尖兵班按上级命令出发，向前方派出搜索组，班在搜索组后适当距离沿道路一侧或两侧跟进。为便于指挥，班长应在班的前头行进，掌握行进路线和行军速度，保持与被警戒分队的距离及联络。

(一)对十字路口、岔路口和迂回路，应利用路标或就便器材(粉笔、石灰、草、树枝、土块等)标示行进方向，也可留联络员。在进入村口或在起伏地通过棱线后，应留联

络员保持与本队的联络。

(二)当班通过有敌情顾虑的复杂地形时，应组织火力掩护前方搜索组搜索前进，必要时可增派搜索组。派搜索组时，班长应明确：搜索的目标、行进路线、搜索方法和联络信号等。搜索组的行动，应敏捷、隐蔽，不可因搜索而停留过久影响行进速度。

通过或搜索高地时，一般不沿棱线运动，应从其两侧仔细观察，搜索前进，并注意保持联络。通过村庄时，首先应注意观察村口有无可疑征候，或询问居民查明情况，尔后进入村庄沿街道两侧，利用树木、围墙、墙角等隐蔽观察，搜索前进，并做好战斗准备。通过丛林、高苗地时，应迅速隐蔽接近其边缘，查明情况，再进入搜索，迅速通过，注意保持方向。遇到河流、桥梁和隘路时，应首先查明有无敌人防守和障碍物，尔后迅速通过。根据情况，也可交替掩护通过。当河流无桥梁时，班应迅速寻找徒涉场徒涉，或利用器材泅渡通过，并进行标示。

(二)当班搜索分队小休息时，班长应守

前方搜索组占领便于观察隐蔽的地形，进行观察和警戒，班应在道路一侧或两侧的隐蔽地点休息，但必须做好战斗准备。当大休息或停止时，班应占领有利地形，布置警戒，必要时构筑工事，以保障被警戒分队的安全。在大、小休息中，班长应根据情况更换前方搜索组。

四、情况处置

遇到天然、人工障碍物时，应先查明有无敌人防守，然后组织火力掩护，在工兵协同下，查明障碍物的性质、种类，并迅速排除，如时间紧迫难以排除时，应迅速寻找迂回路绕过，并进行标示和报告上级。

发现敌机时，应拉大距离，利用地物加速前进，或根据指示立即停止，迅速隐蔽。如敌机向我低空轰炸扫射时，应组织火力对空射击，并注意对地面观察，敌机过后继续前进。发现敌人在我前进道路附近实施空降时，应迅速占领有利地形，报告上级，根据

指示采取行动。

遇到受染地段时，应报告上级，由化学侦察组查明受染地段的性质、范围，迅速寻找迂回路绕过并加以标示，如无迂回路时，应穿戴防护器材或利用就便器材通过。

与敌遭遇时，应立即报告上级，抢占有利地形，先敌开火，以火箭筒、手雷、爆破筒、炸药包击毁敌坦克、装甲车，并以猛烈火力消灭敌步兵，保障本队展开。对小群敌人，根据情况，可迂回其侧后，以突然果敢的行动将其捕捉或歼灭。当敌先占领有利地形时，班应迅速组织火力掩护，坚决向其正面或翼侧冲击，夺取要点；或以火力迟滞敌人行动，保障本队在有利条件下进入战斗或转移。

夜间基础训练

近战、夜战是我们的光荣传统，今后的战争，我们还是在晚上和敌人打。因此，必须加强分队夜间基础训练，使战士熟悉和掌握夜间着装与紧急集合、判定方位、按方位角行进、简易通信、观察与潜听和静肃行进等基本知识，提高夜间走与打的技能。

一、着装与紧急集合

夜间着装与紧急集合，是应付突然情况的紧急行动。军人得到紧急集合的信号或命令后，应立即按规定着装，迅速到达集合场。

(一) 着装

着装分全副武装和轻装两种。着装时，要迅速、静肃、确实、完整，便于行动。平时应按规定将武器、弹药、装具放置有序。全副武装着装通常按下列顺序：

1. 服装

- (1) 帽子(冬季戴皮、棉帽时,披装后再戴);
- (2) 上衣;
- (3) 裤子;
- (4) 袜子;
- (5) 鞋子(双层床上层的战士打完背包后再穿鞋子)。

2. 打背包

背包宽30—35公分,长40—45公分,竖捆两道,横压三道。米袋捆于背包上端或两侧;雨衣、大衣通常捆于背包上端。鞋子横插在背包背面中央或竖插两侧鞋尖向上;锹(镐)竖插在背包背面中央,头朝上。

3. 装具

披带六三式弹袋时(图1)

- (1) 扎腰带;
- (2) 披弹袋;
- (3) 背挎包,右肩左胁;
- (4) 背防毒面具,左肩右胁;

- (5) 背水壶,右肩左胁;
- (6) 背背包;
- (7) 拿武器和战斗器材。

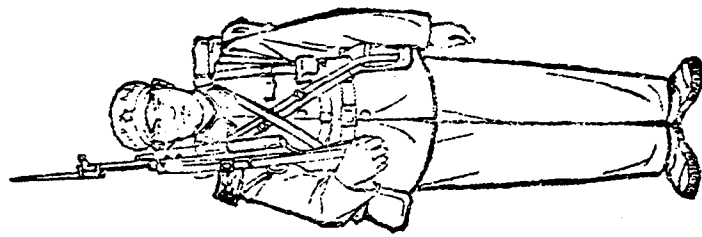


图1 披带六三式弹袋全副武装

披带五六式弹袋时(图2、3)

- (1) 背手榴弹袋,左肩右胁;
- (2) 背挎包,右肩左胁;
- (3) 扎腰带(班用机枪手先背弹盒);

- (4) 披弹袋；
- (5) 背防毒面具，左肩右胁；
- (6) 背水壶，右肩左胁；
- (7) 背背包；
- (8) 拿武器和战斗器材。

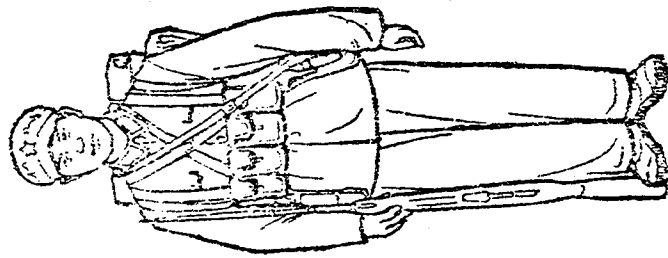


图2 披带五六式弹袋全副武装

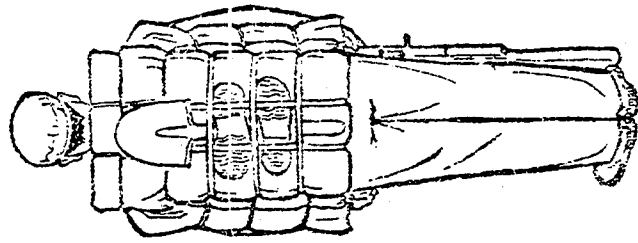


图3 全副武装背面

轻装时(图4、5)，不背背包，将锹(背)背于右肩系绳绕过腰间与背绳系紧，米袋、雨衣分别扎好，左肩右胁或系于腰间。其它装具披带同全副武装。

卸装时按相反的顺序进行。

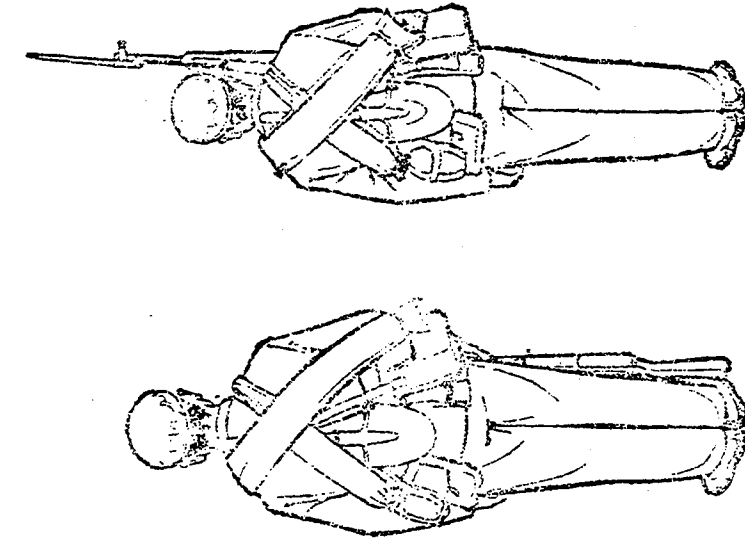


图4 披带六三式弹袋轻装背面
图5 披带五六式弹袋轻装背面

（二）紧急集合

得到紧急集合信号或命令时，值班人员应立即报告首长，唤醒全体人员。担任警戒的战士应坚守岗位，严加戒备。

战士听到紧急集合信号时，立即起床，不喧哗，不开（点）灯，迅速着装，在班长的率领下，到指定地点集合。到达后检查武器、弹药、整理装具。

如有战士执勤，班长应指定专人将其未带的装具、背包带至集合场。各级指挥员到达集合场后，应检查本分队人员是否到齐及武器、弹药、装具携带情况，同时按上级指示撤回警戒和执勤人员，并报告上级。

二、判定方位

判定方位，是现地判明东、西、南、北方向，以便明确周围地形和敌我的关系位置，保持正确的行进方向。

（一）用指北针判定方位

将指北针打开放平（图6），等磁针静止后，磁针上有夜光点的一端所指的方向即是

北。面向北方，背后是南，右边是东，左边是西。使用指北针前，应检查磁针是否灵敏，可用一钢铁物体吸引磁针摆动，拿开钢铁物若磁针能迅速回到原处，则说明磁针灵敏能

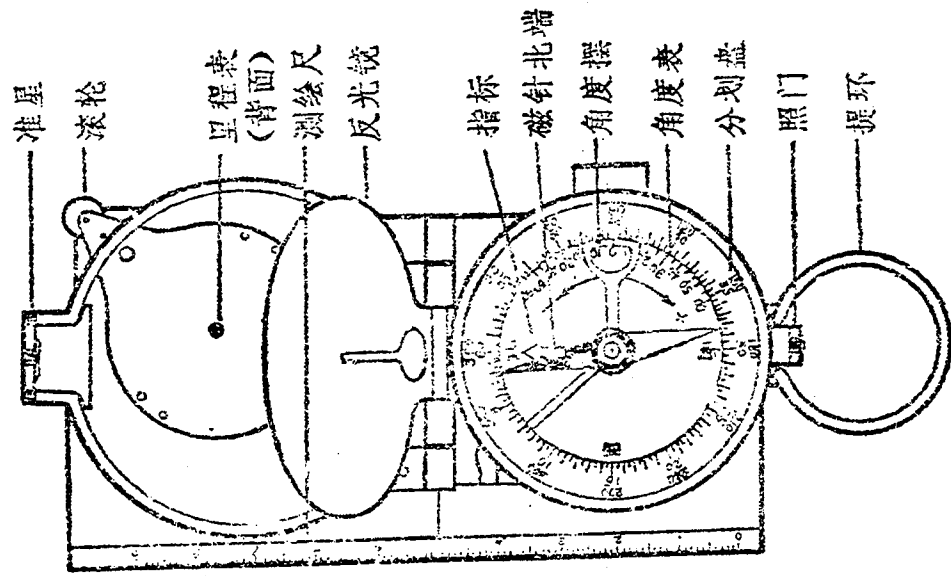


图6 六二式四用指北针的各部名称

用。使用时要避免靠近磁铁矿区、钢铁物体和高压电线等，以免磁针失灵。

指北针分划盘上一个圆周为60-00(六千密位)，每一短刻线为0-50，长刻线为15-00。按规定北为0密位或60-00，东为15-00，南为30-00，西为45-00，而指北针分划盘的数字是按逆时针方向刻的，如量15-00时，应将指北针转动，当磁针北端指向15-00时，从指北针瞄准具瞄出去的方向就是东方。

(二)用北极星判定方位

北极星，是正北天空的一颗恒星，找到了北极星，就找到了北方。北极星位于小熊星座的尾端，大熊星座(北斗七星)和女帝星座围绕北极星按反时针方向运转，其关系位置如图7。寻找的方法：大熊星座是由七颗比较亮的星组成，形状象一把勺子，找到以后，将勺头甲、乙两星连成一直线，向勺口方向延长约为甲、乙两星间隔的五倍处，有一颗星就是北极星。在我国南方各省，当

大熊星座运转到地平线以下时，可根据女帝星座寻找。女帝星座是由五颗亮星组成，形状象“W”，在“W”的缺口方向约为缺口宽度的两倍处就是北极星。

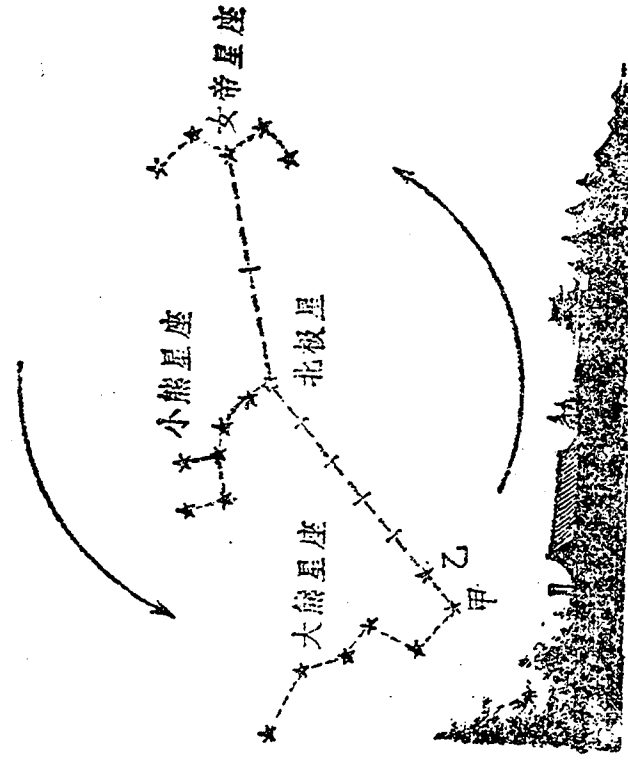


图7 北极星与其它星的关系

(三)用月亮判定方位

月亮在农历的每月的上半月，由月芽逐渐形成月圆，下半月又由月圆逐渐形成月芽，最后看不到。根据这一规律，可按月形概略

独立树：通常用圆的仪门茂盛，则及元滑，北面的枝叶稀疏，树皮粗糙而黑。利用树桩上的年轮辨别方向时，南边稀，北边的比较密(图8)。

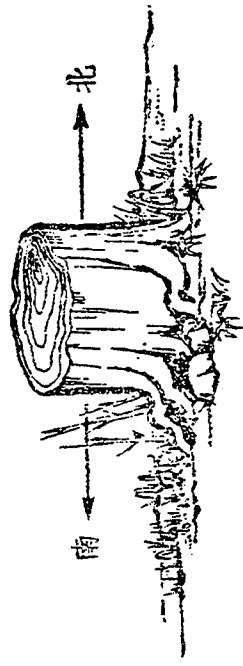


图8 依树桩年轮判定方位

房屋门窗：庙宇、宝塔的正门和农村独立房屋的门窗通常向南开。

积雪：建筑物、土堆、田埂、高地等，南面积雪融化快，北面积雪融化慢，而土坑、山谷等凹陷地则相反。

青苔和草：大岩石、土堆、大树通常南面的青草茂密，北面背阴潮湿，易长青苔。

三、按方位角行进

按方位角行进，是在通视困难或能见度

判定方位。其要领：把月亮分成四个等分，看月亮形状和时间，即可知它的方位，如月亮方位表。

月亮方位表

日期	月 形		刻	方位								
	初五	初八		十二	十五	十八	廿二					
初六	初九	初三	初六	初八	初九	十二	十五	十八	廿二	廿三	廿五	廿六
	1/4	1/2	1	3/4	1	3/4	1/2	1/4				
	上半月亮部在右			下半月亮部在左								
	西南	南	东南	东	东南	东						
18时	西	西南	南	东南	东	东南						
21时		西	西南	南	东南	东	东					
24时			西	西南	南	东南	东南	东				
3时				西	西南	南	东南	东南	东			
6时					西	西南	西南	西南	西南	南	东南	东南

(四)用各种地物特征判定方位

利用地物特征判定方位，是判定方位的一种补助方法。使用时，应根据地区的不同情况，灵活运用。

不良条件下越野行进时采用的。

(一) 图上准备

在地图上选择行进路线。行进路线应根据任务、敌情及地形情况而定，一般选择在地形起伏不大、障碍物少、又能便于隐蔽行进的路段上。行进路线上各转折处应选择明显的方位物作为定向点，点与点之间的距离根据地形而定。然后把出发点、定向点、目的地及沿途主要地形绘成路线略图。

在地图上测定各段路线的方位角和距离。用指北针标定地图后，不动地图，移动指北针，使测绘尺靠在各段路线上，准星朝向行进方向，待磁针静止后，磁针北端所指的密位数，就是该段路线的磁方位角。然后量取各段距离，并换算成复步和行进时间，注记到略图上(图9)。换算方法：

实地距离 ÷ 复步长 = 复步数

实地距离 ÷ 行进速度 = 行进时间

把行进中有关的重要资料在略图上注明，根据地图和略图认真研究，熟记沿途地

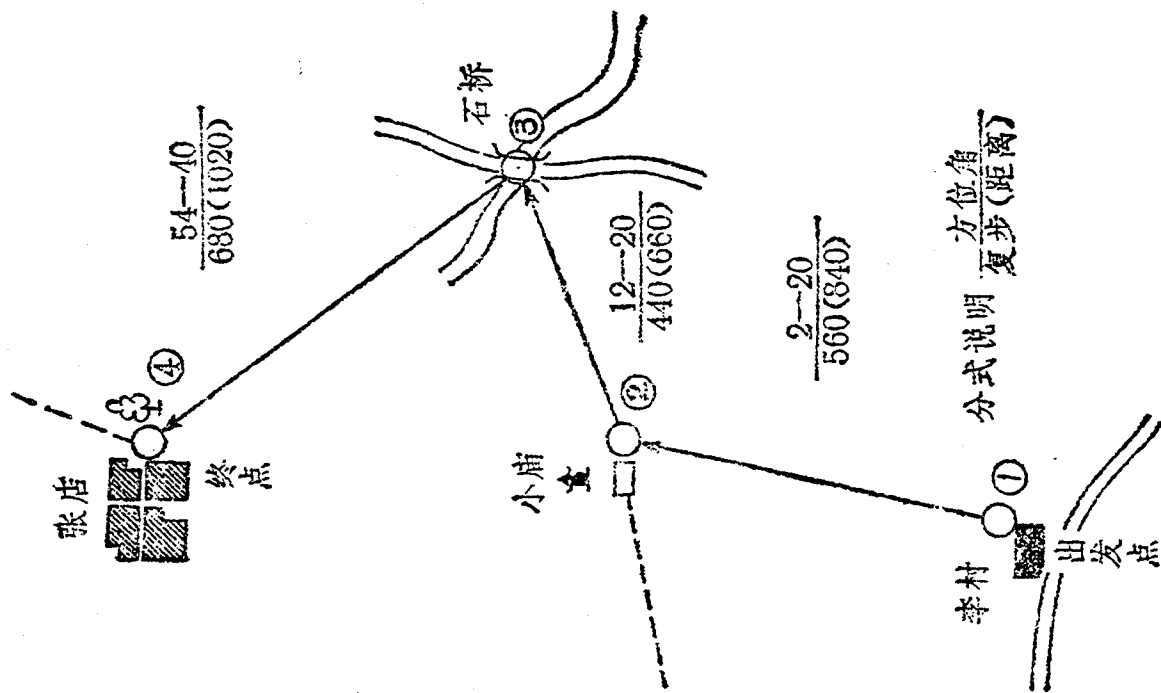


图9 按方位角行进略图

前进。找到第二个定向点后，依上还要继续前进，直到终点。

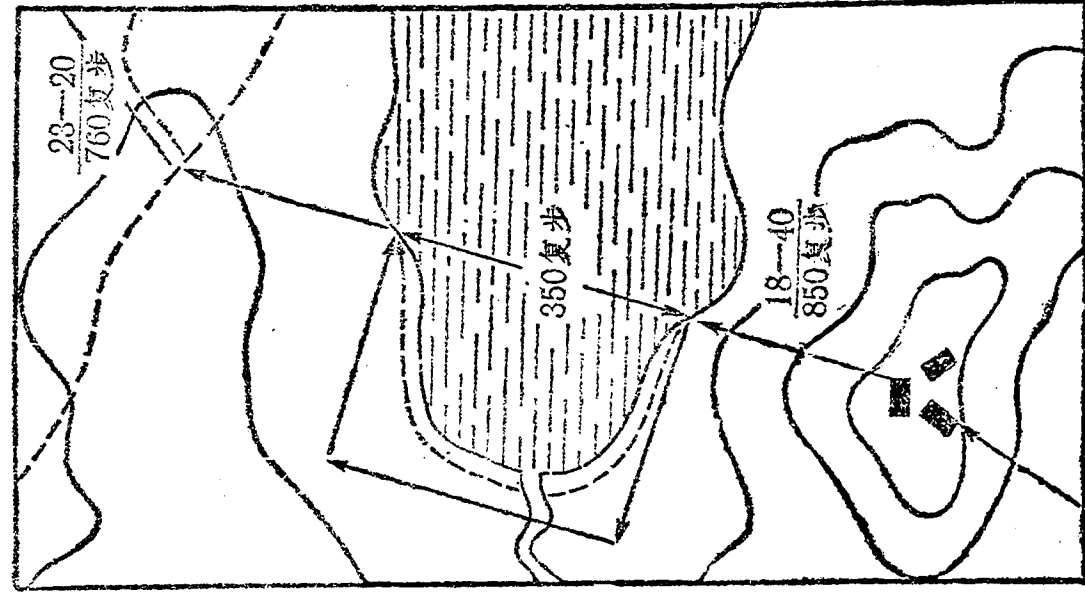


图 10 绕过障碍

形和行军路线。

(二) 行进要领

在出发点上，使指南针指向第二点的磁方位角，沿照门、准星方向，就是前进的方向。然后记准下一个点的地形特征，数复步或记时间前进。夜间可利用指南针的夜光标志保持前进方向。使用时，从 60-00 减去需要的密位数。如量 8-00，应从 60-00 减去 8-00 即为 52-00，然后将分划盘上的 52-00 对准指标，尔后把磁针北端夜光点转至与分划盘上靠北字的夜光点重合时，即可沿着照门、准星瞄出的方向前进。

在行进中随时用指南针检查行进方向，边走边根据记忆对照地形，以明确自己到达的位置。如遇到障碍地段，可在障碍对面行进方向上找一辅助方位物，绕过障碍到达辅助方位物后，目测障碍地段的距离，加在走过的距离之内，继续按原方向前进。如通视不良，找辅助方位物有困难时，可采取直角迂回的方法绕过(图 10)，然后按原方向继续

如需要按原路线返回时，可按反方位角行进。反方位角的换算方法：方位角大于30-00减去30-00，小于30-00加上30-00，得出的密位数，就是反方位角。例如方位角42-50减去30-00为12-50；又如方位角20-50加上30-00为50-50。

四、简易通信

简易通信，是连以下分队在夜间行动中，进行指挥、联络的主要手段。因此，信号应简明、易记，传递要迅速、准确、保密，并根据情况，多种方法灵活运用。

(一)传递口令

通常是在行进或停止间向前(后)、左(右)进行指挥、联络时使用。口令传递要准确、迅速、声音小，听清再下传，不准更改或附加字句。

向后传递口令。行进间，接到口令的战士，稍停或向左(右)跨出一步，待后面战士靠近时，边走边将口令传出，然后大步跟上。后面战士听清后，再依次传递。停止间，原

地依次向后传递。

向前传递口令。行进间，接到口令的战士加快行进速度，当接近前面战士侧后时，拍肩为号，边走边将口令传出，然后按正常速度行进。停止间，原地依次向前传递。

向左(右)传递口令。行进间，接到口令的战士，边行进边向左(右)战士靠拢，传出后，按原来路线继续前进。停止间，接到口令的战士，迅速靠拢左(右)战士，传出后即回原位。

(二)问答口令

口令分普通和特别两种。普通口令由两个字组成，用于一般情况；特别口令由四个字组成，用于特殊情况。

问口令时，应先占领荫蔽位置，做好战斗准备。当对方进到利于我监视、不利其向我突然袭击距离时，先令其“站住”，后问“口令”，声音以对方听到为宜。问答方法，使用普通口令时，如口令是“保卫”，被问者答口令的前一个字“保”，尔后反问：“回令”，问者回

答口令的后一个“卫”。使用特别口令时，被问者答口令的前两个字，问者回答后两个字。

(三) 音响联络

通常用哨子、小喇叭、击掌、拍枪托、敲铁锹、吹口哨、投土块，学鸟(虫)叫等。要根据地形、敌情、时间、季节灵活使用，联络时声音以对方听到为宜。

(四) 记号联络

通常是在臂、颈和背包上扎白毛巾或白布条，以识别敌、我。用白灰或小白旗等设置路标，指示行进方向和路线，箭头所指的方为部队行进方向，被拦断的道路示意不要由此前进。路标由前卫分队设置，后卫分队消除，以免暴露行动企图。

(五) 光亮联络

通常用信号弹、曳光弹和信号灯、手电筒包红(绿)布等，按规定的信号联络。

五、观察与潜听

夜间观察与潜听，是获得敌情，了解地

形的一种手段。战士在战斗中观察与潜听时，必须做到荫蔽、静肃，观察与潜听相结合，及时发现情况，迅速准确报告。

(一) 观察的特点

1. 人位于灯火附近，面向光亮看得近，背向光亮看得远；光亮后面的目标难看清。
2. 从黑暗处向光亮处看得远，反之看得近；自己位于亮处易被敌发现，但不易发现敌人。
3. 小物体、模糊的物体易误远；大物体、明亮的物体易误近。
4. 在白色地面上的物体易发现；在暗色地面上或阴影里的物体难发现。
5. 昏暗的夜间，白色、浅色的物体易发现；黑色、深色的物体难发现；明亮的月夜，黑色的物体易发现，灰色、白色物体难分辨。
6. 由高处向低处观察，不易发现目标；由低处向高处透空观察容易发现目标。
7. 移动的物体易发现，静止的物体难

发现。

(二) 潜听的特点

1. 晴夜、深夜、拂晓，四周寂静听得远。
2. 冬季草木枯凋，听得远；夏(春)季草木繁茂，虫声嘈杂，听得近。
3. 对上风的声音听得远；对下风的声音听得近。
4. 对冰雪、坚硬地上行动的声音听得远；对薄雪和松软地上行动的声音听得近。
5. 对高处的声音听得远；对低凹处的声音听得近。
6. 下雨天，位于树下、房屋近旁听得近，在激流近旁听不清。

(三) 观察与潜听位置的选择

观察与潜听的位置，应选在低、暗处，便于隐蔽身体和透空观察；要尽量避开独立明显、透空物体和声音嘈杂地点。

(四) 观察与潜听的要领

观察与潜听时，应根据地形的特点，以能

发现敌人隐蔽自己而采取适当姿势。其要领：

观察与潜听应耳目并用，善于根据各种声响、光亮、黑影等特征，分析判断目标的性质、位置和距离。

观察时，应由右至左、由近至远反复观察。熟记观察地境内地形、地物的特征，注意其变化，对阴暗处和可疑征候，应特别注意观察。对强光不要凝视过久，以防眼花，如受强光刺激眼花时，可用手遮光或暂闭眼后再行观察。

潜听时，可用手遮于耳后或将耳贴于地面、墙壁上潜听，也可在潜听位置上挖一小坑或将罐头盒等埋在地下，将耳附于近旁，以提高潜听效果。

六、静肃行进

夜间静肃行进，是为了达到隐蔽行动企图，秘密地接近敌人。因此，战士在行进中，要严密伪装，巧妙地利用地形地物，保持正确的运动方向，严守行进纪律，越接近敌人越应注意静肃。

(一) 静用手段的行走

行进前，应确实着装，防止发出响声。水壶应灌满水，弹袋弹盒要垫塞扎紧，装具、器材要固定好，系紧鞋带，扎紧裤脚等。穿大衣或雨衣时，应将衣襟下角扎于腰带上，并对发光物体进行伪装。准备好后，可用跳跃或跑步的方法检查是否会发出响声。

(二) 在各种地形上的行进要领

1. 通过软土地时，身体微向前倾，自然前进。通过硬土地和沙石地时，步幅稍小，脚步要轻，脚稍抬高，踏稳再前进。

2. 通过低草(苗)地时，身体微向前倾，脚稍抬高，把草(苗)压倒再前进。通过高草和丛林时，用手将草或树枝分开，利用其空隙侧身前进。

3. 通过水深在膝盖以下的河流时，脚应抬出水面，先将脚尖入水，待前脚站稳，再抬后脚，慢步前进。如水深在膝盖以上时，脚不应抬出水面，两眼向前看，顺水斜行慢步前进。

4. 通过泥汀、沼泽和稻田地时，脚要先着地，全脚踩稳，抬脚时，脚跟先抬起，稳步前进。在田埂行进时，脚走八字形，身体保持平衡，小步快速前进。

5. 通过深雪时，脚抬出雪面，步幅稍小，下脚要轻，踩实站稳再前进。通过冰地时，两腿微曲，身体微向前倾，脚掌轻擦冰面，小快步前进。

6. 在山地运动时，上山身体前倾，脚稍抬高，脚尖先着地，全脚踩稳再前进，必要时以手协助；下山身体微向后仰，脚跟先着地，尔后全脚着地，踩稳再前进；如坡度大应弯腰侧身，必要时以手协助，脚的侧面先着地，全脚掌着地踩稳再前进。

